LINK:
CONTENT & A-Z

The Ultimate Driving Machine

OWNER'S HANDBOOK.

THE BMW 3 SERIES TOURING PLUG-IN-HYBRID.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1EA53 0

WELCOME TO BMW.

Owner's Handbook.

Congratulations on your choice of a BMW.

The better you are acquainted with your vehicle, the easier you will find it is to operate. We would therefore like to offer you the following advice:

Please read the Owner's Handbook before setting out in your new BMW. Also use the integrated Owner's Handbook in your vehicle. It contains important notes on how to operate the vehicle, enabling you to derive maximum benefit from the technical advantages of your BMW. It also contains information which will help you to maintain both the operating and road safety of your BMW as well as its full resale value.

At the time of production in the factory, the printed Owner's Handbook is the most up-to-date medium. After a vehicle software update – for example, a Remote Software Upgrade – the integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain updated information.

Supplementary information is provided in the other documents of on-board literature.

We wish you a safe and pleasant journey.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1EA53 - X/20

TABLE OF CONTENTS

After a vehicle software update – for example, a Remote Software Upgrade – the integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain updated information.

NOTES

Notes 6
Safety of the hybrid system 20
Owner's Handbook media 21

QUICK REFERENCE

Getting in 24
Adjustment and operation 28
On the move 32

CONTROLS

Driving area 42
Sensors of the vehicle 47
Vehicle operating state 51
iDrive 55
BMW Remote Software Upgrade 72
General settings 75
Personal settings 79
Connections 84
Opening and closing 93
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel 122
Carrying children safely 136
Driving 149
Displays 171
Lights 199
Safety 208
Driving Stability Control Systems 247
Driver Assistance Systems 251
Driving comfort 304
Air conditioning 305

Interior equipment 319
Storage compartments 325
Luggage compartment 329

DRIVING HINTS

Driving precautions 336
Towing a trailer 342
Saving fuel 348

MOBILITY

Charging vehicle 356
Refuelling 365
Wheels and tyres 368
Engine compartment 393
Operating fluids 396
Maintenance 403
Replacing parts 406
Help in case of a breakdown 412
General care 422

REFERENCE

Technical data 428
Seats for child restraint systems 433
Appendix 436
Everything from A to Z 438

© 2020 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Not to be reproduced, wholly or in part, without written permission from BMW AG, Munich.
English ID7 X/20, 11 20 490
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1EA53 - X/20

Notes

About this Owner's Handbook

Orientation

The quickest way to find information on a particular topic or feature is to consult the alphabetical index.

We recommend that you read through the first chapter to obtain an initial overview of the vehicle.

Validity of Owner's Handbook

Vehicle production

At the time of production in the factory, the printed Owner's Handbook provides up-to-date information. Updates following the copy deadline can result in differences between the printed Owner's Handbook and the integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.

You will find notes on any updates in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – for example, a Remote Software Upgrade – the integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain updated information.

Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Handbook for navigation, entertainment and communication is available as a printed book from Service.

These topics are also covered in the integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Service Partner

A Service Partner of the manufacturer will be happy to answer any further questions.

Internet

Vehicle information and general information on BMW – on technology, for example – are available on the Internet: www.bmw.com.

Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle

The integrated Owner's Handbook describes the specific equipment and functions present in the vehicle. The Integrated Owner's Handbook can be shown in the Control Display.

BMW Driver's Guide App

The BMW Driver's Guide app specifically describes the equipment and functions included in the vehicle. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

BMW Driver’s Guide web version

The Driver’s Guide web version shows the most appropriate information for the selected vehicle. Where possible, only the equipment and functions actually installed in the vehicle will be described. The Driver’s Guide web version can be displayed in any up-to-date browser.

Symbols and displays

Symbols in the Owner's Handbook

Symbol	Meaning
⚠	Precautions that must be followed in order to avoid the possibility of injury to yourself and to others as well as serious damage to the vehicle.
♻	Measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.
"..."	Texts on a display in the vehicle for selecting functions.
›...‹	Commands for the voice control system.
»...«	Replies by the voice control system.

Actions

Actions that need to be carried out are shown as a numbered list. The list of steps must be carried out in the specified sequence.

1. First action.
2. Second action.

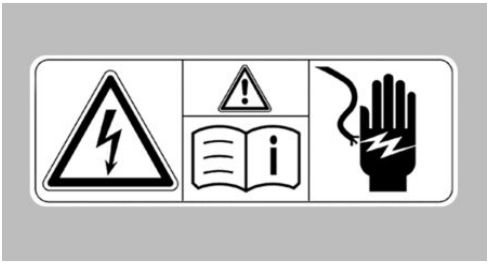
Lists

Alternative options and lists of items with no implied sequence are shown as bullet point lists:

- ▷ First option.
- ▷ Second option.

Symbol on components and assemblies

📖 This symbol on a vehicle component indicates that further information on the component is available in the Owner's Handbook.



The symbols on parts of the vehicle indicate that life-threatening injury could occur as a result of electric shock if the high-voltage technology or the orange-coloured high-voltage components are used inappropriately.

Vehicle equipment

This Owner's Handbook describes all models and all the standard, national and optional equipment available for the model series. As a result, this Owner's Handbook may also contain descriptions and illustrations of equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification.

This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems.

Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

If certain equipment and models are not described in this Owner's Handbook, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Handbooks provided.

In right-hand drive vehicles, some controls are arranged differently from those shown in the illustrations.

Production date

The production date of your vehicle can be found at the bottom of the door pillar on the driver's door.

The production date is defined as the calendar month and the calendar year in which the vehicle body and the powertrain assemblies are joined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line.

Status of the Owner's Handbook

General

The high standards of safety and quality that characterise the vehicles are ensured through ongoing development. On rare occasions, this may mean that the features described in this handbook will vary from those in your vehicle.

For Australia/New Zealand: general

When reading this Owner's Handbook, please bear the following in mind: to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards, we pursue a policy of continuous, ongoing development. Because modifications in the design of both vehicles and accessories may be introduced at any time, your own vehicle's equipment may vary from that described in this handbook. For the same reason, it is also impossible to guarantee that all descriptions will be completely accurate in all respects.

We must therefore request your understanding of the fact that the manufacturer of your vehicle is unable to recognise legal claims based on discrepancies between the data, illustrations and descriptions in this Owner's Handbook and your own vehicle's equipment. Please note, too, that some of the optional equipment described in this manual is not available on Australian models due to restrictions imposed by Australian Design Rules and other requirements.

Should you require any further information, please contact your Service centre, who will be pleased to advise you.

Validity of Owner's Handbook

Vehicle production

At the time of production in the factory, the printed Owner's Handbook provides up-to-date information. Updates following the copy deadline can result in differences between the printed Owner's Handbook and the integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.

You will find notes on any updates in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – for example, a Remote Software Upgrade – the integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain updated information.

Your own safety

Intended use

Please comply with the following when using the vehicle:

- ▷ Owner's Handbook.
- ▷ Information attached to the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- ▷ Technical data of the vehicle.
- ▷ The applicable laws and safety standards of the country in which the vehicle is used.
- ▷ Vehicle papers and legal documents.

Warranty

The vehicle is technically designed for the operating conditions and approval (homologation) requirements of the country to which it was first delivered. If the vehicle is to be driven in another country, it may need to be adapted beforehand to any different operating conditions and approval requirements prevailing in that country. If the vehicle does not comply with the homologation

requirements in a certain country, no warranty claims can be lodged there for the vehicle. Warranty claims can also be invalidated if the on-board network has been modified, e.g. through the use of control units, hardware or software that have been classified as unsuitable by the vehicle manufacturer A Service Partner is able to provide further information.

Maintenance and repairs

The advanced technology used in your vehicle, for example the state-of-the-art materials and high-performance electronics, requires appropriate maintenance and repair methods.

Consequently, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having corresponding work carried out by a BMW Service Partner. If another BMW authorised workshop is chosen, BMW recommends choosing one that performs work, for example maintenance and repair, according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel. In the Owner's Handbook, facilities of this kind are referred to as "another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop".

If work such as maintenance and repair is carried out incorrectly, it could result in consequential damage with associated safety risks.

Work performed incorrectly on the vehicle paintwork can cause components, for example the radar sensors, to fail or malfunction, resulting in a safety risk.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends using parts and accessories that are approved by BMW and are therefore suitable for this purpose.

You are recommended to consult a BMW Service Partner for advice on genuine BMW parts and accessories, other BMW approved products and expert advice on all related matters.

The safety and compatibility of these products in conjunction with BMW vehicles have been checked by BMW.

BMW accepts product responsibility for genuine BMW parts and accessories. On the other hand, BMW cannot accept liability for parts or accessory products of any kind which it has not approved.

BMW is unable to assess each individual product of outside origin as to its suitability for use on BMW vehicles without safety risk. Likewise no guarantee can be be assumed even if the product has been granted official approval in a specific country. Tests performed for such approvals cannot always cover all operating conditions for BMW vehicles, and some of them therefore are insufficient.

Vehicle data and data protection

Responsibility and rights

Responsibility for data

Within the scope of data protection directives and legislation, the manufacturer of the vehicle is responsible for the processing of personal data which is collected when the vehicle is used or from web pages, customer support, online services and marketing campaigns.

Personal identification

Every vehicle has a unique vehicle identification number. Depending on the country, a vehicle owner can be identified with the assistance of the vehicle identification number, the number plate and the relevant authorities. There are also other ways of tracing data collected in the vehicle back to the driver or vehicle owner, for example via the ConnectedDrive account used.

Data protection laws

In accordance with current data protection law, vehicle users have certain rights they may assert against the vehicle manufacturer or companies that collect or process their personal data.

Vehicle users have a free and comprehensive right to information from organisations which save their personal data.

These organisations could be:

- Vehicle manufacturer.
- Qualified Service Partners.
- Specialist workshops.
- Service providers.

Vehicle users may request information about what personal data has been saved, what it is used for and where it has come from. Proof of ownership or use is required in order to obtain this information.

The right of access also extends to information about data that has been transferred to other companies or bodies.

Please refer to the vehicle manufacturer's website for the applicable data privacy policy. This data privacy policy contains information about the right to have data deleted or corrected. The vehicle manufacturer's website also provides its contact details and those of its data protection officer.

The vehicle owner can have the data that is stored in the vehicle read out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop, on payment of a fee where applicable.

The legally required on-board diagnosis OBD socket in the vehicle is used to read out the vehicle data.

Data processing

The collection of personal data may be necessary to enable the manufacturer of the vehicle to fulfil obligations to the customer or legislator or to offer high-quality products and services.

These include, for example:

- Fulfilling contractual obligations regarding the sale, servicing and repair of vehicles, for example sales processes, maintenance.
- Fulfilling contractual obligations for the provision of digital services relating to the vehicle, for example BMW ConnectedDrive.
- Ensuring product quality, research and development for new products, as well as optimising service processes.
- Performing sales, service and administration processes, including branches and National Sales Companies.
- Customer support, for example contract processing.
- Advertising communication and market research on the basis of personal consent.
- Fulfilling legal obligations, for example information regarding Technical Campaigns.
- Processing warranty claims.

Data collection

Type of data collected

Depending on the situation, the following personal data may be collected.

Contact details

Name, address, phone number, email address.

Personal data

- Personal information provided by customers, for example date of birth, education, household size or occupation.
- Data to determine identity, for example driver's licence.

Contract data

- Customer number, contract number, booked online services.
- Stored payment information, for example credit card number.

Credit rating

- Information about transactions.
- Information about fraud or criminal offences.

Interests

Information provided by the customer regarding areas of interest, for example product preferences, hobbies and other personal preferences.

Use of web pages and communication

- Information on how web pages are used and whether messages are opened or forwarded.
- Account information regarding online services, customer portals and prospective customer portals.

Transaction and interaction data

Information on the purchasing of products and services, interactions with customer support and participation in market research studies.

Use of apps and services of the vehicle manufacturer

Information on the use of apps on mobile devices and online services.

Information on vehicle functions and settings

Information on functions and settings for the vehicle, for example when using online services.

Vehicle-related sensor data and usage data

Data which is generated and/or processed in the vehicle.

- Driver assistance systems: processing sensor data which is used to evaluate the vehicle surroundings or the driver's behaviour.
- Personal settings: settings saved in the vehicle profile, for example seat setting.
- Multimedia, navigation, for example destinations.

Time of data collection

Personal data may be collected at the following times:

- When the customer makes direct contact with the manufacturer of the vehicle, for example via the web page.
- When requesting information on products and services or direct purchases, for example on web pages or in apps.
- When making direct purchases, for example on the web page.
- When purchasing services directly, for example online services.
- When responding to the customer regarding direct marketing activities, for example when personal data is provided.
- When using vehicles, products, services and digital offers, for example web pages, apps.
- When transferring personal data through qualified partners of the vehicle manufacturer or through third-party providers, provided that data protection requirements are met.
- When providing personal data through certified address providers, provided that data protection requirements are met.
- When reading out vehicle data, including the vehicle identification number, during service and repair activities.

Data in the vehicle

General

A number of electronic control devices are installed in your vehicle. Electronic control units process data that they receive from vehicle sensors, generate themselves or exchange with one another, for example. A high number of control units are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance during driving, for example driver assistance systems. There are also control devices which manage comfort or infotainment functions.

Data saved in the vehicle can be deleted at any time. This data is only transmitted to third parties if expressly requested in the course of using on-

line services. The transfer depends on the settings selected for using the services.

Sensor data

Driver assistance systems, for example Active Cruise Control, collision warning or Attentiveness Assistant, process sensor data which is used to evaluate the vehicle surroundings or the driver's behaviour.

These include, for example:

- ▷ Status reports relating to the vehicle and its individual components, for example wheel speed, wheel circumferential velocity, deceleration, lateral acceleration, fastened seat belts.
- ▷ Ambient conditions, for example temperature, rain sensor signals.

The data is processed within the vehicle and is usually transient. It is only saved for longer than the operating period if it is required in order to provide services agreed with the customer.

Electronic components

Electronic parts, for example control devices and vehicle keys, contain components for storing technical information. Information about the vehicle's condition, component use and wear, maintenance requirements, events or errors can be stored temporarily or permanently.

This information generally documents the condition of a component, a module, a system or the vehicle surroundings, including:

- ▷ Operating states of system components, for example fill levels, tyre inflation pressure, battery status.
- ▷ Malfunctions and faults of important system components, for example lights and brakes.
- ▷ Responses of the vehicle to particular driving situations, for example triggering of an airbag, activation of the drive stability control systems.
- ▷ Information on vehicle-damaging events.

The data is required so that the control units can perform their functions. It is also used for detecting and rectifying malfunctions, as well as to optimise vehicle functions.

Most of this data is transient and is only processed within the vehicle itself. Only a small proportion of the data is stored in event or error memories in response to specific circumstances.

Personal settings

Convenience functions, such as seat, climate or light settings, make every journey even more pleasant. The personal settings for these functions can be saved in a profile within the vehicle and retrieved on request, for example if the settings have been changed by another driver. Depending on the equipment, these profiles can be saved in the vehicle manufacturer's secure data systems. When the driver changes vehicle, these saved profiles can simply be applied to a different vehicle.

The vehicle settings saved in the vehicle profile can be changed or deleted at any time.

Multimedia and navigation

Data can also be imported into the vehicle entertainment and communication system, for example via a smartphone or MP3 player. The imported data can be processed within the vehicle, for example to play the user's favourite music.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, this data includes:

- ▷ Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- ▷ Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- ▷ Destinations: depending on the equipment, route guidance can be started automatically with the aid of destinations which have been taught in by the navigation system.
- ▷ Data on usage of Internet services.

This data may be saved locally in the vehicle or stored on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, for example a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player.

Service data

General

When service work is required, for example repairs, service operations, warranty work and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number.

Stored data

Electronic vehicle components may contain data storage media which store technical information relating to the vehicle condition, events and errors. The data required for service measures is processed locally and is deleted automatically once the work is complete. A Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop can read out the information. As part of service and repair orders, data is read out via the OBD diagnostic socket using special diagnosis systems and transferred to the vehicle manufacturer. The customer is entitled to object to the data being read out and forwarded.

Optimising service processes

The vehicle manufacturer maintains documentation relating to each vehicle to ensure the best possible service is provided. Within the scope of legal requirements, this documentation may be made available to authorised third parties, for example specialist workshops.

The independent operators may only use this data for the purposes of performing the service or repair order in question. This prevents work from being duplicated unnecessarily on the vehicle, for example.

Ensuring product quality

The data logs the technical conditions of the vehicle and helps in locating errors, complying with warranty obligations and improving quality.

To ensure product quality and the development of new products, data on the usage of individual components and systems may be read out, for example lights, brakes, power windows, displays. This data helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimise the design of components and systems. Data analysis also provides the basis for Technical Campaigns and statutory recalls.

Furthermore, the manufacturer has product monitoring obligations to meet in line with product liability law. To fulfil these obligations, the vehicle manufacturer requires technical data from the vehicle.

Goodwill and warranty claims

Data from the vehicle can also be used to check customer warranty claims. If goodwill or warranty claims are asserted, the data is read out and transferred to the vehicle manufacturer to resolve the claims promptly.

Error and event memories in the vehicle can be reset when a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop performs repair or servicing work.

Control over data

Data transferred to the vehicle manufacturer for the purposes of ensuring product quality or optimising service processes can be prevented upon request.

Legal requirements regarding data disclosure

According to current law, the vehicle manufacturer is obliged to provide the authorities with any data it has stored. Data is provided to the extent required and on a case-by-case basis, for example to investigate a criminal offence.

The current law also gives state bodies authorisation to read out data from the vehicle them-

selves for individual cases. This could include reading out data from the airbag control device to shed light on the circumstances of an accident, for example.

Mobile devices

Depending on the equipment, mobile devices such as smartphones can be connected to the vehicle and used to control vehicle functions, for example BMW Connected, Apple CarPlay. Sound and images from the mobile device may be played back or displayed through the multimedia system in the vehicle, for example.

Selected information is transferred to the mobile device at the same time. Depending on the type of integration, this includes position data and other general vehicle information, for example. This optimises the way in which selected apps, for example navigation or music playback, work. How the data is processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used.

Services

General

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, this enables data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems, for example with BMW ConnectedDrive.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the relevant functions are described in the appropriate place, for example the Owner's Handbook or manufacturer's website. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection is also provided.

Personal data may be used to provide online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection, for example with the data systems of the vehicle manufacturer intended for this purpose.

Any collection, processing and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services always requires legal permission, a contractual agreement or consent of the user.

BMW ConnectedDrive

BMW ConnectedDrive networks the vehicle with a whole host of digital services. When used, only the data saved in the vehicle that is required to perform the agreed service is transferred online, for example information on identifying and locating the vehicle. The basis is a contractual agreement with the user.

In individual cases, the transfer of data is triggered as a result of predefined events, such as an intelligent emergency call. The wireless network connection is established via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for example smartphones. Data transfer can be deactivated on request.

The wireless network connection enables online functions to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence over the data that is exchanged.

Information as to how personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant provider.

Personal decision

Every user decides for themselves whether they wish to enter into a contract for a service such as BMW ConnectedDrive. Information is provided in writing regarding the scope and content of data processing before the service is acquired and forms part of the vehicle handover.

The user has the option to deactivate the services at any time and, as a result, to stop the processing of data required for the services. It is also possible to have the entire data connection activated or deactivated. Excluded from this are functions and services which are required by law, for example emergency call systems.

Transparency concerning vehicle data

BMW CarData provides transparency regarding how vehicle data is handled when BMW ConnectedDrive is used. BMW CarData enables users to control whether vehicle data that is processed in the context of BMW ConnectedDrive is transferred to third parties. Users can decide for each individual service offering whether data access is to be granted or refused for third parties, for example for insurance companies.

An archive from BMW CarData can also be requested at any time. The archive provides information regarding the data that has been transmitted and saved in the context of BMW ConnectedDrive. BMW CarData can only be accessed by third-party providers via servers of the vehicle manufacturer. No direct access to the vehicle and its data is granted.

More information on BMW CarData is available on the BMW ConnectedDrive customer portal.

Statutory emergency call system

Principle

The eCall emergency call system required by law enables manual or automatic emergency calls to be issued in the event of accidents, for example.

The emergency calls are answered by the public rescue coordination centre.

General

For information on the eCall statutory on-board emergency call system based on the 112 emergency call, as well as its operation and its functions, see the chapter on emergency calls.

The eCall service based on the 112 emergency call is a public service of general interest and is provided free of charge.

If a serious accident occurs, the eCall statutory emergency call system is activated automatically by on-board sensors as a standard feature. It is also triggered automatically if the vehicle is equipped with an intelligent emergency call system that fails to work in the event of a serious accident.

The eCall statutory emergency call system can also be triggered manually if required.

If a critical system failure occurs that would put the eCall statutory emergency call system out of operation, the passengers receive a warning.

For further information:

- ▷ Emergency call, see page 414.
- ▷ Malfunction, see page 415.

Information on data processing

The eCall statutory emergency call system processes personal data in accordance with the following regulations:

- ▷ Protection of personal data: regulation 2016/679/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council.
- ▷ Protection of personal data: directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council.

Personal data is only processed for the purpose of transmitting eCall emergency calls to the standardised European emergency call number 112.

SIM card

The eCall statutory emergency call system operates via mobile communications through the SIM card installed in the vehicle. The SIM card is not permanently connected to the mobile telephone network; rather, it remains connected only as long as the emergency call is active.

Data types and their recipients

The eCall statutory emergency call system may only collect and process the following data:

- ▷ The vehicle identification number for rapidly identifying the vehicle, for example the model.
- ▷ Vehicle type, for example passenger car.
- ▷ Type of vehicle drive, for example petrol or diesel, for assessing the risks involved in a rescue, for example the risk of fire caused by fuel.
- ▷ The vehicle's position at the time of the accident, its last three locations and the driving direction in order to locate the vehicle more quickly on very complex route sections, for example.
- ▷ A log of the automatic system activation, along with the time stamp.
- ▷ Control information, which tells rescue services whether the emergency call was triggered automatically or manually, for example.
- ▷ A time stamp for determining the time of the accident in order to optimise the deployment plans of the rescue services.
- ▷ The driving direction for establishing which side of a motorway carriageway is affected, for example.

The authorities of the state in whose territory the eCall system emergency call is made determine which emergency call centres receive and process the statutory emergency call.

Data processing configuration

The eCall statutory emergency call system ensures that the data contained in the system memory cannot be accessed outside the system before an emergency call is triggered.

The data collected for the eCall statutory emergency call system is only saved in the vehicle and sent to the rescue coordination centre when an emergency call is triggered.

The eCall statutory emergency call system ensures that it cannot be traced and there is no permanent tracking during normal operation.

The eCall statutory emergency call system ensures that the data in the internal system memory is deleted automatically and continuously.

The vehicle's location data is continuously overwritten in the system's internal memory so that only the vehicle's last three locations - which the system needs for normal operation - are ever stored.

The activity data log of the eCall statutory emergency call system is retained only for as long as is necessary to handle the eCall emergency call and under no circumstances for any longer than 13 hours after the eCall emergency call was triggered.

Rights of individuals affected by data processing

The individual affected by data processing, for example the vehicle owner, has the right to access the data and can request that data concerning him or her that is not processed in accordance with the statutory regulations be corrected, deleted or blocked as applicable. Each time that data is corrected, deleted or blocked in line with these regulations, the third parties to whom the data was transmitted must be notified, insofar as this is reasonably practical.

The individual affected by data processing has the right to complain to the relevant data protection body if he or she believes that his or her rights have been violated by having their that personal data processed.

For matters relating to access rights, please contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Intelligent emergency call system

Principle

The intelligent emergency call system enables manual or automatic emergency calls to be placed, for example in the event of an accident.

The emergency calls are answered by an emergency call centre appointed by the vehicle manufacturer.

In addition to the intelligent emergency call system, the eCall statutory emergency call system is present in the vehicle and is active depending on the situation.

The vehicle owner has the right to use either the intelligent emergency call system or the eCall statutory emergency call system.

For further information:

Emergency call, see page 414.

Legal basis

The intelligent emergency call system processes personal data in accordance with the following regulations:

- ▷ Protection of personal data: directive 95/46/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council.
- ▷ Protection of personal data: directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council.

The ConnectedDrive contract concluded for this function, as well as the relevant laws, ordinances and directives of the European Parliament and the European Council provide the legal basis for the activation and function of the intelligent emergency call system.

The relevant ordinances and directives govern the protection of individuals in terms of processing personal data.

The intelligent emergency call system processes personal data in accordance with European directives on the protection of personal data.

The intelligent emergency call system processes personal data only with the vehicle owner's consent.

The intelligent emergency call system and other added-value services may only process personal data with the express consent of the individual affected by data processing, for example the vehicle owner.

SIM card

The intelligent emergency call system operates via mobile communications through the SIM card installed in the vehicle. The SIM card is permanently logged into the mobile telephone network so a connection can be established quickly. The data is sent to the vehicle manufacturer in the event of an emergency.

Improving quality

The vehicle manufacturer also uses the data sent as part of an emergency call to improve product and service quality.

Position determination

Only the provider of the mobile telephone network is able to determine the position of the vehicle based on mobile telephone mast locations. The network operator is not able to link the vehicle identification number to the telephone number of the installed SIM card. Only the vehicle manufacturer is able to link the vehicle identification number to the telephone number of the installed SIM card.

Log data for emergency calls

The log data for emergency calls is saved in a vehicle memory. The oldest log data is regularly deleted. The log data includes information on when and where an emergency call was placed, for example in the event of an accident.

In exceptional cases, the log data can be read out from the vehicle memory. It is usually only possible for log data to be read out with a court order and if the corresponding devices are directly connected to the vehicle.

Automatic emergency call

The system has been designed so that an emergency call is triggered automatically following an accident of a certain severity, which is detected by the sensors in the vehicle.

Sent information

If an emergency call is made by the intelligent emergency call system, the same information is conveyed to the appointed emergency call centre as is normally conveyed to the public rescue coordination centre by the eCall statutory emergency call system.

Furthermore, the intelligent emergency call system also conveys the following additional information to an emergency call centre appointed by the vehicle manufacturer and, where applicable, to the public rescue coordination centre:

- ▷ Accident data, for example the direction of the collision as detected by the vehicle sensors in order to facilitate the deployment plans of the rescue services.
- ▷ Contact data, for example the telephone number of the installed SIM card and the driver's telephone number, if available, so that those involved in the accident can be contacted quickly if necessary.

Data storage

The data relating to an emergency call that has been triggered is saved in the vehicle. The data contains information about the emergency call, for example the place and time it was issued.

The emergency call centre saves audio recordings of the emergency call.

Audio recordings of the customer are saved for 24 hours, in case details of the emergency call need to be analysed. After that, the audio recordings are deleted. Audio recordings of the emergency call centre employee are saved for 24 hours for quality assurance purposes.

Disclosure of personal data

The data obtained in the context of an intelligent emergency call is only used to process the emergency call. If legally obliged to do so, the vehicle manufacturer will disclose the data it has processed and, where applicable, still has saved.

Statutory emergency call system

The owner of a vehicle equipped with an intelligent emergency call system and the eCall statutory emergency call system has the right to use the on-board eCall system instead of the intelligent emergency call function.

To request deactivation, please contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

The eCall statutory emergency call system is always on standby in addition to the intelligent emergency call system. The eCall statutory emergency call system takes over the emergency call function if the intelligent emergency call system is not functional for technical reasons, for example if the emergency call centre appointed by the vehicle manufacturer cannot be reached.

The eCall statutory emergency call system uses the infrastructure of the 112 public emergency call number.

The system can be configured so that emergency calls are always made via the eCall statutory emergency call system and not via the intelligent emergency call system. Have the setting configured by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Vehicle identification number

General

Depending on the national-market version, the vehicle identification number is located at different positions in the vehicle. This chapter describes all the positions that are possible for the model range.

Engine compartment

The vehicle identification number is engraved in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Type plate on right-hand side

The vehicle identification number is on the type plate on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Type plate on left-hand side

The vehicle identification number is on the type plate, on the left-hand side of the vehicle.

Windscreen

The vehicle identification number is additionally located behind the windscreen.

iDrive

It is also possible to display the vehicle identification number via iDrive.

For further information:

Viewing the vehicle identification number and software part number, see page 85.

Safety of the hybrid system

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Working on the vehicle

General

Therefore, changes and work on the vehicle, for example, even retrofitting of accessories must only be carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop that operates to BMW specifications with suitably trained personnel.

Safety note

DANGER

An electric shock can occur if the work is not carried out correctly, in particular maintenance and repair of the high-voltage system. There is a risk of injury, fire or death. Work on the vehicle, especially maintenance, repair or modifications, is only allowed to be carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Contact with water

The hybrid system is generally also safe in the following example situations:

- ▷ Water in the footwell, for example after a rain shower with the window open.
- ▷ Vehicle is in water up to the specified fording depth.
- ▷ Liquid spills in the boot.

Automatic deactivation

In the event of an accident the hybrid system is shut down automatically, so as not to endanger vehicle occupants and other road users.

For further information:

Conduct after an accident, see page 417.

Owner's Handbook media

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

Media overview

Content from the Owner's Handbook can be accessed in different formats. The following Owner's Handbook media formats are available:

- ▷ Printed Owner's Handbook.
- ▷ Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.

Validity of Owner's Handbook

Vehicle production

At the time of production in the factory, the printed Owner's Handbook provides up-to-date information. Updates following the copy deadline can result in differences between the printed Owner's Handbook and the integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.

You will find notes on any updates in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – for example, a Remote Software Upgrade – the integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain updated information.

Printed Owner's Handbook

Principle

The printed Owner's Handbook describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series.

General

The Owner's Handbook for navigation, entertainment and communication is available as a printed book from Service.

Supplementary Owner's Handbooks

Please also follow the supplementary Owner's Handbooks which are attached in addition to the on-board literature as necessary.

Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle

Principle

The integrated Owner's Handbook describes the specific equipment and functions present in the vehicle.

The Integrated Owner's Handbook can be shown in the Control Display.

Selecting the Owner's Handbook

1. HOME Press the button.
2. "CAR"

3. "Owner's Handbook"
4. Select the required method of accessing the contents.

Scrolling within the Owner's Handbook

Turn the Controller until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context-sensitive help

General

The integrated Owner's Handbook can be called up from any menu. Depending on the selected function, the associated description or main menu of the integrated Owner's Handbook is displayed.

Calling up when using iDrive

Switch to the Options menu directly from the function on the Control Display:

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Help"

Calling up when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

"Owner's Handbook"

Favourites buttons

General

Shortcuts to the Owner's Handbook can be saved to functional bookmarks and called up directly.

Saving

1. Select the required jump using iDrive:
   - ▷ "Keyword search"
   - ▷ "Picture search"
   - ▷ "Operating tips"
   - ▷ "Quick reference"
   - ▷ "Chapters"
   - ▷ "Quicklist"
2. 1... 8 Press and hold the desired button until the bar shown on the control display has fully loaded.

Calling up

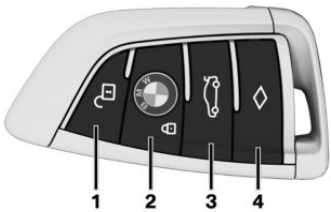
1... 8 Press the appropriate button.

Owner's Handbook is displayed directly with the selected shortcut.

Getting in

Opening and closing

Buttons on the vehicle key



1 To unlock
2 Locking
3 To open/close the tailgate
4 Function adjustable:
Headlight courtesy delay feature, standing air conditioning

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the vehicle key.

Depending on the settings, only the driver's door or all vehicle access points are unlocked.

If only the driver's door is unlocked, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

Keep the button on the vehicle key pressed after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof are opened for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

All vehicle entrances are locked.

Keep the button on the vehicle key pressed after locking.

The windows and the glass sunroof are closed for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Central locking buttons

Overview

Central locking buttons.

Locking

Press the button with the front doors closed.

Unlocking

Press the button.

Comfort Access

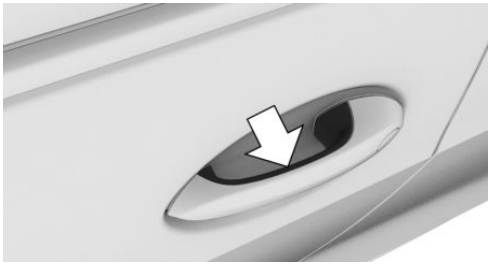
Principle

This feature allows you to access the vehicle without having to operate the vehicle key.

Simply having the vehicle key with you, for example in your trouser pocket, is sufficient.

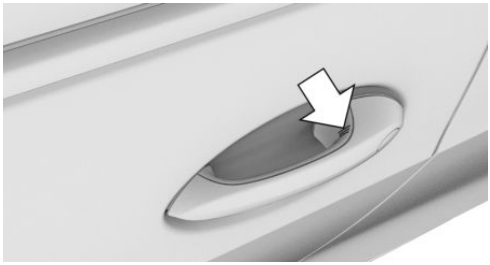
The vehicle automatically recognises the vehicle key when it is in the immediate vicinity or inside the vehicle.

Unlocking the vehicle



Fully grip the handle of a vehicle door.

Locking the vehicle



With your finger, touch the grooved area on the handle of a closed vehicle door for approximately 1 second, without gripping the door handle.

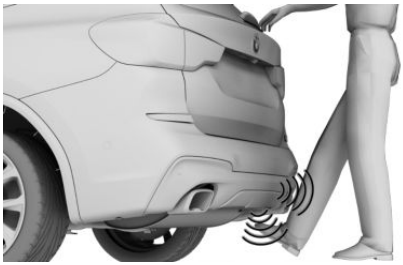
Opening and closing the tailgate contactlessly

Principle

The tailgate can be opened and closed contactlessly, provided you are carrying the vehicle key with you.

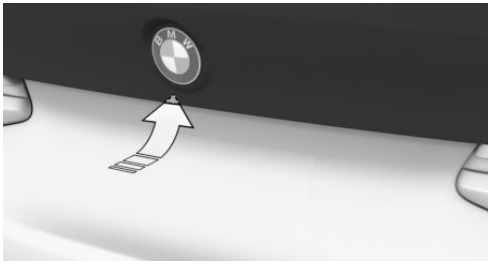
Correct foot movement

1. Stand in the centre behind the vehicle, approximately an arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Kick your foot underneath the vehicle and immediately pull it back. Your leg must move across the ranges of both sensors.



Tailgate

Opening



▷ Unlock the vehicle, then press the button on the outside of the tailgate.

▷ Press the button on the vehicle key for approximately 1 second.

Doors are unlocked if appropriate.

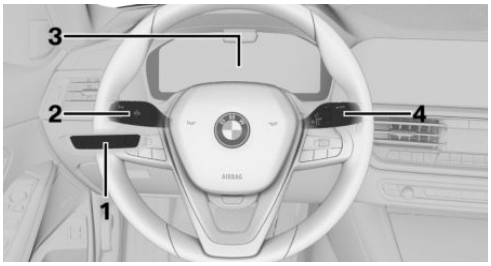
Closing

▷ Press and hold the button on the vehicle key until the tailgate has closed.

▷ Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.

Displays, control functions

Around the steering wheel



1 Light switch element
2 Turn indicator, high-beam headlights
3 Instrument cluster
4 Wipers

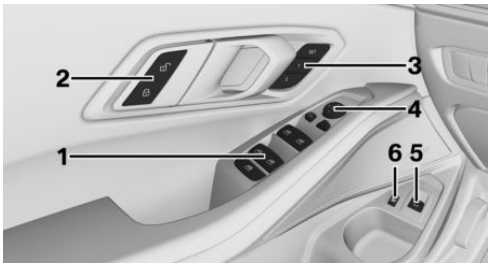
Indicator and warning lamps

Instrument cluster

Indicator and warning lamps can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colours.

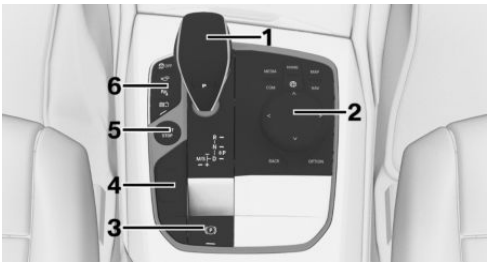
When drive-ready state is switched on, the functionality of some lights is checked and they illuminate briefly.

Driver's door



1 Power window switches
2 Central locking system
3 Seats, comfort functions
4 Exterior mirror
5 To open/close the tailgate
6 Tank aeration

Switch cluster



1 Selector lever
2 Controller
3 Parking brake, Automatic Hold
4 Driving Experience Control
5 Start/stop button
6 Assistance systems

iDrive

Principle

iDrive brings together the functions of a number of switches. These functions can be operated using the Controller.

Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
HOME	To call up the main menu.
	Go to the Apps menu.
MEDIA	To call up the Media/Radio menu.
COM	To call up the Communication menu.
MAP	To call up the navigation map.

Button	Function
NAV	To call up the destination entry menu of the navigation system.
BACK	To call up the previous screen.
OPTION	To call up the Options menu.

Voice control

Activating the voice control system

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the acoustic signal.
3. Say the command.

This symbol indicates that the voice control system is active.

It is possible that no further spoken commands are available for this function. In this case, switch to iDrive to operate the function.

Switching off the voice control system

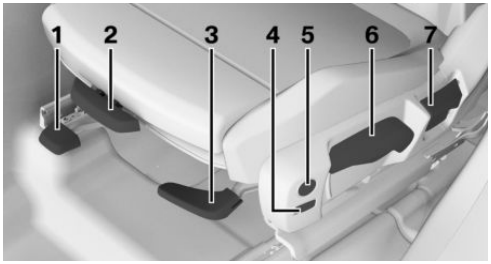
Press the button on the steering wheel or say ›Cancel‹.

This symbol indicates that the voice control system is deactivated.

Adjustment and operation

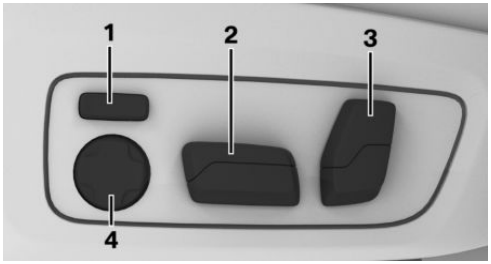
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Manually adjustable seats



1 Forward/back
2 Thigh support
3 Seat angle
4 Backrest width
5 Lumbar support
6 Height
7 Backrest angle

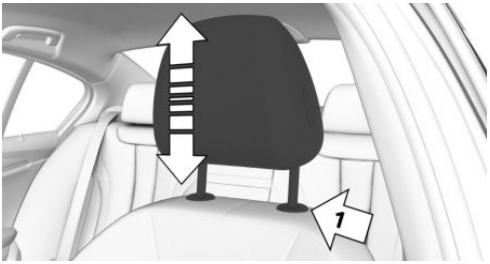
Electrically adjustable seats



1 Backrest width
2 Forward/back, height, seat angle
3 Backrest tilt, head restraint
4 Lumbar support

To adjust the head restraint

Adjusting the height: manual head restraints

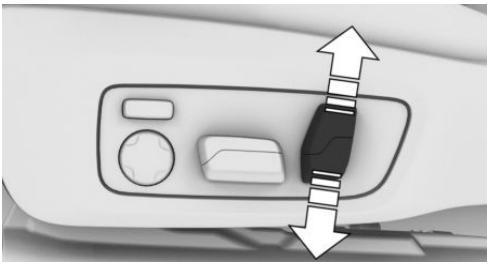


▷ Down: press the button, arrow 1, and slide the head restraint downwards.

▷ Up: push the head restraint upwards.

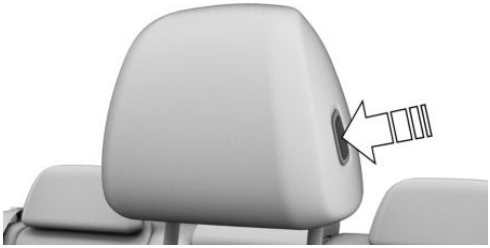
After adjusting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height: electric head restraints



Press the switch up or down.

Distance from back of head



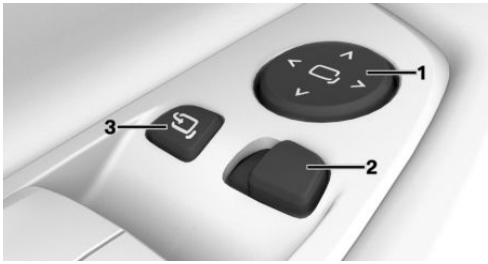
- ▷ Back: press the button and slide the head restraint towards the rear.
- ▷ Forward: pull the head restraint forwards.

After adjusting the distance, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the distance: M sport seat

The distance from the back of the head is adjusted by the seat backrest angle.

To adjust the exterior mirrors



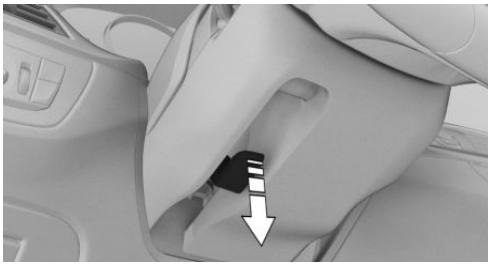
1 To adjust

2 To select a mirror, automatic parking function

3 To fold in and out

To adjust the steering wheel

Manual steering wheel adjustment



1. Fold the lever downwards.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seated position.
3. Swing the lever back up.

Memory function

Principle

The memory function enables the following settings to be stored and retrieved when required:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Exterior mirror position.
- ▷ Height of the Head-Up Display.

Saving

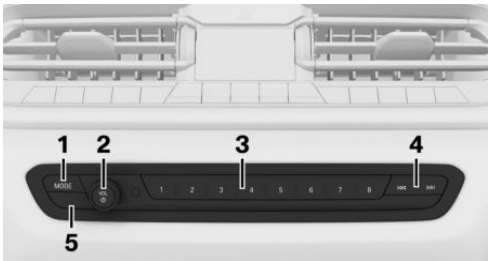
1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press the button on the door. The lettering in the button is illuminated.
3. Press the desired button 1 or 2 at the door while the lettering is illuminated. A signal sounds.

Retrieving settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

Infotainment

Depending on the national-market version: radio



1 To change the entertainment source

2 Sound output on/off, volume

3 Favourites buttons

4 Changing station/track

5 Traffic information

Change waveband

Navigation destination entry

Entering the destination using the quick-search function

1. NAV Press the button on the Controller.
2. "Search"
3. Enter at least two letters or characters.

   If applicable, the search term will be automatically completed in grey text.

   Press the Controller or tilt it upwards to accept the suggested search term.
4. OK Select symbol as appropriate.

   The results are shown as a list.
5. "Search location": select search location if applicable.
6. Tilt the Controller to the right.
7. Select the desired destination.

Connecting mobile telephone

General

Once the mobile telephone has been connected in the vehicle, it can be operated using iDrive and the buttons on the steering wheel.

Connecting the mobile telephone via Bluetooth

1. "COM"
2. If applicable, set the following setting: "Telephone"
3. "Connect new telephone"
4. To perform other operations on the mobile telephone; see the user manual of the mobile telephone: for example finding/connecting Bluetooth device or new device.

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is shown on the display of the mobile telephone. Select the vehicle's Bluetooth name.
5. Depending on the mobile device, either a control number is displayed, or you will have to enter the control number yourself.

   ▷ Compare the control number shown on the Control Display with the control number in the device display.

   Confirm the control number in the device and on the Control Display.

   ▷ Enter the same control number on the device and via iDrive then confirm.

   The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Telephony

Accepting a call

Depending on the vehicle equipment, incoming calls can be accepted in different ways.

▷ Via iDrive:

"Accept"

▷ /

Press the relevant button on the steering wheel.

▷ Via the selection list in the instrument cluster:

Select using the knurled wheel on the steering wheel: "Accept"

▷ Via the touchscreen: tap the corresponding entry on the control display.

▷ By gestures: point towards the Control Display using your index finger.

Dialling a number

1. "COM"
2. If necessary, "Telephone"
3. "Dial number:"
4. Enter the numbers.
5. Select the symbol. The call is made using the mobile telephone to which the telephone function is assigned.

To make a call via the additional telephone:

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Call via"

Apple CarPlay preparation

Principle

CarPlay makes it possible to operate certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone by Siri voice operation and using iDrive.

Operating requirements

▷ Compatible iPhone, iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.

▷ Appropriate mobile radio contract.

▷ The setting for mobile data may need to be activated on the iPhone.

▷ Bluetooth, WLAN and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.

▷ WLAN is activated in the vehicle.

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. "New device"
4. "Phone calls and audio"

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is shown on the control display.
5. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
6. Compare the control number shown on the control display with the control number on the mobile device display, and confirm that the two match.
7. "Use Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

On the move

Driving

Drive-ready state

Switching on drive-ready state

1. Press the brake.
2. Press the start/stop button.

Drive-ready state is active:

▷ Starting the internal combustion engine.

▷ Drive-ready state for electric driving without starting the internal combustion engine.

Switching off drive-ready state

1. With the vehicle at a standstill, engage selector lever position P.
2. Press the start/stop button.

   The engine is switched off.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Hybrid system driving modes

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Button	Drive mode
HYBRID	In HYBRID STANDARD and HYBRID ECO PRO, the vehicle is propelled in hybrid mode; in other words, in combined propulsion with the internal combustion engine and electric motor.
ELECTRIC	In ELECTRIC STANDARD and ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL, the vehicle is driven exclusively electrically. ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL can be specified as the default mode.
	With BATTERY CONTROL, the electric range can be retained and conserved for a later point in the journey or increased if necessary.

Automatic Start/Stop function

The Automatic Start/Stop function helps you to save fuel. The system therefore shuts down the internal combustion engine, if the preconditions for electric driving are met. The standby state remains switched on. READY is shown in the instrument cluster. If needed, the internal combustion engine starts automatically.

Parking brake

Engaging

Pull the switch.

The LED on the switch and the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster are illuminated.

Releasing

With drive-ready state switched on:

Steptronic transmission: press the switch with the brakes applied or selector lever position P engaged.

LED and indicator lamp turn off.

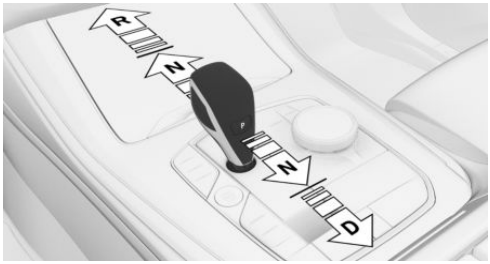
The parking brake is released.

Steptronic transmission: parking

The parking brake is automatically applied when the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold and the drive-ready state is switched off or the vehicle is exited.

Steptronic transmission

Engaging selector lever positions D, N, R



- ▷ D drive position.
- ▷ N neutral.
- ▷ R reverse.

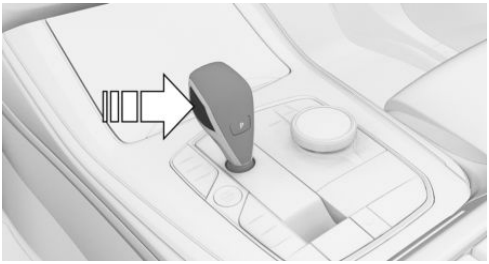
With the driver's seat belt fastened, briefly press the selector lever in the desired direction, possibly overcoming a resistance point. Selector lever returns to centre position in each case.

Apply the brakes until ready to drive off, otherwise the vehicle will move when a drive position or reverse gear is selected.

A selector lever lock prevents inadvertently shifting to selector lever position R or inadvertently shifting from selector lever position P.

Only engage selector lever position R when the vehicle is stationary.

Cancelling the selector lever lock



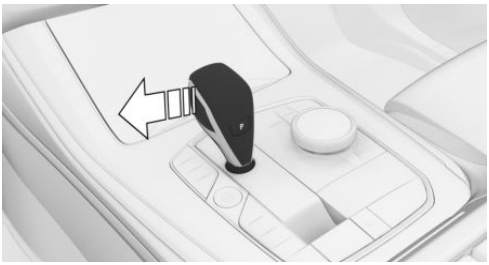
Press the button.

Engaging P

Only engage selector lever position P when the vehicle is stationary.

Press button P.

Steptronic transmission, sport programme and manual operation



Activate sport programme/manual operation:

Press the selector lever out of selector lever position D to the left.

Manual operation:

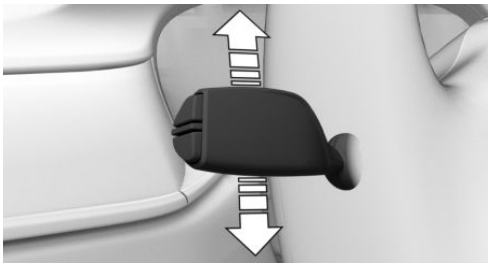
- ▷ To shift down: press the selector lever forwards.
- ▷ To shift up: pull the selector lever backwards.

Deactivate sport programme/manual operation:

Press the selector lever to the right.

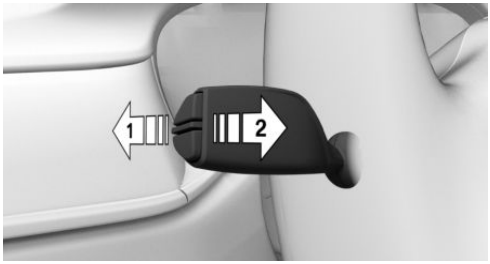
Turn indicators, high-beam headlights, headlight flasher

Turn indicator



- ▷ On: press the lever beyond the resistance point.
- ▷ Off: press the lever in the opposite direction beyond the resistance point.
- ▷ Triple turn signal: lightly tip the lever up or down.
- ▷ To indicate a turn briefly: press the lever as far as the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

High-beam headlights, headlight flasher



Push the lever forwards or pull it back.

- ▷ High-beam headlights on, arrow 1.

  The high-beam headlights are illuminated when the low-beam headlights are switched on.
- ▷ High-beam headlights off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Lights and lighting

Light functions

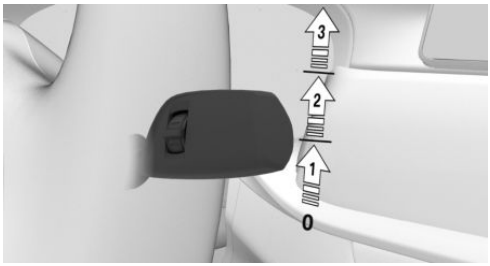
Symbol	Function
	Rear fog light.
	Front fog lights.
OFF	Lights off. Daytime running lights.
	Side lights.
AUTO	Automatic driving lights control. Adaptive light functions.
	Low-beam headlights.

Symbol	Function
	Instrument lighting.
	Parking light, right.
	Parking light, left.

Wiper system

Switching the wipers on/off and flick-wiping

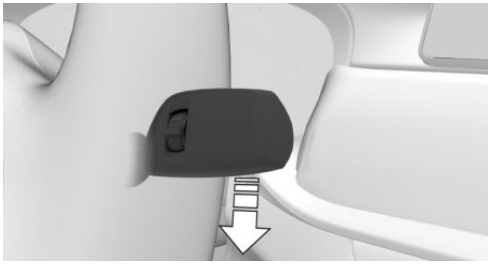
Switching on



Press the lever upwards to the desired position.

- ▷ Rest position of the wipers: position 0.
- ▷ Rain sensor: position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed: position 2.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed: position 3.

Switching off and flick-wiping

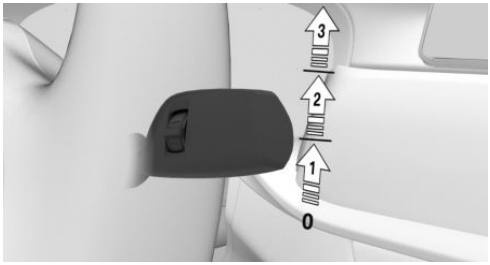


Press the lever down.

- ▷ To switch off: press the lever downwards to the home position.
- ▷ To flick-wipe: press the lever downwards from the home position.

Rain sensor

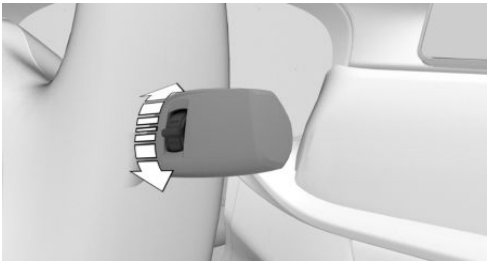
Activating/deactivating



To activate: press the lever up once from its home position, arrow 1.

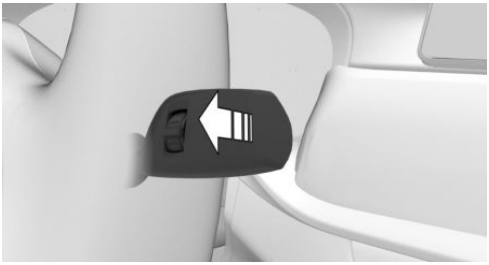
To deactivate: press the lever back to the home position.

To adjust the sensitivity



Turn the knurled wheel on the wiper lever.

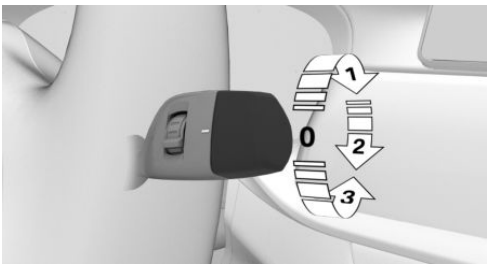
To clean the windscreen



Pull the wiper lever.

Rear wiper

Switching on



Turn the outer switch upwards.

- ▷ Rest position of the wiper, position 0.
- ▷ Intermittent mode, arrow 1. Engaging reverse gear activates continuous operation.

To clean the rear window

Turn the outer switch in the desired direction.

- ▷ In rest position: turn the switch downwards, arrow 3. The switch returns to the rest position when released.
- ▷ In intermittent operation: turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch returns to the intermittent position when released.

Air conditioning

Automatic air conditioning

Button	Function
▲ ▼	Temperature.
	Recirculated-air mode.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
AUTO	AUTO programme.
	Air distribution, manual.
OFF	Switch off.
MAX	Defrost the windscreen and remove condensation.
REAR	Rear window heating.
	Seat heating.
A/C	Air-conditioning mode.
	Air flow, manual.

Automatic air conditioning with extended functionality

Button	Function
	Temperature.
	Recirculated-air mode.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
AUTO	AUTO programme.
OFF	Air flow, manual. Switch off.
	Air distribution, manual.
MAX	Defrost the windscreen and remove condensation.
REAR	Rear window heating.
	Seat heating.
MENU A/C	Air-conditioning mode. To call up the air conditioning menu. For the following settings, for example: upper body temperature adjustment, independent ventilation.

Pit stop

Charging vehicle

Connecting

Charge point flap

The charge point flap is located on the left of the vehicle.

Keep charge point flap clean and clear.

Keep the charge point flap closed when the charge point is not being used.

Connecting a charging cable

To connect, engage selector lever position P, deactivate drive-ready state and unlock the vehicle. Apply parking brake if necessary.

1. To open the charge point flap, push on the upper edge, arrow. The charge point flap opens.

2. Connect the mode 2 charging cable to the domestic socket outlet or the mode 3 charging cable to the connection point on the AC charging station.

3. Position the charging cable connector on the charging socket and push it in as far as it will go.

Removing

General

During the charging process, the charging cable is automatically locked. Unlock the charging cable before removing.

Before pulling off, clean the area between the charge point flap and charging connection, for example to remove snow.

Removing a charging cable

1. Press the release button on the vehicle key or operate the door handle.

   Charging process is interrupted.

   The charging cable is unlocked for a short time.
2. Hold the charging cable by the gripping areas.
3. Remove charging cable from the charge point, arrow.

4. Press on the charge point flap until it engages.
5. Fit cover on charging cable connector if necessary.
6. If necessary, disconnect the mode 2 charging cable from the domestic socket outlet or the mode 3 charging cable from the connection point on the AC charging station.
7. Store charging cable.

   Plug in a fixed charging cable at a charging station in the place provided for it.

Refuelling

Aerating tank

An overpressure may form in the fuel tank as a result of petrol vapours which is dissipated before fuel tank cap is opened.

The button is located in the driver's door storage compartment.

1. Switch off drive-ready state.
2. Press button to start aerating.

   The tank aeration status is shown in the instrument cluster. In rare cases, the tank aeration may take several minutes.

   When the tank aeration has finished, a message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The fuel tank cap is released for opening.
3. Open fuel filler flap.

   If it is not possible to open the fuel filler flap after tank aeration, press the button again.

   If it is still not possible to open the fuel filler flap even after the button has been pressed again, unlock the fuel filler flap manually.

Fuel tank cap

1. To open the fuel tank filler flap, push on the upper edge, arrow. The fuel tank filler flap opens.

2. Turn the fuel tank cap anticlockwise.

3. Place the fuel tank cap in the holder on the fuel filler flap.

Petrol

For optimal fuel consumption, the petrol should be sulphur-free or have a low sulphur content.

Fuels labelled on the pump as containing metal must not be used.

Wheels and tyres

Tyre inflation pressure information

The tyre inflation pressure inscriptions can be found on the tyre pressure plate on the door pillar.

After adjusting the tyre inflation pressure

For runflat indicator RPA:

Reinitialise the runflat indicator RPA.

With the Tyre Pressure Monitor:

The corrected tyre inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tyre settings have been made.

For tyres that cannot be found in the tyre inflation pressure information on the control display, reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor.

Checking the tyre inflation pressure

Check regularly and adjust as necessary:

- ▷ At least twice a month.
- ▷ Before a long journey.

Electronic oil measurement

Operating requirements

A current measurement is available after approximately 30 minutes of normal driving with the internal combustion engine running.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

Different messages are shown on the control display, depending on the engine oil level. Pay attention to these messages.

Adding engine oil

General

Safely stop the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before topping up with engine oil.

Adding engine oil

Do not top up engine oil unless a message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Note the top-up quantity in the message.

Do not add too much engine oil.

Note recommended engine oil types.

How to get assistance

Hazard warning lights

The button is located in the centre console.

Help in case of a breakdown

BMW Roadside Assistance

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assistance"
4. If necessary, "BMW Roadside Assistance"
   A voice connection is established.

ConnectedDrive

Concierge Service

The Concierge Service provides information about hotels, restaurants etc. and can send an SMS with the required information to the vehicle. Addresses can also be sent directly to the navigation system.

1. "COM"
2. "BMW Assistance"
3. Select the entry for the Concierge Service if applicable.

A voice connection to the Concierge Service is established.

Teleservices

Teleservices are services that help to keep the vehicle mobile.

Teleservices may include the following services:

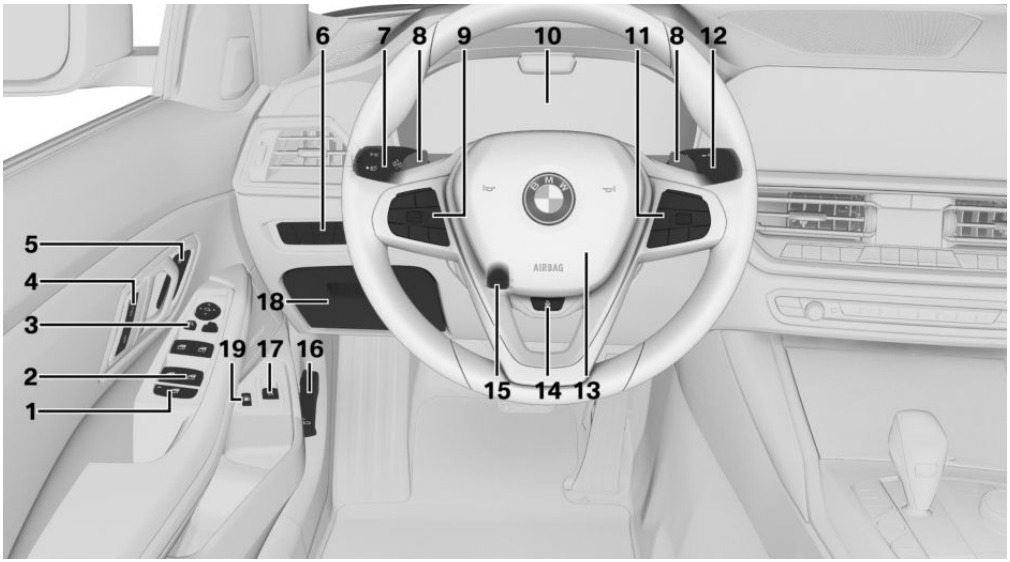
- ▷ BMW Roadside Assistance.
- ▷ BMW Accident Assistance.
- ▷ Teleservice Call.
- ▷ Teleservice Report.
- ▷ Teleservice Battery Guard.
- ▷ Your Service Partner.
- ▷ Online logbook.

Driving area

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Around the steering wheel



1 Safety switch 118

2 Power window switches 116

3 Exterior mirror operation 131

4 Central locking system 104

To unlock

Locking

5 Seat comfort functions

Memory function 133

6 Lights

Front fog lights 205

Rear fog light 205

Light switch 199

OFF Lights off

Daytime running lights 201

Side lights 200

AUTO Automatic driving lights control 199

Adaptive light functions 202

High-beam assistance 203

Low-beam headlights 200

Instrument lighting 206

Right parking light 200

Left parking light 200

7 Steering-column lever, left

Turn indicator 161

High-beam headlights, headlight flasher 161

High-beam assistance 203

BC Full Black Panel Display:

Widgets 173

Instrument cluster without extended functionality:

Widgets 174

Journey data 194

8 Shift paddles 165

9 Buttons on steering wheel, left

LIM Manual Speed Limiter 251

Depending on the equipment version:

Cruise Control on/off 253

Depending on the equipment version:

Active Cruise Control on/off 255

MODE With steering and lane control assistant 268:

Cruise Control, distance control and lane tracking on/off

SET Cruise Control: to store a speed

Speed Limit Assist: accept the suggested speed 264

CANCEL Interrupting Cruise Control

RESUME Resuming Cruise Control

Active Cruise Control: to increase the distance

Active Cruise Control: to reduce the distance

Rocker switch for Cruise Control

10 Instrument cluster 171

11 Buttons on steering wheel, right

Selection lists 193

Volume, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Voice control system 63

Changing the station/track, see the Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Telephone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Knurled wheel for selection lists 193

12 Steering-column lever, right

Wipers 161

AUTO

Rain sensor 162

To clean the windscreen 163

Rear wiper 164

To clean the rear window 164

13 Horn, entire area

14 Steering wheel heating 133

15 To adjust the steering wheel 133

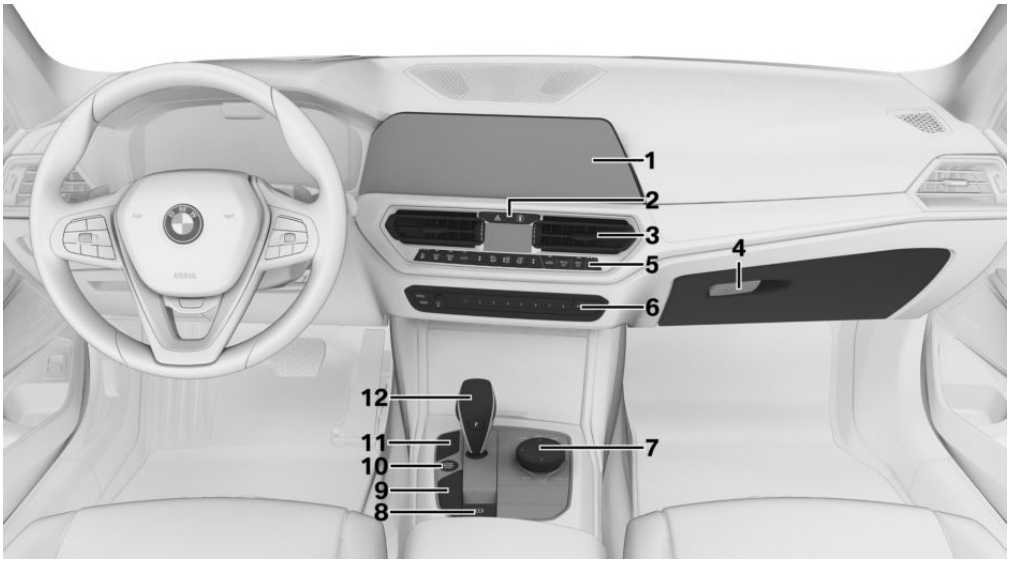
16 To release the bonnet 394

17 To open and close the tail-gate 109

18 Glove compartment 326

19 Tank aeration 365

Around the centre console



1 Control Display 59

2 Hazard warning lights 412

Intelligent Safety 212

3 Ventilation 314

4 Glove compartment 325

5 Automatic air conditioning 305

Automatic air conditioning with extended functionality 309

6 Radio/multimedia, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

7 Controller with buttons 59

8 Parking brake 158

AUTO H Automatic Hold 159

9 SPORT Driving Experience Control 155

SPORT drive mode

HYBRID HYBRID driving mode

ELECTRIC ELECTRIC driving mode

ADAPTIVE ADAPTIVE drive mode

10 START STOP To switch drive-ready state on/off 151

11 BATTERY CONTROL 156 driving mode

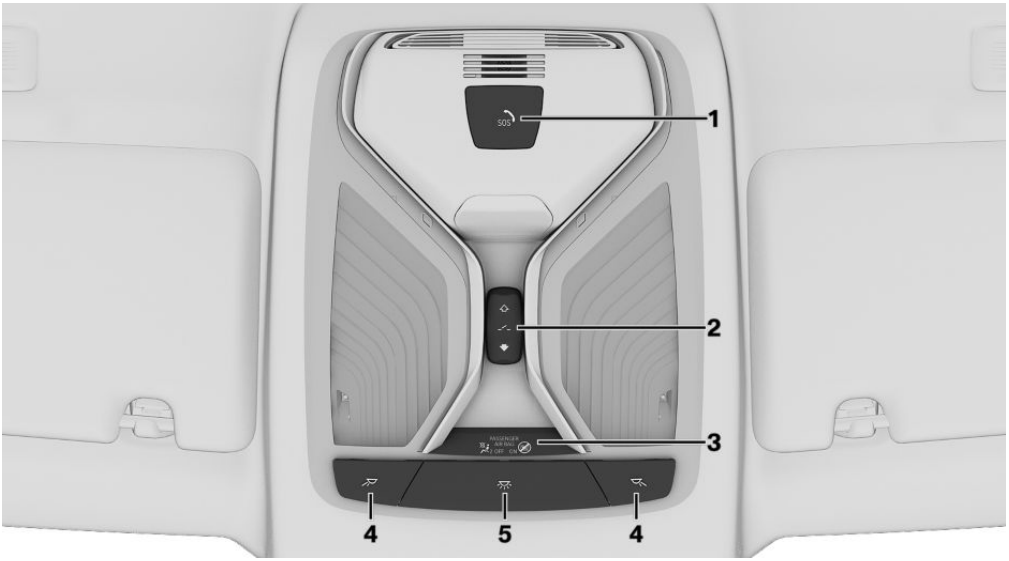
Parking assistance systems 278

Panorama View 298

OFF Dynamic Stability Control, DSC 247

12 Steptronic transmission: selector lever 165

Around the headliner



1 Emergency call, SOS 414

2 Operating the electric glass sunroof 118

3 Front passenger airbag indicator lamp 211

4 Reading lights 206

5 Interior light 206

Sensors of the vehicle

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Overview

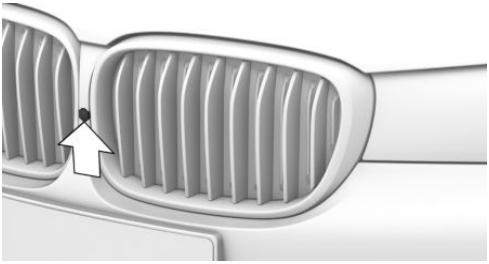
Depending on the equipment, the following cameras and sensors are installed in the vehicle:

- ▷ Front camera.
- ▷ Cameras behind the windscreen.
- ▷ Top view cameras.
- ▷ Rear-view camera.
- ▷ Front radar sensor.
- ▷ Side radar sensors, front.
- ▷ Side radar sensors, rear.
- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▷ Side ultrasonic sensors.

Keep the vehicle clean and unobstructed in the area of the cameras and sensors.

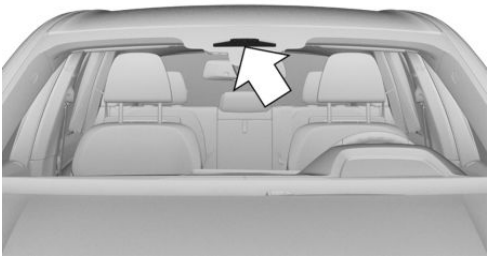
Cameras

Front camera



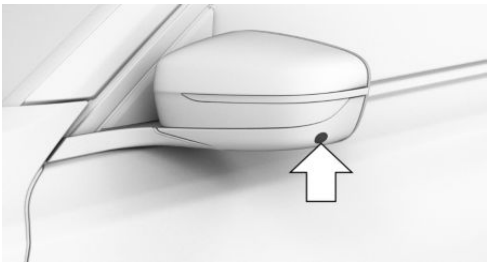
Front camera

Cameras behind the windscreen



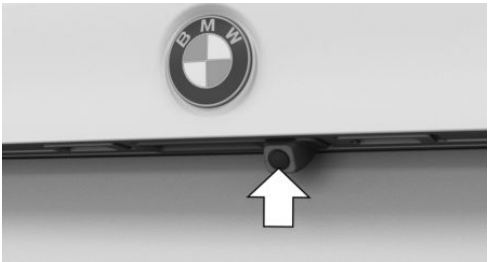
The cameras are located near the interior mirror.

Top view cameras



A camera is located under each exterior mirror housing.

Rear-view camera



The camera is located in the handle strip of the tailgate.

System limits of the cameras

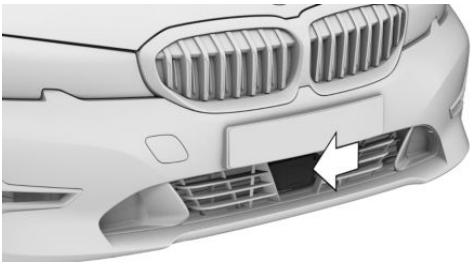
The camera may have limited functionality or incorrect information may be displayed in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ On steep crests or dips or on tight bends.
- ▷ If the camera field of view is obscured, for example due to windscreen fittings or stickers.
- ▷ If the camera lens is contaminated or damaged.
- ▷ With the exterior mirrors folded in.
- ▷ In the case of bright oncoming light or strong reflections, for example if the sun is low in the sky.
- ▷ In the dark.
- ▷ Camera behind the windscreen: if the camera has overheated due to excessively high temperatures and has been temporarily deactivated.
- ▷ Camera behind the windscreen: during camera calibration immediately after vehicle delivery.

A Check Control message may be displayed if the system has failed.

Radar sensors

Front radar sensor



The radar sensor is located in the front bumper.

Side radar sensors, front

The radar sensors are located in the bumper.

Side radar sensors, rear

The radar sensors are located in the bumper.

System limits of the radar sensors

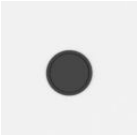
The radar sensors may have limited functionality or may not be available at all in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ If the sensors are contaminated, for example by icing.
- ▷ If the sensors are obscured, for example by stickers, foils or a number plate holder.
- ▷ If the sensor is not correctly aligned, for example following parking damage.
- ▷ If the area covered by the sensors' radar beam is obscured, for example due to a projecting load.
- ▷ If the sensors' field of view is obscured, for example due to garage walls, hedges or mounds of snow.
- ▷ After work performed incorrectly on the vehicle paintwork near to the sensors.
- ▷ At steep crests/hilltops or dips.

A Check Control message may be displayed if the system has failed.

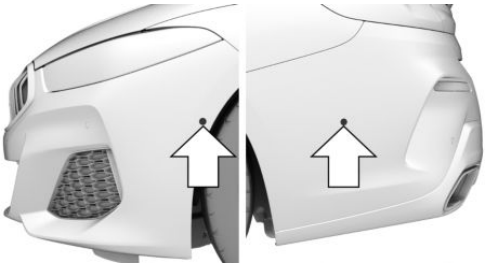
Ultrasonic sensors

Ultrasonic sensors in the front/ rear bumpers



The Park Distance Control PDC ultrasonic sensors are located in the bumpers.

Side ultrasonic sensors



The Park Assist ultrasonic sensors are located on the side of the vehicle.

System limits of the ultrasonic sensors

The physical limits of ultrasound measurement may be reached when detecting objects in situations including the following:

- ▷ If the sensors are contaminated.
- ▷ If the sensors are obscured, for example by stickers.
- ▷ If the sensor is not correctly aligned, for example following parking damage.
- ▷ After work performed incorrectly on the vehicle paintwork near to the sensors.
- ▷ Small children and animals.
- ▷ Persons wearing certain types of clothing, for example a coat.
- ▷ If there is external interference with the ultrasonic sound, for example by passing vehicles, loud machines or other ultrasonic sources.
- ▷ Certain weather conditions; for example, high humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, cold, extreme heat or strong wind.
- ▷ Trailer drawbars and tow hitches of other vehicles.
- ▷ Thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ Moving objects.
- ▷ Higher protruding objects, for example projecting walls.

- ▷ Objects with corners, edges and smooth surfaces.
- ▷ Objects with fine surfaces or structures, for example fences.
- ▷ Objects with porous surfaces.
- ▷ Small and low objects such as boxes.
- ▷ Soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam.
- ▷ Plants or shrubs.
- ▷ In washing bays and car washes.
- ▷ On uneven surfaces, for example speed bumps.
- ▷ In the presence of dense exhaust fumes.
- ▷ The ultrasonic sensors do not take into account loads projecting beyond the outline of the vehicle.
- ▷ If the cover of the trailer tow hitch is incorrectly seated.

A Check Control message may be displayed if the system has failed.

Vehicle operating state

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

Depending on the situation, the vehicle is in one of the three states:

- ▷ Rest state.
- ▷ Standby state.
- ▷ Drive-ready state.

Rest state

Principle

If the vehicle is in rest state, it is switched off. All electrical consumers are deactivated.

General

The vehicle is in rest state before you open it from outside and once you have left the vehicle and locked it.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example with a chock.

⚠ WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Automatic rest state

The vehicle switches automatically to rest state, for example under the following conditions:

- ▷ After a few minutes, if no operation is performed on the vehicle.

- When the battery state of charge is low.
- Depending on the iDrive setting: if one or both of the front doors is opened when exiting the vehicle after a journey.

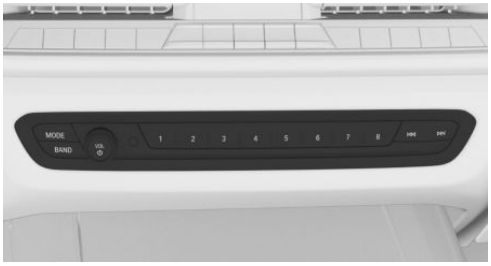
In some situations, rest state will not be established automatically, for example during a telephone call or if the low-beam headlights are switched on.

Establishing rest state on opening the front doors

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Switch off after door opening"

Manual rest state

To establish rest state in the vehicle at the end of a journey:



Press and hold the button, until the OFF display on the instrument cluster turns off.

Standby state

Principle

When standby state is activated, most functions can be operated while the vehicle is still stationary. Any desired settings can be performed.

General

The vehicle switches to standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

Display in the instrument cluster

OFF is shown in the instrument cluster. The drive is switched off and standby state switched on.

Drive-ready state

Principle

There are the following versions of drive-ready state:

- Electric drive-ready state.

  The vehicle is driven by the electric motor.
- Starting the internal combustion engine.

  The vehicle is driven by the internal combustion engine.

Safety notes

⚠ DANGER

A blocked exhaust pipe or inadequate ventilation can allow harmful exhaust fumes to enter the vehicle. The exhaust fumes contain pollutants which are colourless and odourless. In enclosed spaces, exhaust fumes can also build up outside the vehicle. There is a risk of death. Keep the exhaust pipe clear and ensure sufficient ventilation.

⚠ WARNING

With electric driving, pedestrians and other road-users might not detect the vehicle as well as usual due to the lack of engine noise. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situa-

tion and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

⚠ WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example with a chock.

⚠ WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Switching on drive-ready state

1. Close driver's door.
2. Press the brake pedal.
3. Press the start/stop button.

   Most of the indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster are illuminated for different lengths of time, depending on the duration of the system check.

Depending on the preconditions, electric drive-ready state or starting the internal combustion engine is possible.

Electric drive-ready state

General

The vehicle is ready to drive without starting the internal combustion engine.

Operating requirements

Electric drive-ready state is possible if the preconditions for electric driving are met.

For further information:

BMW eDRIVE, see page 149.

Display in the instrument cluster

When drive-ready state is switched on, READY is shown in the instrument cluster.

Internal combustion engine start

Operating requirements

The internal combustion engine is started when drive-ready state is switched on under the following preconditions:

- ▷ Temperature of the hybrid system is too high or too low.
- ▷ Charge level of the high-voltage battery is too low.

Switching off drive-ready state

After stopping:

1. Engage the selector lever in position P.
2. Press the start/stop button.
3. Apply the parking brake.

When shutting down the vehicle, operating noises of the hybrid system, for example, cooling of the high-voltage battery, may be audible.

iDrive

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Operating concept

Principle

iDrive comprises a wide range of functions. These functions can be operated using the Controller and, depending on the equipment, the touchscreen, voice control system or Gesture Control.

Safety note

WARNING

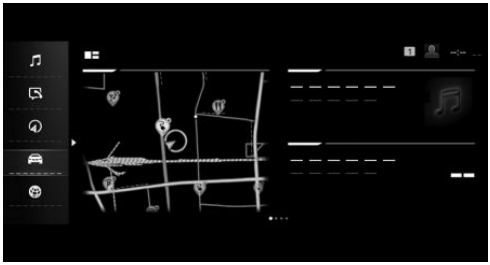
Operating integrated information systems and communication devices during a journey may distract you from the road. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only operate the systems or devices if the traffic conditions allow you to do so. Stop if necessary and operate the systems or devices with the vehicle at a standstill.

Entry and display

Main menu

General

The main menu is divided into two areas. The left area contains menu items that can be used to call up all the iDrive functions. The right area contains widgets that provide quick access to certain functions.



Media/Radio

All of the entertainment system functions, for example radio stations, connection with external devices.

Communication

Telephone and message functions, e-mail and calendar, as well as the connection and management of mobile devices such as smartphones.

Navigation

Access to navigation system, destination entry and traffic information. Configurable map views as well as other functions such as Points of Interest and avoid areas.

My vehicle

Information on vehicle status and journeys. Access to the integrated Owner's Handbook as

well as management of driver profiles and setting options for the vehicle and iDrive.

Apps

Management of apps, access to apps as well as vehicle functions. Additional apps and vehicle functions can be obtained from the BMW Store.

Widgets

Widgets provide quick access to frequently used functions. The defined widgets display dynamic content – for example, the navigation map – and also serve as buttons.

Letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can be selected when the destination is entered, for example.

Letters and numbers can be entered using the Controller and, depending on the vehicle equipment, using the touchscreen or voice control system. The keyboard display changes automatically.

Symbol	Function
abc ABC	Switch between upper and lower case.
␣	To enter a space.
EN	Switch between languages.
🎤	To use the voice control.
OK	To confirm your entry.
← →	Move the entry area to the left or right.

Entry comparison

When entering names and addresses, the selection is gradually narrowed down or may be supplemented with every subsequent letter and character entered.

Inputs are continuously compared with the data saved in the vehicle.

- ▷ Only letters and characters for which data is available are offered when making an entry.
- ▷ Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages available in iDrive.

Enabling/disabling functions

Some menu items are preceded by a checkbox. The box indicates whether the function is enabled or disabled. Selecting the menu item enables or disables the function.

☑ Function is enabled.

☐ Function is disabled.

Status information

General

The status field is located in the top area of the Control Display. Status information is displayed in the form of symbols.

Symbols for telephone

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Reception level of mobile telephone network.
	Searching for network.
	No mobile telephone network available.
	Mobile telephone charge level is critically low.
	Data transfer not possible.
R	Roaming active.
	Location active.
	Text message received.
	Message received.

Symbol	Meaning
	Reminder.
	Sending not possible.

Symbols for entertainment

Symbol	Meaning
	Bluetooth audio.
	USB device.
	Connected Music.
	WLAN.
	Apple CarPlay.

Other symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Check Control message.
	Sound output active.
	Sound output deactivated.
	Voice control system active.
	Current vehicle position.
	Traffic information.
	Driver profile.
1	Notifications.
	Service requirements.
i	Information.
STOP	Stop.
	Data protection.

Favourites buttons

General

iDrive functions, for example radio stations, navigation destinations, telephone numbers and shortcuts to the menu or pages of the integrated Owner's Handbook, can be saved to functional bookmarks and called up directly.

The settings are saved for the current driver profile.

Overview

1... 8 Favourites buttons

Saving a function

A function can be saved to a functional bookmark. A button that has already been assigned a function can be overwritten with a different function.

1. Select function via iDrive, for example radio station.
2. 1... 8 Press and hold the desired button until the bar shown on the control display has fully loaded.

Performing a function

1... 8 Press the button.

The function is carried out immediately. If you have selected a telephone number for example, the connection will also be established.

Displaying the button assignment

Touch the buttons with your finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The button assignment is displayed in the upper area of the control display.

Removing all button assignments

It is possible to remove the assignments of all buttons.

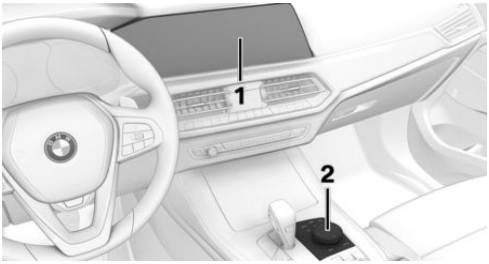
1. Press and hold buttons 1 and 8 simultaneously.
2. "OK"

Control display and Controller

Principle

The iDrive functions are shown on the Control Display. The Control Display can be operated using the Controller, touchpad and touch screen.

Overview



1 Control Display with touchscreen

2 Controller with buttons and touchpad

Control display

Safety note

NOTE

Objects located in front of the Control Display may slip and damage the Control Display. There is a risk of material damage. Do not place objects in front of the Control Display.

Switching on/off automatically

The control display is switched on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or as soon as the control display is required for operation.

In certain situations, the control display is switched off automatically, for example if no operation is performed on the vehicle for several minutes.

Switching on/off manually

The Control Display can also be switched off manually.

1. Tilt the Controller up.
2. "Screen off"

Press the Controller or any button on the Controller to switch it back on again.

System limits

If the Control Display is exposed to very high temperatures, for example because of strong sunlight, the brightness may be reduced and the Control Display may even switch itself off. Normal functions will be restored when the temperature is reduced, for example by shading or using the air conditioning system.

Controller

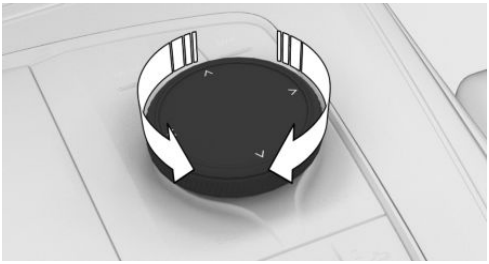
General

The buttons can be used to call up menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and perform settings.

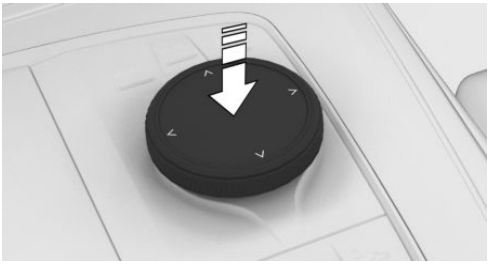
Some of the functions of the iDrive can be operated with the touchpad of the Controller.

Operation

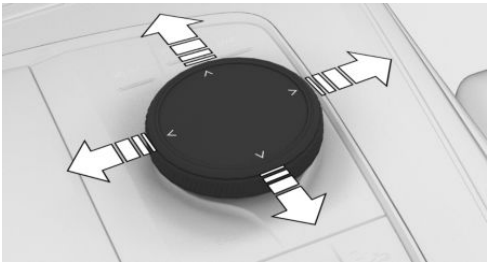
▷ Turn to switch between menu items, for example.



▷ Press to select a menu item, for example.



▷ Tilt in four directions to switch between screens, for example.



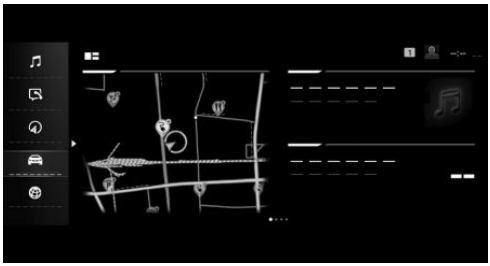
Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
HOME	To call up the main menu.
	Go to the Apps menu.
MEDIA	To call up the Media/Radio menu.
COM	To call up the Communication menu.
MAP	To call up the navigation map.
NAV	To call up the destination entry menu of the navigation system.
BACK	To call up the previous screen.
OPTION	To call up the Options menu.

Operation using the Controller

Calling up the main menu

HOME Press the button.



The main menu is displayed.

Selecting menu

Selecting menu items

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.
2. Press the Controller.

Selecting widgets

1. Tilt the Controller to the right in the main menu.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired widget is selected.

3. Press the Controller.

It is also possible to select widgets in the instrument cluster.

Adapting the menu

Adapting widgets

You can adapt the widgets in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between the pages. It is only possible to make adaptations with the vehicle at a standstill.

1. Select the required page in the main menu. It is only possible to adapt the page that is currently selected.
2. Tilt the Controller up.
3. "Adjust main menu"
4. Select the desired adaptation:
   - ▷ + Select the symbol and the desired widget: add new widget.

     The desired widget will be added at the relevant position. It is possible to display a maximum of four widgets per page.
   - ▷ Select the ✕ symbol: delete the selected widget.
   - ▷ Add a new page: "Add page".
   - ▷ Delete the selected page: "Delete page".
   - ▷ Adapt the widget content: select the widget.
5. "Done"

Adapting the content

Depending on the equipment, the content of the "MEDIA", "COM" and "NAV" menus can be adapted, for example to remove the entries for unused functions from the menu.

1. Select menu.
2. "Personalise menu"
3. Select the desired setting.

Switching between screens

After a menu item has been selected, for example "Settings", a new screen is displayed.

- ▷ Tilt the Controller to the left.

  The current screen is closed and the previous screen is displayed.
- ▷ BACK Press the button.

  The previous screen is opened again.
- ▷ Tilt the Controller to the right.

  The new screen is opened.

An arrow indicates that further screens can be called up.

Calling up the Options menu

OPTION Press the button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.

The menu consists of various areas, such as:

- ▷ "MEDIA": operating options for the selected main menu.
- ▷ "Help": help for the selected menu.
- ▷ "Control display off": system settings.

Entering letters and numbers

Entry

1. Turn the Controller: to select a letter or number.
2. OK : to confirm your entry.

Deleting

Symbol	Function
I←	Press the Controller: to delete a letter or number.
I←	Press and hold the Controller: to delete all letters or numbers.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which entries exist can be displayed in a letter field.

1. Turn the Controller quickly to the left or right.
2. Select the initial letter of the desired entry.

   The first entry for the selected letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via touchpad

General

Some of the functions of the iDrive can be operated with the touchpad of the Controller.

Selecting functions

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Touchpad"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Character input": to enter letters and numbers.
   - ▷ "Map": to operate the map.
   - ▷ "Search fields": to write letters without selecting the list field.
   - ▷ "Audio confirmation": to have the entered letters and numbers read out.

Entering letters and numbers

- ▷ Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- ▷ Always enter associated characters, for example accents or dots, so that the letter can be clearly identified.
- ▷ The input options depend on the language that has been set. You may need to enter special characters using the Controller.

Entering special characters

Entry	Operation
To delete a character.	Swipe to the left on the touchpad.
To enter a space.	From the centre of the touchpad, swipe to the right.
To enter a hyphen.	At the top of the touchpad, swipe to the right.
To enter an underscore.	At the bottom of the touchpad, swipe to the right.

Operating map

The map of the navigation system can be moved using the touchpad.

Function	Operation
To move the map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
To enlarge/reduce the map.	On the touchpad, pinch together or move apart your fingers.
To display the menu.	Tap once.

Operation by touchscreen

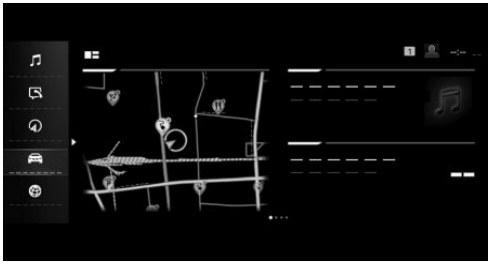
General

The Control Display is equipped with a touchscreen.

It is possible to tap menu items and widgets. Touch the touchscreen with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Calling up the main menu

⌂ Tap the symbol.



The main menu is displayed.

Adapting widgets

You can adapt the widgets in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between the pages. It is only possible to make adaptations with the vehicle at a standstill.

1. Select the required page in the main menu. It is only possible to adapt the page that is currently selected.
2. Tap the symbol in the main menu.
3. Select the desired adaptation:
   - ▷ + Tap the symbol and select the desired widget: add new widget.

     The desired widget will be added at the relevant position. It is possible to display a maximum of four widgets per page.
   - ▷ ✕ Tap the symbol: delete selected widget.
   - ▷ Add a new page: tap "Add page".
   - ▷ Delete the selected page: tap "Delete page".
   - ▷ Adapt the content of the widget: tap the centre of the widget.
4. Tap "Done".

Showing/hiding the display bar

In the top part of the control display, it is possible to show or hide a display bar with additional functions.

- ▷ To show the display bar, pull down the display bar at the top edge of the screen.
- ▷ To hide the display bar, pull up the display bar at the top edge of the screen.

Switching between screens

After a menu item has been selected, a new screen is displayed.

An arrow indicates that further screens can be called up.

- ▷ Swipe to the left.
- ▷ Tap the arrow.

The new screen is opened.

Entering letters and numbers

Entry

1. Depending on the equipment, tap the symbol on the touchscreen or a keyboard will appear on the control display when you approach the touchscreen.
2. Enter the required letters and numbers.

Deleting

Symbol	Function
⇐	Tap the symbol: to delete letter or number.
⇐	Tap and hold the symbol: to delete all letters or numbers.

Operating the map

The navigation map can be moved via the touchscreen.

Function	Operation
To move the map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
To enlarge/reduce the map.	Pinch together or move apart your fingers.
To display the menu.	Tap once.

Operation via voice control

Principle

The voice activation system can be used to operate functions with spoken commands. The system provides spoken announcements to assist you with input.

The voice control system and the feedback it provides are not a substitute for the printed or integrated Owner's Handbook.

General

- ▷ Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary can only be operated via the voice control system to a limited extent.
- ▷ The system includes special microphones on the driver side and the front passenger side.
- ▷ ›...‹ indicates commands for the voice control system.

Operating requirements

- ▷ A language must be set using iDrive that is supported by the voice control system.

  To select the language, see page 76.
- ▷ Always say the commands in the language of the voice control system.

Activating the voice control system

General

Voice control can be activated in various ways:

- ▷ Press the button on the steering wheel.
- ▷ Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or the personalised wake word.

This symbol indicates that the voice control system is active.

Then say the command. It is possible that no further spoken commands are available for this function. In this case, switch to iDrive to operate the function.

Voice control can be interrupted:

- ▷ Press the button on the steering wheel again.
- ▷ ›Cancel‹

This symbol indicates that the voice control system is deactivated.

Button on the steering wheel

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the acoustic signal.
3. Say the command.

Wake word

General

Saying the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or the customised wake word starts the system.

Preset wake word

The preset wake word "Hello BMW" can be activated and deactivated.

›Hello BMW‹ activates the preset and personal activation word.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Activation word"
7. "Say "Hello BMW" for activation"

Personalised wake word

A personalised wake word can be set in addition to the preset wake word "Hello BMW".

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Activation word"
7. "Personal activation word"
8. "Start recording"

   For the "Start recording" option, offboard voice processing must be available and activated. Alternatively, the personal wake word can be entered using the Controller.
9. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Possible commands

General

Most of the contents on the Control Display can be said as commands; for example, menu items or list entries. When doing this, say the list entries as they are shown in the list.

Commands and numbers should be spoken fluently, with the usual emphasis and at a normal volume and speed.

The voice recognition status is displayed in the upper area of the control display.

Functional examples

Menu items

The commands for the menu items are spoken in the same way as they are selected using the Controller.

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›MEDIA‹
3. ›Saved stations‹

The saved stations are displayed on the Control Display.

Navigation

The voice control system can be used to enter destinations in the navigation. It is also possible to state Points of Interest or have traffic reports read aloud.

- ▷ ›Drive me to 1 High Street in Manchester‹
- ▷ ›Take me home‹
- ▷ ›Are there any traffic messages‹

Communication

When a mobile phone is connected, it is possible to start calls or send short messages, for example, using the voice control system.

- ▷ ›Call John Smith on the mobile phone‹
- ▷ ›Dial the number 0370 505 0160‹
- ▷ ›New text message to John Smith: I'm on my way‹

Media and radio

Most radio functions can be operated via the voice control system.

- ▷ ›Switch on music‹
- ▷ ›Music off‹
- ▷ ›Next track‹

Air conditioning

Most air conditioning functions can be operated by voice commands.

- ▷ ›Activate climate control‹
- ▷ ›Deactivate air recirculation‹
- ▷ ›Temperature [...] at ...‹

Help with the voice control system

- ▷ ›Voice commands‹: to have voice command options read aloud.

▷ ›General information on voice control‹: to have information about the voice control system read aloud.

▷ ›Help‹: to have help on the current menu read aloud.

Information for emergency calls

The voice control system should not be used for emergency calls. Under stress, a person's speech and voice pitch can change. This could unnecessarily delay connection of your call.

Instead, use the SOS button located near the rear-view mirror.

For further information:

Emergency call, see page 414.

Settings

Selecting the speech dialogue

You can select whether the system uses the standard dialogue or the short variant.

If the short variant is selected, the system announcements are played in shortened form.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Length of answers"
7. Select the desired setting.

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer while the voice control system is querying your previous spoken instruction. The function can be deactivated if the queries are frequently cancelled inadvertently, for example due to background noise or conversations in the vehicle.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Speaking during voice output"

Online speech processing

Online speech processing enables use of the dictation function, facilitates the natural input of destinations and improves the quality of voice recognition. To use the function, data is sent across an encrypted connection to a service provider and stored locally there.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Online speech processing"

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume control button during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is obtained.

▷ The volume setting is retained even if you change the volume of other audio sources.

▷ The volume setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Using the voice control system on the smartphone

Depending on the device, a smartphone connected to the vehicle can be operated via voice control.

This requires voice control to be activated on the smartphone.

1. Press and hold the button on the steering wheel for approx. 3 seconds.

   Voice control on the smartphone is activated.

2. Release the button.

If activation is successful, a confirmation appears on the Control Display.

Voice assistants from third-party providers

Principle

Various digital voice assistants are available from third-party providers. Supported voice assistants can be used in the vehicle.

General

Some functions may only work to a limited extent in the vehicle to ensure they do not create a safety risk when driving.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Connected Voice Services acquired via the ConnectedDrive Store.
- ▷ The same ConnectedDrive account is used in the vehicle and in the BMW Connected app.
- ▷ Vehicle added in the BMW Connected app.
- ▷ Third-party provider account and BMW account linked in the BMW Connected app.
- ▷ Smartphone connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth.

Activation in the BMW Connected app

Systems from third-party providers are set up in the BMW Connected app.

Follow the instructions in the app.

Activation in the vehicle

Authorisation to use the voice assistant is required before the start of each journey.

1. To authorise voice assistants from third-party providers:
   - ▷ Connect the smartphone to the vehicle via Bluetooth.
   - ▷ Select the appropriate driver profile.

     Driver profiles, see page 80.
2. Press the button on the steering wheel and wait for the acoustic signal.
3. Say the specific activation word from the third-party provider and the required command.

   Information about the active function appears on the control display.

Activating/deactivating the specific activation word

The specific activation word of the third-party provider can be activated or deactivated in addition to the activation word of the voice control system.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Activation word"
6. "Activation by speech"
7. Select the desired setting.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, switch drive-ready state off and on again.

System limits

- ▷ Certain noises may be detected and could result in problems. Keep doors, windows and the glass sunroof closed.
- ▷ Noise from passengers or the rear bench may interfere with the system. Avoid background noise in the vehicle while you are speaking.
- ▷ Strong dialects may prevent voice recognition from working properly. Speak loudly and clearly.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Principle

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant expands the voice control system to include intelligent functions and improves interaction in the vehicle.

General

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available depending on the national-market version. The Personal Assistant is operated using spoken commands. Voice control is supplemented with personalised recommendations and messages, as well as automated habits.

The Personal Assistant is connected to other digital services such as the Concierge Service and is continually being developed. An active driver profile is required to access the full scope of functions.

There are two versions of BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant:

- ▷ In the guest profile: this version is linked to a single vehicle and cannot be personalised. Not all the functions described are available in full.
- ▷ With active driver profile: this version can be used in various vehicles and can be personalised. All the functions described are available in full.

Operating requirements

Make the following settings for the full range of functions:

- ▷ The driver profile is activated.
- ▷ Corresponding ConnectedDrive Services have been purchased via the ConnectedDrive Store.
- ▷ Registered in the ConnectedDrive Store.
- ▷ "Online speech processing" is activated.
- ▷ "Synchronise driver profile" is activated under "Personalisation".

  Data protection, see page 79.
- ▷ All settings are activated under "BMW ConnectedDrive".

  Data protection, see page 79.

Functional example

1. Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or the personalised wake word.
2. ›Is my tyre pressure still OK?‹

   The Personal Assistant provides information about the tyre inflation pressure.

Settings

Displaying notifications

General

Depending on the situation, various states can be activated.

State	Description
"Do not disturb"	Incoming calls and some messages are not displayed.
"Passenger on board"	Private information such as the sender and content of the e-mails is not displayed.

Activating/deactivating

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Notification display"
5. Select the desired setting.

Automating habits

General

The Personal Assistant is able to learn habits; for example, automatically activating the seat heat-

ing once a certain outside temperature is reached. This involves creating rules that can be activated and deactivated at any time.

Creating rules

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Automate habits"
5. Select the desired setting.

Functions

Experience Modes

General

Experience Modes combine a range of vehicle functions in the interior into an overall experience. Selecting a mode harmonises the ambient light and seat climate control with one another, for example.

Operating requirements

▷ The Experience Modes app is installed in the vehicle.

▷ The drive-ready state is switched on.

Selecting a mode

1. "CAR"
2. "Experience Modes"
3. Select the required mode.

Deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Experience Modes"
3. "End"

Adapting the mode

1. "CAR"
2. "Experience Modes"
3. Select the required mode.
4. "Settings"
5. Confirm the desired setting.

Caring Car

General

A short program harmonises various vehicle functions in the interior with one another for the driver. A program lasts for 3 minutes.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Caring Car"
3. Select the desired channel.

The program can be ended prematurely:

"End programme"

Owner's Handbook by voice control

Principle

It is possible to ask simple questions about the vehicle functions and about operating the vehicle.

General

The voice control system and the feedback it provides are not a substitute for the printed or integrated Owner's Handbook. The voice recognition function and the quality of the feedback may vary.

The system support questions starting with "How" or "What".

Functional example

1. ›Hello BMW‹
2. ›How do you disable the front passenger airbag‹

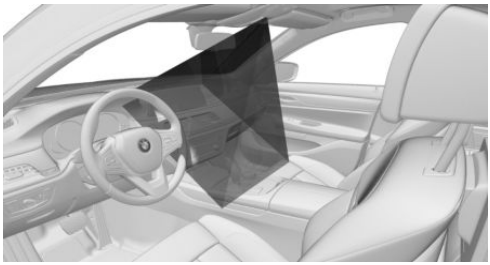
The voice control system provides feedback. If applicable, the section of the integrated Owner's Handbook is displayed on the Control Display while at a standstill.

BMW Gesture Control

Principle

BMW Gesture Control enables some iDrive functions to be operated simply by moving your hands.

Overview



The camera in the roof lining detects gestures made in the area of the centre console at the height of the Control Display.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Gesture control"

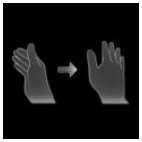
Settings

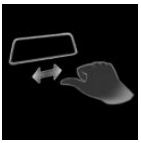
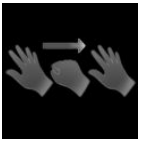
1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. Select the desired setting.

Performing gestures

- ▷ Perform the gestures under the interior mirror and to the side of the steering wheel.
- ▷ Perform the gestures clearly.
- ▷ The gestures can also be performed by the front passenger.

Possible gestures

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Move your index finger forward in the direction of the screen and back again.	Accept phone call. Select highlighted entry of a list during voice control. Confirm the pop-up.
	Move your hand across the width of the Control Display in the direction of the front-passenger side.	Reject phone call. Close the pop-up. End voice control.

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Slowly move your hand in a clockwise circle with your index finger pointing forward. Gesture is detected after approximately one circular movement.	To increase the volume.
	Slowly move your hand in an anticlockwise circle with your index finger pointing forward. Gesture is detected after approximately one circular movement.	To reduce the volume.
	Pinch your thumb and index finger together and move your hand horizontally right or left.	Surround View: rotate camera view. This gesture is only possible with the vehicle at standstill.
	Move your index and middle fingers apart and extend them forwards.	Individually assignable gesture.
	With your thumb stretched out to the left, move your fist back and forth.	Skip function backwards. The previous music track is played.
	With your thumb stretched out to the right, move your fist back and forth.	Skip function forwards. The next music track is played.
	Stretch out all five fingers, make a fist and then stretch out all five fingers again.	Individually assignable gesture.

Assign gesture individually

General

Depending on the equipment, gestures can be individually assigned to functions as follows:

- ▷ Route guidance to home address.
- ▷ Voice control.
- ▷ Mute/playback.
- ▷ Recent calls.
- ▷ Control display on/off.

- ▷ Messages.
- ▷ Music detection.
- ▷ No function.

Selecting the function

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Function assignment gesture 1" or "Function assignment gesture 2"
6. Select the desired setting.

System limits

Detection of gestures by the camera in the headliner can be disrupted under the following circumstances:

- ▷ The camera lens is covered.
- ▷ There are objects on the rear-view mirror.
- ▷ The camera lens is contaminated, clean the camera lens.

  Sensors and camera lenses, see page 425.
- ▷ The gesture is performed outside the detection area.
- ▷ Wearing of gloves or jewellery.
- ▷ Smoking in the interior.

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Principle

The Remote Software Upgrade can be used to update the vehicle software. The Remote Software Upgrade provides new functions, functional enhancements or quality improvements.

General

BMW recommends carrying out the Remote Software Upgrade as soon as it becomes available.

The data for the Remote Software Upgrade is automatically downloaded to the vehicle when available.

For safety reasons, it is only possible to install the downloaded upgrade while at a standstill. The installation will not begin until it has been confirmed at the vehicle.

- ▷ Installation can take around 20 minutes.
- ▷ Installation cannot be interrupted.
- ▷ The vehicle cannot be used during installation.
- ▷ You may leave the vehicle during installation.
- ▷ The vehicle charging process is interrupted by the installation.
- ▷ The vehicle charging process is not continued automatically after successful installation.

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Validity of Owner's Handbook

Vehicle production

At the time of production in the factory, the printed Owner's Handbook provides up-to-date information.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – for example, a Remote Software Upgrade – the integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain updated information.

Operating requirements

An active ConnectedDrive contract is required in order to use the Remote Software Upgrade.

Version information

General

The version information describes the updates contained in the Remote Software Upgrade. The version information can be shown on the Control Display during the download and following successful completion of the installation. The information is available at all times in the ConnectedDrive customer portal.

Displaying the version information

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Installed version:"

Register with the ConnectedDrive customer portal on the Internet at:

www.bmw-connecteddrive.com.

Searching for and downloading an upgrade

General

There are various ways of searching for and downloading an upgrade:

- ▷ Automatically.
- ▷ Via iDrive.
- ▷ Via BMW Connected app.

Automatic download

The data for the Remote Software Upgrade is automatically downloaded to the vehicle when available. There is no need to approve the download.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Search for upgrades"
6. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Via BMW Connected app

1. Download the upgrade to your smartphone in the BMW Connected app when available.
2. Follow the instructions in the BMW Connected app.
3. Establish the connection to the vehicle.
   - ▷ iOS: Bluetooth audio and WLAN.
   - ▷ Android: WLAN in the vehicle.

   The upgrade data will only transfer from the smartphone to the vehicle while driving.
4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

For further information:

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle, see page 84.

Installing the upgrade immediately

General

If the upgrade has downloaded successfully, it can be installed once the vehicle has been parked. The installation can be carried out immediately after download.

Follow the instructions on the control display.

Following a successful upgrade, booked services – for example RTTI – are automatically activated again while driving.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Adequate charge state of the battery.

- The outside temperature is above -10 °C/14 °F.
- Vehicle is standing on level ground.
- Hazard warning lights switched off.
- Steptronic transmission: selector lever position P is engaged.
- Engine is sufficiently cooled.

Preparing the vehicle

- Park the vehicle in a safe place off the public roads.
- Mobile phone reception must be guaranteed so that an error message can be sent if the installation is cancelled, for example.
- Close the windows.
- Close the glass sunroof.
- Close the tailgate.
- Remove devices that consume energy, for example mobile telephone.
- Disconnect the trailer or load carrier.
- The vehicle key is in the vehicle to start the installation.
- Switch off the exterior lights.

Other vehicle-dependent operating requirements are shown on the Control Display.

Installing an upgrade later

The upgrade can be installed later on.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Start upgrade now"

   Follow the instructions on the control display.

Functional limitations

During the upgrade, many of the functions are temporarily unavailable, for example:

- Hazard warning lights.
- Central locking system.
- Side lights.
- Horn.
- Alarm system.
- Emergency call.
- Power window switches.
- Glass sunroof.
- Locking of the fuel filler flap.

The driver's door can be unlocked and locked from outside with the integrated key.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, follow the instructions on the Control Display or in the BMW Connected app.

If the malfunction cannot be rectified, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

General settings

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Time

Setting the time zone

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time zone:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Setting the time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired hours are displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Turn the Controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
9. "OK"

Setting the time format

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Automatic time setting

Depending on the equipment, the time, date and, if necessary, time zone are updated automatically.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Automatic time setting"

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Date

Setting the date

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Date:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired day is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Select the month and year.
9. "OK"

Setting the date format

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Date format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Language

Selecting the language

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Selecting the units of measurement

Depending on the country specifications, it is possible to select the units of measurement for various values, for example consumption, distances and temperature.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Units"
5. Select the desired menu item.
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Driver Attention Camera

Principle

The instrument cluster contains a camera which monitors the driver's activity. The camera evaluates the head position and opening of the eyes in order to analyse the attentiveness of the driver. This system supports various vehicle assistance systems, for example:

- ▷ Attentiveness assistant.
- ▷ Steering and lane control assistant with Assisted Driving Plus.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Driver Attention Camera"
5. Select the desired setting.

System limits

The Driver Attention Camera may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ If the Driver Attention Camera is covered by the steering wheel rim.
- ▷ If the driver is wearing sunglasses that block infrared light.

Journey data settings

Principle

The intervals at which the journey data is reset can be adjusted.

Resetting journey data

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"

4. "Reset journey data"
5. Select the desired setting.

Speed warning

Principle

The system can be used to set a speed limit which triggers a warning when it is exceeded.

General

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit again, after it has dropped below 5 km/h/3 mph.

Adjusting

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Warning at:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired speed is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Speed warning"

Setting the current speed as the speed warning

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Select current speed"

Activating/deactivating information windows

Information windows are automatically shown on the Control Display for some functions. Some of these information windows can be activated or deactivated.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Pop-ups"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Control display

Brightness

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Press the Controller.
7. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is obtained.
8. Press the Controller.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Depending on the lighting conditions, the brightness adjustment may not be immediately apparent.

Resetting the vehicle configuration

All individual settings can be reset to the factory settings when the drive-ready state is switched off.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset vehicle data"
5. "Reset vehicle data"

If the settings saved in a driver profile are synchronised with a ConnectedDrive account, these settings will be retained in the ConnectedDrive account.

Notifications

Principle

The menu shows all messages received by the vehicle, centrally in the form of a list.

General

The following messages can be displayed:

- ▷ Traffic messages.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Service requirement messages.
- ▷ Communication messages, for example e-mail, SMS or reminders.
- ▷ Messages from the Concierge Service or the BMW Connected app, for example.
- ▷ Messages from the vehicle manufacturer.

The number of notifications is also displayed in the status field.

The Notifications menu can also be created as a widget.

Calling up notifications

1. Tilt the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select the required notification.

Deleting notifications

All notifications which are not Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer can be deleted from the list.

Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer remain for as long as they are relevant.

1. Tilt the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select the desired notification; for example, SMS.
4. OPTION Press the button.
5. ▷ "Delete this notification"
   ▷ "Delete all notifications"

Settings

The following settings can be performed:

- ▷ Selection of applications from which messages are permitted.
- ▷ All messages or a limited period of received messages.

1. Tilt the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

Personal settings

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Data protection

Data transfer

Principle

The vehicle offers various services which require data to be transferred to BMW or a service provider. The transfer of data can be deactivated for some services.

General

If data transfer has been deactivated for a service, then that service cannot be used.

Only perform settings with the vehicle at a standstill.

Settings

The data transfer can be configured individually in various stages or for individual services.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

Principle

Depending on use, the vehicle stores personal data such as saved radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

General

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, data such as the following can be deleted:

- ▷ Driver profile settings.
- ▷ Saved radio stations.
- ▷ Saved functional bookmarks.
- ▷ Trip and on-board computer values.
- ▷ Navigation, for example saved destinations.
- ▷ Phone book.
- ▷ Online data, for example Favourites, cookies.
- ▷ Office data, for example voice memos.
- ▷ Login accounts.

It may take up to 15 minutes in total to delete data.

Operating requirements

Data can only be deleted with the vehicle at a standstill.

Deleting data

Personal data in the vehicle is deleted when the vehicle is reset to its factory settings.

For further information:

Resetting the vehicle configuration, see page 78.

Driver profiles

Principle

Driver profiles can be created in order to store personalised vehicle settings. If multiple drivers use a vehicle, each driver can create a personalised driver profile. If a driver profile is selected, the vehicle automatically adopts the settings stored in the driver profile.

General

You can create three personal driver profiles.

There is also a guest profile available which can be selected by any driver. The guest profile is active if no personal driver profile has been selected.

Changes to the vehicle settings are saved automatically in the active driver profile or in the guest profile.

The vehicle settings can be adjusted to the relevant driver as soon as the vehicle is unlocked. To achieve this, recognition via a vehicle key and a digital key and via a digital key must be assigned to a driver profile.

ConnectedDrive countries: The settings saved in the driver profile can be synchronised with the personal BMW ConnectedDrive account. This makes it possible to use these settings in other BMW vehicles as well.

Operating requirements

If the driver profile is changed, the vehicle cannot move at any more than walking speed.

Welcome screen

The welcome screen is shown once the Control Display is switched on.

The following actions can be performed on the welcome screen:

- ▷ Switch the driver profile.
- ▷ Start the setup assistant.

  This option is offered for a limited time in new vehicles.

As soon as the drive-ready state has been switched on or any button is pressed, the welcome screen disappears.

Setup assistant

The setup assistant is offered on the welcome screen in new vehicles for a limited time in order to define the key settings for the vehicle.

Select "Getting started" to start the setup assistant.

The setup assistant can be started at any time using iDrive.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Getting started"

The driver is guided through the following functions step by step:

- ▷ Set the system language.
- ▷ ConnectedDrive countries:

  If the setup assistant has been called up in the guest profile: create the driver profile.
- ▷ Register mobile devices with the vehicle.
- ▷ If the setup assistant has been called up from a previously defined driver profile: set up the Personal Assistant.
- ▷ Depending on whether the setup assistant has been called up from a previously defined driver profile or a guest profile: set up services or confirm the declaration regarding the transfer of vehicle data.
- ▷ Set up other operating methods.

The selected settings are saved in the active driver profile.

Guest profile

The guest profile can be activated by any driver. Vehicle settings that are made when the guest profile is active are saved in the guest profile.

The guest profile is automatically active in the following cases:

- ▷ No driver profiles have been created yet.
- ▷ No driver profile is assigned to the vehicle key used to unlock the vehicle.
- ▷ No driver profile is assigned to the digital key used to unlock the vehicle.

The following restrictions apply:

- ▷ The guest profile cannot be renamed.
- ▷ Recognition cannot be assigned to the guest profile.
- ▷ It is not possible to assign a PIN to the guest profile.
- ▷ ConnectedDrive countries: Synchronisation with a ConnectedDrive account is not possible.

The guest profile is selected on the welcome screen or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative to steps 1 and 2, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.
3. "Guest"
4. "OK"

Creating a driver profile

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative to steps 1 to 3, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.
4. "Add driver profile"

Non-ConnectedDrive countries: A name must be entered for the driver profile.

ConnectedDrive countries: An existing ConnectedDrive account must be assigned to a driver profile. There are several possible ways of doing this:

- ▷ "Log in"

  The login details must be entered via iDrive.
- ▷ "New registration"

  If the driver does not have a ConnectedDrive account, one can be created via iDrive.

Selecting recognition

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative to steps 1 to 3, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "with vehicle key"

     The vehicle key that is detected in the vehicle interior is assigned to the driver profile. If multiple vehicle keys are detected, the unwanted vehicle keys must be removed from the vehicle interior.
   - ▷ "With Digital Key"

     The digital key that is detected in the vehicle interior is assigned to the driver profile. If multiple digital keys are detected, the unwanted digital keys must be removed from the vehicle interior.
6. "Activate linkage"

As soon as the vehicle key or the digital key is detected by the vehicle, the relevant driver profile is activated. If the driver does not have the vehicle key or the smartphone with the digital key with him/her, or if the vehicle key or digital key is not detected, the driver profile can only be selected on the welcome screen if PIN protection has been set up.

Setting up PIN protection

A driver profile with recognition cannot be activated without a vehicle key and without a digital key. In this case, it is possible to set up PIN pro-

tection that can be used to activate the driver profile.

Countries in which ConnectedDrive is not available: If PIN protection has not been set up or the PIN is not known, the driver profile cannot be activated.

Countries in which ConnectedDrive is available: If PIN protection has not been set up or the PIN is not known, the driver profile can be activated with the login details for the relevant ConnectedDrive account.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative to steps 1 to 3, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. "using PIN"

Changing/cancelling recognition

If a different vehicle key or a different digital key is assigned to a driver profile, the current assignment must be cancelled first.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative to steps 1 to 3, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "with vehicle key"
   - ▷ "With Digital Key"
6. "Activate linkage"

If the vehicle and the vehicle key are handed over for a service, for example, carry out the following steps first:

- ▷ Set up PIN protection.
- ▷ Cancel recognition via the vehicle key.
- ▷ Switch to the guest profile.

This means the vehicle key that is handed over can no longer be used to access the personal driver profile.

Selecting a driver profile

The driver profile is selected automatically based on the recognition of the key/remote control.

If the guest profile is active, the driver profile is selected on the welcome screen or via iDrive. A PIN may need to be entered.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative to steps 1 and 2, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.
3. Select a driver profile.
4. "OK"

The settings saved in the selected driver profile are applied automatically.

Switching synchronisation with the ConnectedDrive account on/off

ConnectedDrive countries:

The settings saved in the driver profile are synchronised with the personal ConnectedDrive account. This makes it possible to use the personal settings in other BMW vehicles with ConnectedDrive access as well, provided that this function is supported.

Synchronisation with the ConnectedDrive account is enabled when a driver profile is created or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative to steps 1 to 3, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.

4. "Settings"
5. "Synchronise driver profile"
6. "Synchronise driver profile"

Renaming the driver profile

Non-ConnectedDrive countries:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative to steps 1 and 2, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.
3. Select a driver profile.
4. "Settings"
5. Enter a profile name.
6. OK Select the symbol.

ConnectedDrive countries:

The name of the driver profile is transferred from the ConnectedDrive account. Changes to the profile name must be made in the ConnectedDrive account.

Selecting a profile picture

Non-ConnectedDrive countries:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative to steps 1 to 3, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.
4. "Avatar"
5. Select the desired profile picture.

Deleting a driver profile

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative to steps 1 to 3, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.
4. "Settings"
5. "Remove driver profile"
6. Select the desired driver profile.
7. "Remove now"

ConnectedDrive countries: If the driver profile has been synchronised with a ConnectedDrive account, the data saved in the ConnectedDrive account is retained.

System limits

It is not always possible to detect the desired vehicle key uniquely. This may be the case in the following scenarios, for example:

- ▷ The driver unlocks the vehicle via Comfort Access.
- ▷ If there is a change of driver without the vehicle being locked and unlocked.
- ▷ If a number of vehicle keys are located in the area outside of the vehicle, on the driver's side.

ConnectedDrive countries:

It is only possible to create a driver profile and synchronise it with the ConnectedDrive account if mobile telephone reception is available.

Using the personal settings saved in the ConnectedDrive account in other vehicles is subject to certain technical restrictions. For example, there may be stored settings for a system that is not available in other vehicles, or only in an incompatible version.

Connections

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle

Principle

Various types of connection are available in the vehicle for using mobile devices. Which connection type to select depends on the mobile device and the function you wish to use.

General

The following list shows possible functions and the appropriate connection types for them. The level of functionality depends on the mobile device.

Function	Connection type	Symbol in the device list
Making calls using the hands-free system. Operating telephone functions via iDrive or touchscreen. Other functions, for example contacts or SMS.	Bluetooth.	
Play music from the smartphone or audio system.	Bluetooth audio.	
WLAN in the vehicle: Use apps in the vehicle.	WLAN.	
Wi-Fi hotspot: Using the vehicle's Internet access.	WLAN.	
Screen Mirroring: Showing the smartphone display on the control display.	WLAN.	
USB port: Playing music or video from a USB device.	USB.	

Function	Connection type	Symbol in the device list
Apple CarPlay: Operating apps via iDrive and by voice commands.	Bluetooth and WLAN.	
Android Auto: Operating apps via iDrive and by voice commands.	Bluetooth and WLAN.	

The following connection types require a one-off pairing process with the vehicle:

- ▷ Bluetooth.
- ▷ WLAN.

Paired devices are then automatically recognised and connected to the vehicle.

Safety note

WARNING

Operating integrated information systems and communication devices during a journey may distract you from the road. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only operate the systems or devices if the traffic conditions allow you to do so. Stop if necessary and operate the systems or devices with the vehicle at a standstill.

Compatible devices

General

Information about mobile devices compatible with the vehicle is available at www.bmw.com/bluetooth.

Malfunctions may occur when using unlisted devices or different software versions.

Viewing the vehicle identification number and software part number

When looking for compatible devices, the vehicle identification number and software part number may have to be stated. These numbers can be displayed in the vehicle.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth information"
6. "System information"

Managing mobile devices

General

- ▷ Following one-off pairing, the devices are automatically detected and connected again when standby state is switched on.
- ▷ The data saved on the SIM card or in the mobile telephone – for example, contacts – is transferred to the vehicle following detection and can be used via iDrive.
- ▷ Some devices may require particular settings, for example authorisation; see the user manual of the device.

Displaying the device list

All devices paired or connected to the vehicle are displayed in the device list.

A maximum of four devices can be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth and ten devices via WLAN. A maximum of 20 devices can be detected.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"

A symbol to the right of the device name indicates which function the device is used for.

If the symbol is shown in white, there is an active connection to the vehicle with this function. The symbol is shown in grey when the device function is inactive.

Symbol	Meaning
	Telephone.
	Bluetooth audio.
	WLAN in the vehicle, Wi-Fi hotspot.
	Apps.
	Screen Mirroring.
	Apple CarPlay.
	Android Auto.

Configuring the device

Functions can be activated or deactivated on a paired or connected device.

The level of functionality depends on the mobile device.

Observe the information on the control display.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Select the required device.
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Connect device"

     Functions assigned to the device before disconnection are reassigned to the device upon reconnection. If applicable, these functions are deactivated for an already connected device.
   - ▷ "Disconnect device"

     The device remains paired and can be connected again.
   - ▷ "Delete device"

     The device is disconnected and deleted from the device list.
   - ▷ "Connection mode"

     Select a connection mode, for example Apple CarPlay.
   - ▷ "Telephone"

     Set the telephone.
   - ▷ "Bluetooth audio"

     Playback of music files via Bluetooth from external devices, for example audio devices or mobile telephones.
   - ▷ "Apps"

     If the BMW Connected app is installed, smartphone apps can be displayed in the vehicle.
   - ▷ "Wi-Fi"

     Connects the device to the WLAN in the vehicle.

Telephone priority

If several mobile phones are connected to the vehicle, it is possible to define reconnection priorities for them.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Priorities for telephony"
6. Select the required device.
7. Move to select the desired priority.

Bluetooth connection

Operating requirements

- ▷ Compatible device with Bluetooth interface.

  Compatible devices, see page 85.
- ▷ The vehicle key is in the vehicle.
- ▷ The device is operational.
- ▷ Bluetooth is activated on the device and switched on in the vehicle.
- ▷ The Control Display indicates that the system is ready for registration.
- ▷ The device may require certain Bluetooth default settings, for example visibility; see the user manual of the device.

Activating Bluetooth

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth"
6. Select the setting.

Connecting a device

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed in the Control Display.
6. Compare the control number shown on the control display with the control number on the mobile device display, and confirm that the two match.
7. A Bluetooth connection is established.

The mobile device is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Enabling/disabling telephone functions

To be able to use all supported functions of a mobile telephone, the desired functions may need to be activated in the vehicle before registering the mobile telephone with the vehicle.

1. "COM"
2. "Personalise menu"
3. Select the desired settings, for example "Text messages".

Frequently Asked Questions

For the mobile device to work correctly, the preconditions have to be met and all the necessary steps have to be carried out in the correct order. Even when this is done, however, there may still be instances where the mobile device does not function as expected.

In such cases, the following explanations may provide assistance:

Why could the mobile telephone not be paired or connected?

- ▷ Too many Bluetooth devices are paired to the mobile telephone or the vehicle.

  In the vehicle, delete Bluetooth connections with other devices.

  Delete the Bluetooth connection from the device list on the mobile telephone and start a new device search.

  Too many Bluetooth devices with the same function are registered.
- ▷ The mobile telephone is in power-save mode or the battery is low.

  Charge the mobile telephone and deactivate power-save mode if necessary.

Why does the mobile telephone no longer respond?

- ▷ The applications on the mobile telephone are no longer functioning.

  Switch the mobile telephone off and on again.

- ▷ Ambient temperature too high or too low to operate the mobile telephone.

  Do not subject the mobile telephone to extreme ambient conditions.

Why can telephone functions not be operated via iDrive?

- ▷ No telephone functions are configured for the mobile telephone.

  Connect the mobile telephone with the telephone function.

Why are no phone book entries, not all entries or incomplete entries displayed?

- ▷ The transfer of the phone book entries is not yet completed.
- ▷ Under certain circumstances only the phone book entries saved in the mobile telephone or on the SIM card are transferred.
- ▷ It may not be possible to display phone book entries containing special characters.
- ▷ It may not be possible to transfer contacts from social networks.
- ▷ The number of phone book entries to be transferred is too high.
- ▷ The data volume of the contact is too large, for example due to saved information such as memos.

  Reduce the data volume of the contact.
- ▷ A mobile telephone can only be connected as an audio source or as a telephone.

  Configure the mobile telephone and connect it to the telephone function.
- ▷ A contact was created in the telephone contact list after the last synchronisation.

  Re-synchronise the contacts: "Reload contacts"

How can the telephone connection quality be improved?

- ▷ Adjust the strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile telephone; the procedure varies from mobile telephone to mobile telephone.
- ▷ Insert the mobile telephone in the wireless charging dock.
- ▷ Adjust the volume of the microphone separately in the sound settings.

If all the points on the list have been reviewed and the desired function cannot be performed, contact the Hotline, a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

WLAN connection

General

For certain applications, for example apps, data is exchanged between the vehicle and a smartphone via WLAN.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Compatible device with activated WLAN interface.

Activating WLAN in the vehicle

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Wi-Fi"

Wi-Fi hotspot

Principle

Compatible devices with a WLAN interface can use the vehicle's Internet connection via the Wi-Fi hotspot.

General

Up to ten devices can be connected at the same time using the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Compatible device with activated WLAN interface.

  Compatible devices, see page 85.
- ▷ WLAN is activated in the vehicle.
- ▷ Internet usage is activated in the vehicle.
- ▷ Registration and, if necessary, data contract with a service provider.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Connecting a device to the Internet via a Wi-Fi hotspot

Registration will be required and a data volume may need to be purchased from a service provider when you first connect to the Internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Data volumes can be purchased via the connected mobile telephone or the ConnectedDrive Store, depending on the country version.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Internet, apps"

   The hotspot name and hotspot code are displayed on the Control Display.
6. Activate Internet usage via WLAN if necessary.

   "Open settings"
7. Activate Internet usage.

   "Internet use"
8. Tilt the Controller to the left.
9. On the mobile device, search for WLAN networks. Select the network name on the device.
10. Enter the hotspot code on the device and connect.

The device is displayed in the device list.

A QR code is also displayed on the Control Display. Alternatively, this QR code can be used to pair the mobile device with the hotspot.

This data volume is used by all devices connected via the hotspot.

Deactivating Internet usage via the Wi-Fi hotspot

Internet usage may be deactivated if the data volume is used up, for example.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Internet use"
6. Select the desired setting.

Screen Mirroring

General

Screen Mirroring enables you to display your smartphone screen on the Control Display.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Compatible smartphone with Screen Mirroring interface.

  Compatible devices, see page 85.
- ▷ Screen Mirroring is activated in the smartphone.
- ▷ WLAN is activated in the vehicle.

Pairing the smartphone with Screen Mirroring

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Screen Mirroring"

The WLAN name of the vehicle is displayed in the Control Display.

6. On the smartphone, search for WLAN devices in the vicinity.

   The vehicle's WLAN name is shown on the display of the device. Select the vehicle's WLAN name.

7. Confirm the connection via iDrive.

The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Apple CarPlay preparation

Principle

CarPlay makes it possible to operate certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone by Siri voice operation and using iDrive.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Compatible iPhone, iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.

  Compatible devices, see page 85.

- ▷ Appropriate mobile radio contract.
- ▷ Bluetooth, WLAN and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.
- ▷ The setting for mobile data may need to be activated on the iPhone.
- ▷ Booking of the ConnectedDrive service: smartphone integration.
- ▷ WLAN and Bluetooth are activated in the vehicle.

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed in the Control Display.

6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.

7. Compare the control number shown on the control display with the control number on the mobile device display, and confirm that the two match.
8. "Use Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Operation

For further information, see the integrated Owner's Handbook or the Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

For the mobile device to work correctly, the preconditions have to be met and all the necessary steps have to be carried out in the correct order. Even when this is done, however, there may still be instances where the mobile device does not function as expected.

In such cases, the following explanations may provide assistance:

The iPhone has already been paired with Apple CarPlay. When a new connection is established, CarPlay can no longer be selected.

- ▷ Delete the iPhone concerned from the device list.
- ▷ On the iPhone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of saved connections under Bluetooth and under WLAN.
- ▷ Pair the iPhone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the desired function still cannot be run: contact the hotline, a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Android Auto preparation

Principle

Android Auto makes it possible to operate certain functions of a compatible smartphone via voice control and via iDrive.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Compatible Android smartphone with Android 9.0 or later.

  Compatible devices, see page 85.
- ▷ Appropriate mobile radio contract.
- ▷ Bluetooth and WLAN are activated on the smartphone.
- ▷ The setting for mobile data may need to be activated on the smartphone.
- ▷ Booking of the ConnectedDrive service: smartphone integration.
- ▷ The Android Auto app is installed on the smartphone.
- ▷ WLAN and Bluetooth are activated in the vehicle.

Pairing the smartphone with Android Auto

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed in the Control Display.
6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number shown on the control display with the control number on the mobile device display, and confirm that the two match.
8. "Use Android Auto"
9. If applicable, complete setup on the mobile device.

The smartphone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Operation

For further information, see the integrated Owner's Handbook or the Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

For the mobile device to work correctly, the preconditions have to be met and all the necessary steps have to be carried out in the correct order. Even when this is done, however, there may still be instances where the mobile device does not function as expected.

In such cases, the following explanations may provide assistance:

The smartphone has already been paired with Android Auto. When a new connection is established, Android Auto can no longer be selected.

- ▷ Delete the smartphone concerned from the device list.
- ▷ On the smartphone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of saved connections under Bluetooth and under WLAN.
- ▷ Pair the smartphone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the desired function still cannot be run: contact the hotline, a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

USB connection

General

The following mobile devices can be connected to the USB port:

- ▷ Mobile telephones.

- ▷ Audio devices, for example MP3 players.
- ▷ USB storage devices.

  Common file systems are supported. Formats FAT32 and exFAT are recommended.

A connected USB device is charged via the USB port if the device supports this. Note the maximum charge current of the USB port.

The following can be done at USB ports supporting data transfer:

- ▷ Playback of music files.
- ▷ Playback of video films.

When connecting, bear the following in mind:

- ▷ Do not use force when inserting the connector into the USB port.
- ▷ Use a flexible adapter cable.
- ▷ Protect the USB device from mechanical damage.
- ▷ Due to the large variety of USB devices available on the market, operation via the vehicle cannot be ensured for every device.
- ▷ Do not expose the USB devices to extreme environmental conditions, for example very high temperatures; see the operating instructions of the device.
- ▷ Due to the large variety of different compression techniques, correct playback of the media stored on the USB device cannot be guaranteed in every case.
- ▷ To ensure correct transmission of the stored data, do not charge a USB device from the 12 V power socket in the vehicle when the device is also connected to the USB port.
- ▷ Depending on how the USB device is being used, settings may need to be performed on the USB device; see the operating instructions of the device.

Unsuitable USB devices:

- ▷ USB hard drives.
- ▷ USB hubs.
- ▷ USB memory card reader with several slots.
- ▷ HFS-formatted USB devices.
- ▷ Devices such as fans or lamps.

Operating requirements

Compatible device with USB port.

For further information:

Compatible devices, see page 85.

Connecting a device

Connect the USB device to a USB port using a suitable adapter cable.

The USB device is displayed in the device list.

For further information:

USB port, see page 321.

Opening and closing

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Vehicle key

General

The delivery specification includes two vehicle keys with integrated keys.

Each vehicle key contains a replaceable battery.

Various settings are possible for the button functions, depending on the equipment and the national-market version.

A driver profile with personalised settings can be assigned to a vehicle key.

To provide information on maintenance requirements, the service data is saved in the vehicle key.

To prevent the vehicle key from being locked in, take it with you whenever you leave the vehicle.

Safety notes

WARNING

Persons remaining in the vehicle or pets left inside can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Carry the vehicle key with you so that you can open the vehicle from the outside.

WARNING

On some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

There is a risk of injury or danger to life if persons remain in the vehicle for extended periods and are exposed to extreme temperatures as a result. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it.

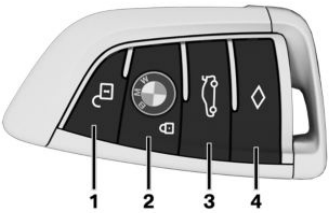
WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Overview



1 To unlock
2 Locking
3 To open/close the tailgate
4 Function adjustable:
Headlight courtesy delay feature, standing air conditioning

Unlocking

General

The vehicle's response when unlocked with the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- ▷ Whether only the driver's door or all vehicle access points are unlocked with the first press of the button.
- ▷ Whether the unlocking of the vehicle is acknowledged with a light signal or an acoustic signal.
- ▷ Whether the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the vehicle key.

If only the driver's door has been unlocked due to the settings, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

The following functions are also carried out:

- ▷ If a driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile is activated and the settings saved in it are configured.
- ▷ The interior light is switched on unless it was switched off manually.
- ▷ Folded-in exterior mirrors are folded out.
  If the exterior mirrors were folded in using the button in the interior, they are not folded out when the vehicle is unlocked.
- ▷ With anti-theft security system: The anti-theft security system is switched off.
- ▷ With alarm system: The alarm system is switched off.

The vehicle is operational after one of the front doors is opened.

The lighting functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Comfort opening

Keep the button on the vehicle key pressed after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof with sun guard are opened for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Locking

General

The vehicle's response when locked with the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- ▷ Whether locking of the vehicle is acknowledged with a light signal or an acoustic signal.
- ▷ Whether the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in when the vehicle is locked. If the hazard warning lights are switched on, the exterior mirrors are not folded in.
- ▷ Whether the home lights are activated when the vehicle is locked.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.

2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

The following functions are carried out:

- ▷ All the doors and tailgate are locked.
- ▷ With anti-theft security system: The anti-theft security system is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the locking buttons or the door handles.
- ▷ With alarm system: The alarm system is switched on.

If the drive-ready state is still switched on when locking, the vehicle horn sounds twice. In this case, switch off the drive-ready state using start/stop button.

Comfort closing

Safety note

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the comfort closing feature is operated. There is a risk of injury. When the comfort closing feature is operating, make sure that the area of movement is kept clear.

Closing

Keep the button on the vehicle key pressed after locking.

The windows and the glass sunroof with sun guard are closed for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

The exterior mirrors are folded in, provided that they were not folded in when the vehicle was locked. If the hazard warning lights are switched on, the exterior mirrors are not folded in.

Switching on the interior light and exterior lights

With the vehicle locked, press the button on the vehicle key.

The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

- ▷ The interior light is switched on unless it was switched off manually.

  Interior lighting, see page 206.

- ▷ Depending on the settings, the exterior lights are switched on.

  Welcome light, see page 201.

The lighting functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Tailgate

General

To prevent the vehicle key from being locked in, do not place it in the luggage compartment.

It is possible to set whether the doors are unlocked when the tailgate is opened with the vehicle key.

When the trailer socket is in use, the tailgate cannot be opened with the vehicle key or with the button in the interior.

Safety notes

WARNING

Operation of the tailgate/rear window can lead to parts of the body becoming trapped. There is a risk of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate/rear window is kept clear.

WARNING

The tailgate and rear window swing outwards when opened. There is a risk of injury or material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate and rear window is kept clear.

NOTE

The luggage compartment cover is automatically raised or lowered. Thereby, loads or the luggage compartment cover can be damaged. There is a risk of material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the luggage compartment cover is kept clear.

NOTE

Sharp or angular objects can strike the windows and the heating conductors during the journey. There is a risk of material damage. Cover the edges and make sure that sharp objects cannot strike the windows.

Opening

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approximately 1 second.

On some equipment versions, the doors are also unlocked each time.

Closing

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key until the tailgate has closed.

Releasing the button stops the closing operation.

If the doors were not unlocked, the tailgate is locked again as soon as it is closed.

Switching on the home lights

The home lights function must be set for the button on the vehicle key.

For further information:

Home lights, see page 114.

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approximately 1 second.

It is possible to adjust the duration of the home lights.

For further information:

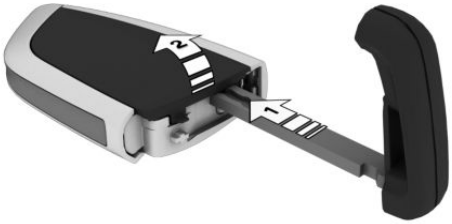
Home lights, see page 201.

Replacing the battery

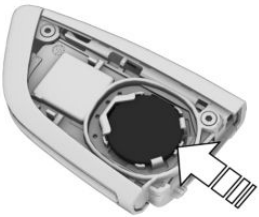
1. Remove the integrated key from the vehicle key.

   Integrated key, see page 102.

2. Place integrated key under the battery compartment lid, arrow 1, and pry off the lid with a lever motion of the integrated key, arrow 2.



3. Use a pointed object to push the battery in the direction of the arrow and lift it out.



4. Insert a new type CR 2032 battery with the positive side facing upwards.
5. Press the cover back into position and close it.
6. Push the integrated key into the vehicle key until the integrated key engages.

Dispose of old batteries at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop or hand them in to an authorised collecting point.

Additional vehicle keys

Additional vehicle keys are available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or an authorised workshop.

Loss of vehicle keys

A lost vehicle key can be blocked and replaced by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or an authorised workshop.

If a driver profile has been assigned to the lost vehicle key, the connection to this vehicle key must be removed. A new vehicle key can then be assigned to the driver profile.

Malfunction

General

A Check Control message is shown.

It may be difficult for the vehicle to detect the vehicle key in some conditions, including the following:

- ▷ The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.
- ▷ Disruption of the radio link by transmission masts or other equipment transmitting powerful signals.
- ▷ Shielding of the vehicle key by metallic objects.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with metallic objects.
- ▷ Disruption of the radio link by mobile telephones or other electronic devices in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle key.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with electronic devices.
- ▷ Interference with the radio transmission caused by the charging of mobile devices, for example a mobile phone.
- ▷ The vehicle key is located in the immediate vicinity of the wireless charging tray.

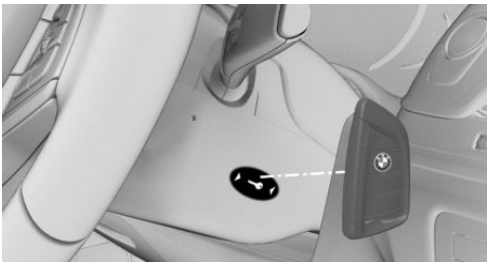
  Place the vehicle key somewhere else.

If there is a malfunction, the vehicle can be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key.

For further information:

Integrated key, see page 102.

Switching on drive-ready state via the emergency detection feature of the vehicle key



Drive-ready state cannot be switched on if the vehicle key has not been detected.

If this happens, proceed as follows:

1. Hold the rear side of the vehicle key against the mark on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the vehicle key is detected:

   Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the vehicle key is not detected, change the position of the vehicle key slightly and repeat the procedure.

Frequently Asked Questions

What provisions can be made to enable a vehicle to be opened if the vehicle key has accidentally been locked inside the vehicle?

- ▷ The Remote Services of the BMW Connected app can be used to lock and unlock a vehicle.

  This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract and the BMW Connected app must be installed on a smartphone.

▷ Unlocking of the vehicle can be requested via the BMW ConnectedDrive call centre.

This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract.

Key card

Principle

The Key Card can be used to lock, unlock and start the vehicle.

General

The Key Card is available with Comfort Access and Steptronic transmission. Depending on the national-market version, the Key Card may not be available.

A digital key that has already been paired with the vehicle is installed on the key card. The digital key must be activated via iDrive.

When you exit the vehicle, deactivate the Key Card or take the Key Card with you, as it can be used to start the vehicle when activated. Always take the vehicle key with you to a service appointment.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

Persons remaining in the vehicle or pets left inside can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Carry the vehicle key with you so that you can open the vehicle from the outside.

⚠ WARNING

On some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

There is a risk of injury or danger to life if persons remain in the vehicle for extended periods and are exposed to extreme temperatures as a result. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it.

⚠ WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

▷ Pressing the start/stop button.

▷ Releasing the parking brake.

▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.

▷ Engaging selector lever position N.

▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Connection to the vehicle

Communication between the vehicle and the Key Card takes place via near field communication NFC.

Activating/deactivating the Key Card in the vehicle

General

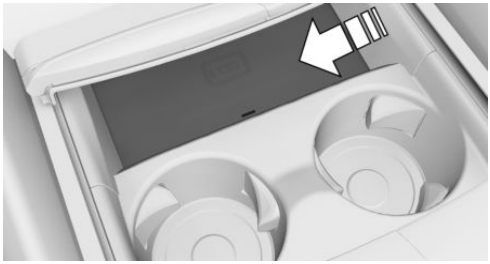
To activate the Key Card, it must be in the smartphone tray and there must be a vehicle key in the vehicle.

To deactivate the Key Card, there must be a vehicle key in the vehicle.

If BMW Digital Key is activated for the vehicle, a digital key can be used instead of the vehicle key.

A deactivated Key Card will remain in the list of registered digital keys.

Activating the Key Card



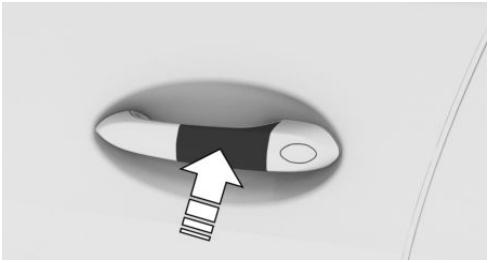
1. Open the cover of the smartphone dock.
2. Place the Key Card in the middle of the smartphone tray.
3. Follow the instructions on the control display to activate the Key Card.

Deactivating the Key Card

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Digital Key"
5. Select Key Card.
6. "Key active."

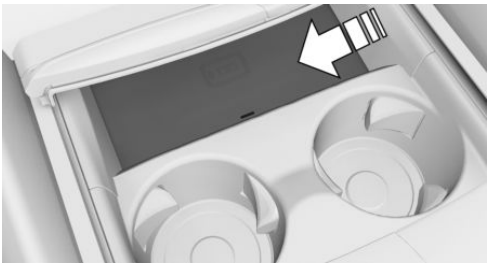
A deactivated Key Card will remain in the list of registered digital keys.

Unlocking and locking the vehicle



Hold the activated Key Card directly and centrally up against the outside door handle on the driver's door.

Starting the engine



1. Open the cover of the smartphone dock.
2. Place the activated Key Card in the middle of the smartphone tray.
3. Press the Start/Stop button to start the engine.

With wireless charging tray: The Key Card can be taken out of the tray after starting the engine so that the tray can be used to charge compatible smartphones.

Malfunction

Objects between the sensors and the Key Card, for example a purse or wallet, may prevent the vehicle from detecting the Key Card.

BMW Digital Key

Principle

BMW Digital Key allows you to use a compatible smartphone to lock, unlock and start the vehicle.

General

BMW Digital Key is available with Comfort Access and Steptronic transmission. Depending on the national-market version, BMW Digital Key may not be available.

BMW Digital Key can be used with a compatible smartphone or another compatible mobile end device, for example a smartwatch.

To unlock and start a vehicle with a compatible smartphone, this function must be offered by the

smartphone manufacturer. Users can check whether the smartphone and the vehicle are compatible in the BMW app.

A driver profile with individual settings can be assigned to a digital key.

For further information:

Driver profiles, see page 80.

When using a smartphone as a digital key, always have a vehicle key or the activated Key Card about your person too. This will mean that you can still access the vehicle even if the smartphone is not working. It is also useful to have the vehicle key or Key Card about your person if the vehicle has to be handed over to another person. The vehicle key or Key Card can then be handed over, instead of the smartphone. Always take the vehicle key with you to a service appointment.

Safety notes

WARNING

Persons remaining in the vehicle or pets left inside can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Carry the vehicle key with you so that you can open the vehicle from the outside.

WARNING

On some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

There is a risk of injury or danger to life if persons remain in the vehicle for extended periods and are exposed to extreme temperatures as a result. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it.

WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Connection to the vehicle

Communication between the vehicle and the smartphone takes place via near field communication, NFC.

Operating requirements

- ▷ The smartphone is compatible with BMW Digital Key.
- ▷ The vehicle is linked with the ConnectedDrive account of the vehicle owner.
- ▷ The smartphone battery is sufficiently charged. The minimum battery charge required depends on the smartphone in question.

Enabling the main digital key

The vehicle owner's smartphone is enabled as the main digital key in the vehicle. The vehicle owner must provide evidence of his/her authorisation for the vehicle for this purpose.

Evidence of authorisation can be provided via the BMW app or the activation code in the corresponding smartphone function, for example in the Wallet app. Both vehicle keys must be in the vehicle during enabling.

Follow the enabling instructions in the Digital Key menu within the BMW app or on the control display.

Digital keys may have limited service validity periods. The expiry date can be checked in the BMW app.

If a digital key has expired, it can still be used to drive the vehicle until the vehicle is operated with a different vehicle key or digital key.

Sharing digital keys

General

Digital Key enables digital keys to be shared with other people. This option is provided via the smartphone enabled as the main digital key.

Passing on authorisation

To share the digital key, select the corresponding function on the smartphone, for example in the Wallet app.

As soon as a digital key is shared with a person, this person receives an invitation. If the invitation is accepted, the digital key is activated on the recipient's smartphone.

Authentication

Depending on the recipient's smartphone model, authentication may be required for security reasons.

An authorised vehicle key, the main digital key or another method can be used to perform the authentication. Corresponding information is displayed for your attention on the smartphone or control display.

Deleting a shared key

General

Shared keys can be deleted via the smartphone associated with the main digital key, via the smartphone associated with a shared key or in iDrive.

A shared key will only be deleted via the smartphone associated with the main digital key if the vehicle is being used with a key other than the one that is to be deleted.

If the smartphone associated with a shared key or iDrive is used to delete a shared key, it will be deleted immediately.

Deleted digital keys are removed from the list of enabled digital keys.

Deleted digital keys cannot be restored.

Deletion in iDrive

To enable a digital key to be deleted in iDrive, there must be an authorised vehicle key in the vehicle or the main key must be in the smartphone tray.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Digital Key"
5. Select a digital key as necessary.
6. "Delete key"

Resetting the function

To reset BMW Digital Key function, there must be an authorised vehicle key in the vehicle.

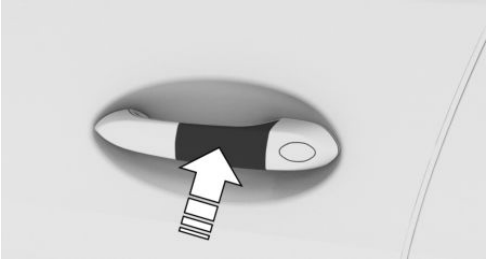
All digital keys, including the main key, are deleted when the BMW Digital Key function is reset.

Following the reset, it will no longer be possible to lock, unlock or start the vehicle with a digital key.

The main digital key must be enabled again in order to be able to use BMW Digital Key again.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Digital Key"
5. "Reset function"

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

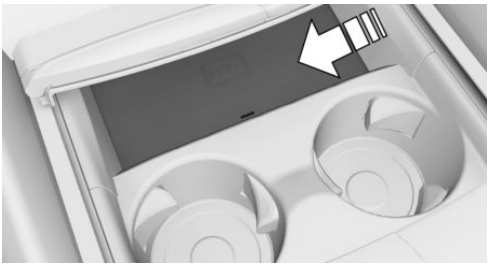


Hold the NFC antenna on the smartphone directly and centrally up against the outside door handle on the driver's door.

The position of the NFC antenna will depend on the smartphone model.

When using a smartphone to lock the vehicle, make sure that all doors and the tailgate are closed.

Starting the engine



1. Open the cover of the smartphone dock.
2. Place the smartphone in the middle of the smartphone tray.

   Make sure that the display is pointing upwards.
3. Close the cover of the smartphone tray.
4. Press the Start/Stop button to start the engine.

Selling the smartphone

Delete all digital keys from the smartphone before selling it. This ensures that the smartphone can no longer be used for the vehicle.

Selling the vehicle

Before selling a vehicle, reset the digital key function or remove the vehicle from the ConnectedDrive account of the current vehicle owner.

If the vehicle is removed from the ConnectedDrive account, all digital keys for the vehicle are deleted.

Malfunction

It may be difficult for the vehicle to detect the digital key in some circumstances, including the following:

- ▷ The smartphone is shielded from the sensors in the vehicle by an unsuitable smartphone cover.
- ▷ There are objects between the smartphone and its cover, for example a card with a chip or the Key Card.

Integrated key

General

With the integrated key, the driver's door can be unlocked and locked without the vehicle key.

Depending on the national-market version, the integrated key also fits in the glove compartment.

Use the integrated key to operate the key switch for front passenger airbags.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

On some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

There is a risk of injury or danger to life if persons remain in the vehicle for extended periods and are exposed to extreme temperatures as a result. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it.

NOTE

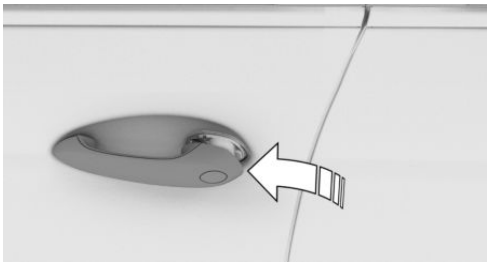
The door lock is fixed to the door. The door handle can be moved. Pulling the door handle when the integrated key is inserted can damage the paint or the integrated key. There is a risk of material damage. Pull out the integrated key before pulling on the outer door handle.

Removing

Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

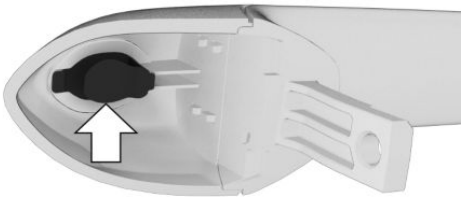
Unlocking/locking using the door lock

1. Pull the door handle outwards with one hand and hold it.

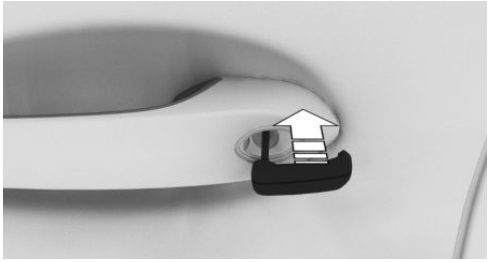


2. Slide one finger of your other hand under the cover from behind and push the cover outwards.

   Support the cover with your thumb, to stop it falling out of the door handle.



3. Remove the cover.
4. Unlock or lock the door lock with the integrated key.



The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

Alarm system

The switched-on alarm system is triggered when the door is opened after being unlocked via the door lock.

The alarm system is not switched on if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

Central locking buttons

General

In the event of an accident of sufficient severity, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning lights and interior lights illuminate.

Overview

Central locking buttons.

Locking

Press the button with the front doors closed.

Locking does not activate the vehicle's anti-theft protection system.

Unlocking

Press the button.

Opening

▷ Press the button to unlock all the doors together.

Pull the door handle above the armrest.

▷ Turn the door opener on the door to be opened. The other doors remain locked.

Comfort Access

Principle

This feature allows you to access the vehicle without having to operate the vehicle key.

Simply having the vehicle key with you, for example in your trouser pocket, is sufficient.

The vehicle automatically recognises the vehicle key when it is in the immediate vicinity or inside the vehicle.

General

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- ▷ Unlocking and locking the vehicle using the door handle.
- ▷ Comfort closing.
- ▷ Contactless vehicle unlocking and locking.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: unlocking and locking the vehicle using the BMW Digital Key.
- ▷ Open the tailgate.
- ▷ Open and close the tailgate contactlessly.

Operating requirements

- ▷ To lock the vehicle, the vehicle key must be located outside the vehicle in the vicinity of the doors.
- ▷ The vehicle can only be unlocked and locked again after approximately 2 seconds.

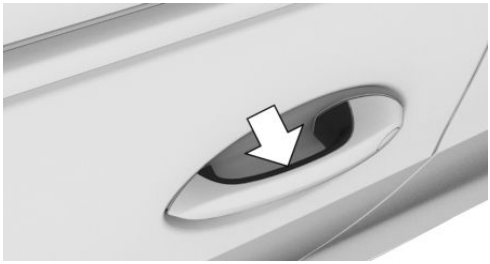
Unlocking

General

The behaviour of the vehicle when unlocked via Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- Whether the unlocking of the vehicle is acknowledged with a light signal or an acoustic signal.
- Whether the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle



Fully grip the handle of a vehicle door.

The following functions are also carried out:

- If a driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile is activated and the settings saved in it are configured.
- The interior light is switched on unless it was switched off manually.
- Folded-in exterior mirrors are folded out.

  If the exterior mirrors were folded in using the button in the interior, they are not folded out when the vehicle is unlocked.
- With anti-theft security system: The anti-theft security system is switched off.
- With alarm system: The alarm system is switched off.

Locking

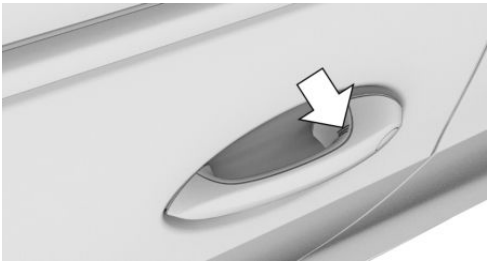
General

The behaviour of the vehicle when locked via Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- Whether locking of the vehicle is acknowledged with a light signal or an acoustic signal.
- Whether the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in when the vehicle is locked. If the hazard warning lights are switched on, the exterior mirrors are not folded in.
- Whether the home lights are activated when the vehicle is locked.

Locking the vehicle

Close the driver's door.



With your finger, touch the grooved area on the handle of a closed vehicle door for approximately 1 second, without gripping the door handle.

The following functions are carried out:

- All the doors and tailgate are locked.
- With anti-theft security system: The anti-theft security system is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the locking buttons or the door handles.
- With alarm system: The alarm system is switched on.

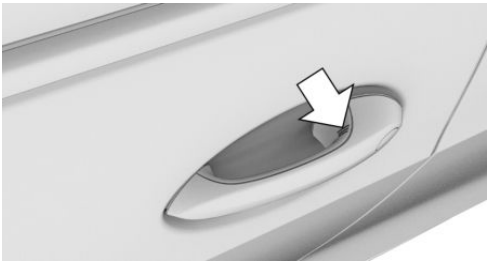
Comfort closing

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the comfort closing feature is operated. There is a risk of injury. When the comfort closing feature is operating, make sure that the area of movement is kept clear.

Closing



With your finger, touch the knurled area on the handle of a closed vehicle door and keep your finger there without gripping the door handle.

In addition to locking, the windows and the glass sunroof with sun guard are closed.

The exterior mirrors are folded in, provided that they were not folded in when the vehicle was locked. If the hazard warning lights are switched on, the exterior mirrors are not folded in.

Opening the tailgate/rear window

General

If the tailgate is opened using Comfort Access, locked doors are not unlocked.

To prevent the vehicle key from being locked in, do not place it in the luggage compartment.

Safety notes

WARNING

Operation of the tailgate/rear window can lead to parts of the body becoming trapped. There is a risk of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate/rear window is kept clear.

WARNING

The tailgate and rear window swing outwards when opened. There is a risk of injury or material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate and rear window is kept clear.

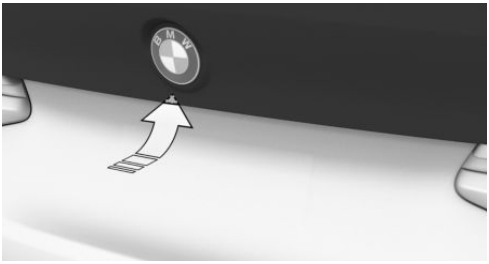
NOTE

The luggage compartment cover is automatically raised or lowered. Thereby, loads or the luggage compartment cover can be damaged. There is a risk of material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the luggage compartment cover is kept clear.

NOTE

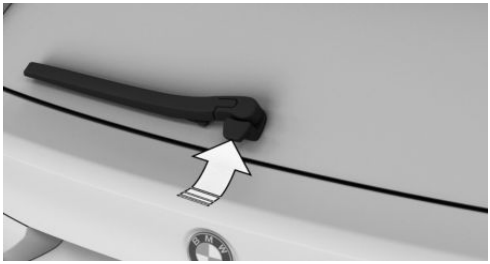
Sharp or angular objects can strike the windows and the heating conductors during the journey. There is a risk of material damage. Cover the edges and make sure that sharp objects cannot strike the windows.

Opening the tailgate



Press the button on the outside of the tailgate.

Opening rear window



Press the button on the rear window.

Opening and closing the tailgate contactlessly

Principle

The tailgate can be opened and closed contactlessly, provided you are carrying the vehicle key with you. Two sensors detect a directed foot movement in the central rear area and the tailgate is opened and closed.

General

To prevent the vehicle key from being locked in, do not place it in the luggage compartment.

If the vehicle key is within the sensor range, the tailgate can be accidentally opened or closed by an unintentional or presumed foot movement.

The sensor range extends to approximately 1.50 m, 5 ft behind the rear area.

If the tailgate is opened with a contactless method, locked doors are not unlocked.

Contactless opening and closing of the tailgate must be activated in the settings.

Safety notes

WARNING

When operating the boot lid contactlessly, there is a risk of touching vehicle parts, for example the hot exhaust system. There is a risk of injury. Make sure you are standing securely as you move your foot, and do not touch the vehicle.

WARNING

Operation of the tailgate/rear window can lead to parts of the body becoming trapped. There is a risk of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate/rear window is kept clear.

WARNING

The tailgate and rear window swing outwards when opened. There is a risk of injury or material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate and rear window is kept clear.

NOTE

The luggage compartment cover is automatically raised or lowered. Thereby, loads or the luggage compartment cover can be damaged. There is a risk of material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the luggage compartment cover is kept clear.

NOTE

Sharp or angular objects can strike the windows and the heating conductors during the journey. There is a risk of material damage. Cover the edges and make sure that sharp objects cannot strike the windows.

Operating requirements

It is not possible to open and close the tailgate contactlessly if the trailer socket is in use.

Settings

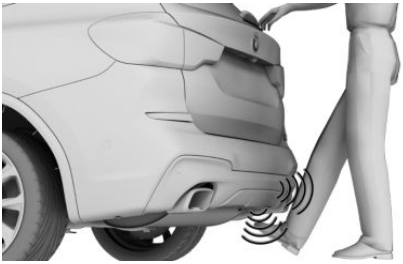
1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Tailgate"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Open with foot movement"

     Contactless opening of the boot lid is switched on or off.
   - ▷ "Close with foot movement"

     Contactless closing of the tailgate is switched on or off.

Correct foot movement

1. Stand in the centre behind the vehicle, approximately an arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Kick your foot underneath the vehicle and immediately pull it back. Your leg must move across the ranges of both sensors.



Opening

Perform the foot movement described previously.

The hazard warning lights flash before the tailgate opens.

Moving your foot again will stop the opening operation, and moving it one more time after that will close the boot lid again.

Closing

Perform the foot movement described previously.

The hazard warning lights flash and an acoustic signal sounds.

Moving your foot again will stop the closing operation, and moving it one more time after that will open the boot lid again.

Contactless vehicle unlocking and locking

Principle

The vehicle is unlocked when the driver approaches the locked vehicle with the vehicle key.

If the driver moves away from the unlocked vehicle with the vehicle key, the vehicle is locked.

General

The vehicle is unlocked when an authorised vehicle key is detected in the unlocking zone.

The unlocking zone is an area with a radius of approximately 1 m, 3 ft from the door handles.

The vehicle is locked when the vehicle key leaves the locking zone.

The locking zone is an area with a radius of approximately 2 m, 7 ft from the door handles.

If the vehicle key remains within the unlocking zone without moving for a prolonged period of time, the vehicle is locked automatically.

If a person is detected on the front passenger seat during locking and if the front passenger's seat belt is in the belt buckle during locking. The vehicle is locked, but not protected against theft.

The behaviour of the vehicle in the case of contactless unlocking/locking depends on the following settings:

- ▷ Whether automatic unlocking is active.
- ▷ Whether automatic locking is active.
- ▷ Whether only the driver's door or all vehicle access points are unlocked.

Only driver's door: driver's door is only unlocked when the driver approaches the vehicle on the driver's side.

All vehicle access points: the vehicle is unlocked regardless of which side the driver approaches the vehicle from.

- ▷ Whether the locking and unlocking of the vehicle is acknowledged with a light signal or an acoustic signal.
- ▷ Whether the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.
- ▷ Whether the home lights are activated when the vehicle is locked.
- ▷ Whether the exterior mirrors are automatically folded out and in when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Drive-ready state must be switched off.
- ▷ Unlock: on entering the unlocking zone, the doors and tailgate must be closed.
- ▷ Lock: on leaving the locking zone, the doors and tailgate must be closed.
- ▷ There must not be a second vehicle key within a radius of six metres of the vehicle in order to use contactless vehicle locking.
- ▷ If the vehicle has been in rest state for several days, contactless unlocking/locking is not possible until the vehicle has been driven.

Malfunction

It may be difficult for the vehicle to detect the vehicle key in some conditions, including the following:

- ▷ The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.

  To replace the battery, see page 96.
- ▷ Disruption of the radio link by transmission masts or other equipment transmitting powerful signals.
- ▷ Shielding of the vehicle key by metallic objects.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with metallic objects.
- ▷ Disruption of the radio link by mobile telephones or other electronic devices in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle key.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with electronic devices.

Wet or snowy conditions may affect the ability of the door handles to detect a lock request.

If a fault occurs, unlock and lock the vehicle with the buttons on the vehicle key or with the integrated key.

For further information:

Integrated key, see page 102.

Tailgate/rear window

General

To prevent the vehicle key from being locked in, do not place it in the luggage compartment.

Depending on the equipment level, and national-market versions, it is possible to select whether the doors are also unlocked when unlocking with the vehicle key.

For further information:

For settings, see page 113.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

Operation of the tailgate/rear window can lead to parts of the body becoming trapped. There is a risk of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate/rear window is kept clear.

⚠ WARNING

The tailgate and rear window swing outwards when opened. There is a risk of injury or material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate and rear window is kept clear.

⚠ NOTE

Sharp or angular objects can strike the windows and the heating conductors during the journey. There is a risk of material damage. Cover the edges and make sure that sharp objects cannot strike the windows.

⚠ NOTE

The luggage compartment cover is automatically raised or lowered. Thereby, loads or the luggage compartment cover can be damaged. There is a risk of material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the luggage compartment cover is kept clear.

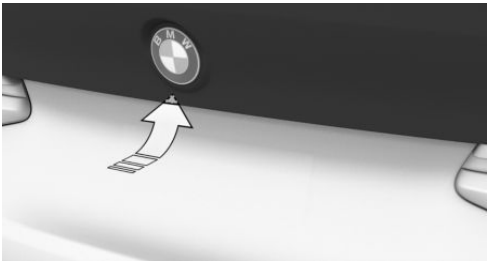
Tailgate

Opening

General

When the trailer socket is in use, the tailgate cannot be opened with the vehicle key or with the button in the interior.

From outside



▷ Unlock the vehicle, then press the button on the outside of the tailgate.

▷ With Comfort Access: have the vehicle key about your person and press the button on the outside of the tailgate.

▷ Press the button on the vehicle key for approximately 1 second.

If applicable, the doors are also unlocked.

When the vehicle is stationary, the tailgate opens automatically up to the set opening height.

From inside

When the vehicle is stationary, press the button in the driver's door down.

The tailgate opens up to the set opening height.

Cancelling the opening operation

The opening procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

▷ If the vehicle begins to move.

▷ By pressing the button on the outside of the tailgate. Pressing again closes the tailgate.

▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate. Pressing again closes the tailgate.

▷ By pressing the button on the vehicle key. Pressing again resumes the opening operation.

Pressing and holding the button closes the tailgate again.

▷ By pressing or pulling the button in the driver's door. Pressing again resumes the opening operation.

Closing

From outside

▷ Press and hold the button on the vehicle key until the tailgate has closed.

Releasing the button stops the movement.

▷ Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.

With Comfort Access:

▷ Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.

The vehicle is locked after the tailgate has been closed. To do so, the driver's door must be closed and the vehicle key must be outside the vehicle in the vicinity of the tailgate.

From inside

Pull and hold the button in the driver's door.

For this function, the vehicle key must be in the interior.

Cancelling the closing operation

The closing procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

▷ When driving off suddenly.

▷ By pressing the button on the outside of the tailgate. Pressing again re-opens the tailgate.

▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate. Pressing again re-opens the tailgate.

▷ By releasing the button in the driver's door. Pulling the button again and holding it in this position resumes the closing operation.

▷ By releasing the button on the vehicle key. Pressing the button again and holding it down resumes the closing operation.

Malfunction

Safety note

WARNING

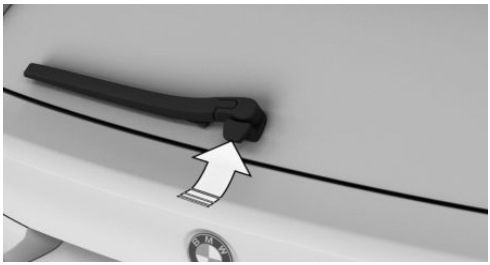
A jammed tailgate may move unexpectedly when being operated manually to release it. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Do not manually operate a locked tailgate. Have checks performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

In the event of an electrical fault, operate the unlocked tailgate manually; do so slowly and without sudden movements.

Only light pressure is required to fully close the tailgate. The closing operation is then performed automatically.

Rear window

Opening



Without Comfort Access: unlock vehicle.

With Comfort Access: unlock the vehicle or have the vehicle key about your person.

Press the button on the rear window.

Closing

To close: press the rear window closed.

Parking service mode

Principle

The control display is disabled in parking service mode. Operation via iDrive is no longer possible.

This mode can be used, for example, if the vehicle is to be handed over to a parking service.

General

In parking service mode, the vehicle settings cannot be changed via iDrive. The Personal Profile cannot be changed. Personal data cannot be displayed.

In addition, the following actions are performed:

- ▷ The volume of the audio system is limited.
- ▷ DSC cannot be switched off.

Operating requirements

- ▷ At least one driver profile has been created.
- ▷ A driver profile or the guest profile is active.
- ▷ A ConnectedDrive account is assigned to at least one driver profile.

Calling up the menu for parking service mode

Via the switch-off screen

The switch-off screen is displayed after switching off the drive-ready state. Select the entry for parking service mode in the switch-off screen.

Via the display bar at the top of the control display

1. Tilt the Controller up.
2. "Valet parking mode"

Via the vehicle settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Valet parking mode"

Activating parking service mode

General

Before activating parking service mode, a PIN must be defined so that parking service mode can be deactivated later on.

The procedure for entering a PIN varies depending on the active driver profile.

Driver profile with PIN

A PIN has been defined for the active driver profile.

It is not necessary to enter another PIN.

"Activate now"

Driver profile without PIN

A PIN must be assigned to the driver profile.

1. "PIN"
2. PIN required.
3. "Activate now"

Guest profile

The active driver profile is the guest profile.

A PIN must be entered.

1. "PIN"
2. PIN required.
3. "Activate now"

   This PIN can be used once to deactivate parking service mode when the guest profile is active.

Deactivating parking service mode

General

The lock screen for parking service mode is displayed on the Control Display.

How parking service mode is deactivated depends on which driver profile is selected on the lock screen.

Driver profile with PIN

Regardless of which driver has activated parking service mode, a driver can deactivate parking service mode by entering his/her PIN.

1. Select a driver profile.
2. Enter the PIN assigned to the driver profile.

If you have forgotten the PIN, parking service mode must be deactivated by entering the assigned ConnectedDrive login details.

Driver profile without PIN

Parking service mode was activated by a different person. To deactivate parking service mode, a driver without a PIN must enter the login details for his/her ConnectedDrive account.

1. Select a driver profile.
2. Enter the ConnectedDrive login details assigned to the driver profile.

Guest profile

It is only possible to deactivate parking service mode in the guest profile if the mode was activated in the guest profile.

1. Select the guest profile.
2. Enter the PIN that was set during activation.

If you have forgotten the PIN, parking service mode must be deactivated via a personal driver profile.

Settings

General

Various settings are possible for opening and closing, depending on the equipment and the country specifications.

These settings are saved for the current driver profile.

Unlocking and locking

Doors

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button assignment"
4. Select the symbol.
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Driver's door only"

     Only the driver's door is unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "All doors"

     The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Vehicle acknowledgement signals

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. Deactivate or activate desired acknowledgement signals:
   - ▷ "Flash for lock/unlock"

     Unlocking is acknowledged by flashing twice, locking by flashing once.
   - ▷ With alarm system:

     "Acoustic signal for lock/unlock"

     Unlocking is acknowledged by an acoustic signal sounding twice, locking by the acoustic signal sounding once.

Automatic folding of the mirrors

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Fold mirrors in when locked"

Automatic unlocking

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Unlock at end of journey"

   After drive-ready state has been switched off by pressing the Start/Stop button, the locked vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Automatic locking

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Lock in a few minutes"

     The vehicle is automatically locked again after a short while if no doors are opened after unlocking.
   - ▷ "Lock after pulling away"

     On driving off, the vehicle is locked automatically.

Tailgate

Tailgate and doors

Depending on the equipment and the country specifications, these settings may not be available.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button assignment"
4. Select the symbol.
   - ▷ "Tailgate"

     Tailgate is opened.
   - ▷ "Tailgate and door(s)"

     Tailgate is opened and doors are unlocked.

Setting the opening height

The extent to which the tailgate opens can be set.

When setting the opening height, make sure that there is a space of at least 10 cm, 4 in above the tailgate.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Tailgate"
5. "Opening height"
6. Watch the tailgate and set the desired opening height.

Comfort Access

Contactless locking and unlocking

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Comfort access"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Unlock by approaching"
   - ▷ "Lock by leaving"

Home lights

You can assign the home lights to the vehicle key button.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button assignment"
4. Select the symbol.
5. "Home lights"

Standing air conditioning

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button assignment"

4. ◆ Select the symbol.
5. "Auxiliary climate control"

Closing the glass sunroof automatically

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Automatic roof closing"

   If the vehicle was parked with the glass sunroof open, the glass sunroof will be automatically moved to the raised position when it starts to rain.

Establishing rest state after opening the front doors

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Switch off after door opening"

   Rest state, see page 51.

Alarm system

General

The alarm system responds to the following changes when the vehicle is locked:

- ▷ A door, the front flap or the tailgate is opened.
- ▷ Movements inside the vehicle.
- ▷ A change in the vehicle's incline, for instance if an attempt is made to jack it up and steal the wheels or to raise it prior to towing away.
- ▷ An interruption in the power supply from the battery.
- ▷ Improper use of the socket for on-board diagnosis OBD.
- ▷ The vehicle is locked while a device is connected to the socket for on-board diagnosis OBD.

The alarm system indicates these changes visually and audibly:

- ▷ Audible alarm:

  Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- ▷ Visual alarm:

  By flashing of the hazard warning lights and, if applicable, the headlights.

To safeguard the function of the alarm system, do not modify the system.

Switching on/off

The alarm system is switched off or on as soon as the vehicle is unlocked or locked with the vehicle key or using Comfort Access.

Opening the doors when the alarm system is switched on

The alarm system is triggered on opening a door if the door has been unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Opening the tailgate with the alarm system switched on

The tailgate can be opened even with the alarm system switched on.

On closing the tailgate, it is locked again and monitored, as long as the doors are locked. The hazard warning lights flash once.

Indicator lamp on the rear-view mirror

- ▷ Indicator lamp flashes every 2 seconds:

The alarm system is switched on.

▷ Indicator lamp flashes for approximately 10 seconds before it flashes every 2 seconds:

The interior movement detector and tilt alarm sensor are not active because the doors, bonnet or tailgate are not closed correctly. Correctly closed access points are secured.

Once the remaining open access points have been closed, the interior movement detector and tilt alarm sensor are switched on.

▷ The indicator lamp extinguishes after the vehicle has been unlocked:

This means that the vehicle is not being tampered with.

▷ The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until drive-ready state is switched on, but for no longer than approximately 5 minutes:

The alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The incline of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds, for example when there is an attempt to steal a wheel or tow the vehicle away.

Interior movement detector

To ensure perfect functioning, the windows and glass sunroof must be closed.

Avoiding false alarms

General

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior movement detector may trigger an alarm without any unauthorised activity taking place.

Situations where false warnings may occur:

▷ In washing bays or car washes.

▷ In two-level garages.

▷ When transporting the vehicle via motorail, car ferry or trailer.

▷ When there are pets in the vehicle.

▷ When the vehicle is locked after starting to refuel.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior movement detector can be switched off for such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior movement detector

Within 10 seconds of locking the vehicle, press the button on the vehicle key.

The indicator lamp illuminates for approximately 2 seconds and then flashes again.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior movement detector are switched off until the next time the vehicle is locked.

Stopping the alarm

▷ Unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key.

▷ Unlock the vehicle with the integrated key and switch on drive-ready state using the emergency detection feature of the vehicle key.

Malfunction, see page 97.

▷ With Comfort Access: fully grip the handle of the driver's or front passenger door while carrying the vehicle key.

Power window switches

General

The windows can be opened and closed from outside with the vehicle key.

With Comfort Access: The windows can be closed from outside using Comfort Access.

If a window is often opened to the same point, this task can be carried out by the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant. For example, if you often use the same car park.

For further information:

▷ Vehicle key, see page 93.

▷ BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, see page 67.

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the windows are operated. There is a risk of injury or material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the windows is kept clear.

Overview

Power window switches

Safety switch

Operating requirements

The windows can be operated under the following conditions.

▷ Standby state is switched on.

▷ Drive-ready state is switched on.

▷ For a short while after rest state has been established.

The vehicle key must be in the vehicle interior.

Opening

▷ Push the switch as far as the resistance point.

The window opens for as long as the switch is held.

▷ Push the switch past the resistance point.

The window is opened automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the movement.

Closing

▷ Pull the switch as far as the resistance point.

The window closes for as long as the switch is held.

▷ Pull the switch past the resistance point.

The window closes automatically if the door is closed. Pulling the switch again stops the movement.

Anti-trap mechanism

Principle

The anti-trap mechanism prevents objects or parts of the body from becoming trapped between the door frame and window while a window is being closed.

General

If resistance or a blockage is detected while a window is being closed, the closing operation is interrupted.

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

Accessories on the windows, for example aerials, can impair the anti-trap mechanism. There is a risk of injury. Do not attach any accessories within the area of movement of the windows.

Closing without the anti-trap mechanism

If an external hazard or ice prevents you from closing the windows normally, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it in this position.

   The window is closed but with limited anti-trap function. If the closing force exceeds a certain level, the closing operation is interrupted.

2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approximately 4 seconds and hold it in this position.

   The window is closed with no anti-trap function.

Safety switch

Principle

The safety switch can be used to prevent children from opening and closing the rear windows by means of the switches in the rear, for example.

In the event of an accident of sufficient severity, the safety function is automatically switched off.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the safety function is switched on.

Roller sunblinds, rear side windows

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

When the roller sunblinds are closed and the windows opened, the roller sunblinds can be heavily stressed during the journey due to the air stream. The roller sunblinds can become damaged and endanger vehicle occupants. There is a risk of injury. Do not open the windows during the journey when the roller sunblinds are closed.

Pull the roller sunblind out with the loop and hang into the holder.

Electric glass sunroof

General

The glass sunroof and the sun guard are operated using the same switch.

The glass sunroof can be opened and closed from outside with the vehicle key.

With Comfort Access: The glass sunroof can be closed from outside using Comfort Access.

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

Parts of the body may become trapped when the glass sunroof is operated. There is a risk of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is kept clear.

Overview

Open/close the glass sunroof/sun guard.

Operating requirements

The glass sunroof and the sun guard can be operated under the following conditions.

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▷ For a short while after rest state has been established.

The vehicle key must be in the vehicle interior.

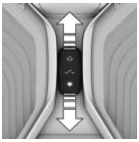
Raising/closing the glass sunroof

Push the switch briefly up.

- ▷ The closed glass sunroof is raised and the sun guard opens slightly.
- ▷ The opened glass sunroof closes to the raised position. The sun guard does not move.

- ▷ The raised glass sunroof is closed.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun guard separately



- ▷ Slide the switch backwards as far as the resistance point and hold.

  The sun guard continues to open for as long as the switch is pressed. The glass sunroof is opened if the sun guard is already fully open.

- ▷ Slide the switch forwards as far as the resistance point and hold.

  The glass sunroof closes for as long as the switch is held. If the glass sunroof is already closed or is in the raised position, the sun guard is closed.

- ▷ Slide the switch backwards beyond the resistance point.

  The sun guard is opened automatically. The glass sunroof is opened automatically if the sun guard is already fully open.

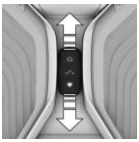
  Pressing the switch again stops the movement.

- ▷ Slide the switch forwards beyond the resistance point.

  The glass sunroof is closed automatically. If the glass sunroof is already closed or is in the raised position, the sun guard is closed automatically.

  Pressing the switch again stops the movement.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun guard together



- ▷ Press the switch backwards twice in quick succession beyond the resistance point.

  The glass sunroof and the sun guard open together.

Pressing the switch again stops the movement.

▷ Slide the switch forwards twice in quick succession beyond the resistance point.

The glass sunroof and the sun guard close together.

Pressing the switch again stops the movement.

Comfort position

In some models, the wind noises in the car's interior are lowest when the glass sunroof is not fully open. In these models, the automatic function initially only opens the glass sunroof as far as this comfort position.

Pressing the switch again opens the glass sunroof fully.

For closing when it is raining

Principle

An open glass sunroof is automatically moved to the raised position when it starts to rain or six hours after the vehicle has been locked.

Operating requirements

▷ It must be possible for rain to reach the touch control box in the area of the rear-view mirror. The touch control box may be obscured by a car port or bridge, for example.

▷ Vehicle must be in rest state.

▷ The function must be activated in the settings.

For settings, see page 113.

Malfunctions

The open glass sunroof is not moved to the raised position under the following circumstances:

▷ The glass sunroof is blocked.

▷ The anti-trap mechanism is not secured.

▷ There is a system error, for example due to a temporary interruption in the electrical power supply. In this case, initialising the glass sunroof can help.

An error message is shown on the Control Display. No further closing is attempted.

If rain detection is not possible due to the system, the open glass sunroof is immediately moved to the raised position. An error message is shown on the Control Display.

Anti-trap mechanism

Principle

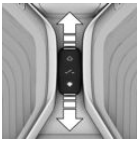
The anti-trap mechanism prevents objects or parts of the body from becoming trapped between the roof frame and glass sunroof while the glass sunroof is being closed.

General

If resistance or a blockage is detected while the glass sunroof is being closed, the closing operation is interrupted once the roof reaches the half-open position or it is stopped when closing from the raised position.

Closing without the anti-trap mechanism from an open position

If an external hazard or ice prevents you from closing the windows normally, proceed as follows:



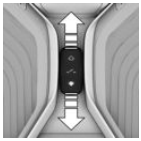
1. Close all doors.
2. Slide the switch forwards beyond the resistance point and hold it in this position.

   The glass sunroof is closed with limited anti-trap function. If the closing force exceeds a certain level, the closing operation is interrupted.

3. Press the switch forwards once again beyond the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes with no anti-trap function. Ensure that the closing area is clear.

Closing without the anti-trap mechanism from a raised position

If an external hazard or ice prevents you from closing the windows normally, proceed as follows:



1. Close all doors.
2. Slide the switch forwards beyond the resistance point and hold it in this position.

Initialising after a power failure

General

If a power failure occurs while the glass sunroof is opening or closing, it may only have limited functionality afterwards. In this case, initialising the system can help.

The system can be initialised under the following conditions:

- ▷ The vehicle is parked on level ground.
- ▷ The vehicle does not move until initialisation is complete.
- ▷ In drive-ready state.
- ▷ The outside temperature is above 5 °C/41 °F.

During initialisation, the glass sunroof closes with no anti-trap mechanism.

Ensure that the closing area is clear.

Initialising the system

Press the switch up and hold until initialisation is complete:

Initialisation begins within 15 seconds.

- ▷ If the glass sunroof is closed, it opens, then closes again.
- ▷ If the glass sunroof is open, it first closes, then opens and closes again.

Initialisation is complete once the glass sunroof and sun guard have opened then closed again.

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Safe seating position

A seating position that suitably meets the needs of the occupants is essential for relaxed driving with minimum fatigue.

In an accident, the correct seating position plays an important role. Comply with the notes in the following chapters.

For further information:

▷ Seats, see page 122.
▷ Seat belts, see page 125.
▷ Head restraints, see page 128.
▷ Airbags, see page 208.

Seats

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

Adjusting the seat during a journey could cause the seat to move unexpectedly. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when at a standstill.

⚠ WARNING

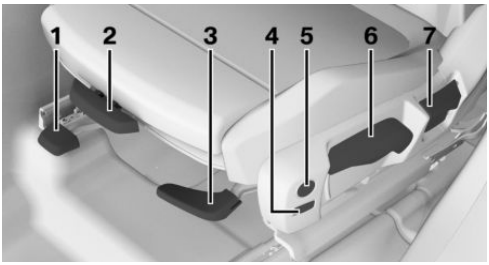
If the backrest is angled back too far, the protective function of the seat belt will no longer be guaranteed. There is a risk of sliding under the seat belt in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injury or even death. Adjust the seat before starting the journey. Adjust the backrest to the most upright position possible, and do not change it during the journey.

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of entrapment when the seats are moved. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Before making any adjustment, make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear.

Manually adjustable seats

Overview



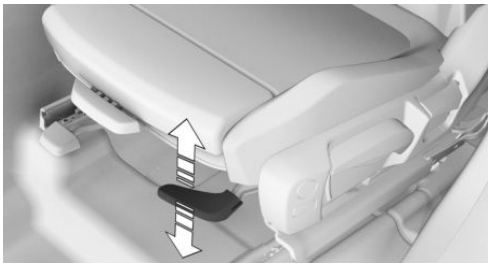
1 Forward/back
2 Thigh support
3 Seat angle
4 Backrest width
5 Lumbar support
6 Height
7 Backrest angle

Forward/back

Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

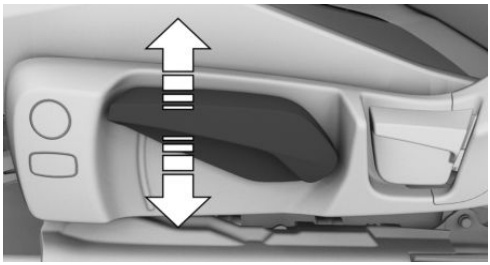
After releasing the lever, move the seat gently forward or back to make sure it engages properly.

Seat angle



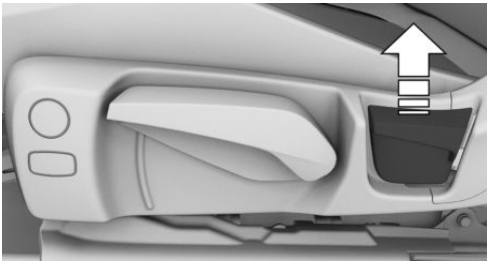
Pull the lever up or press the lever down repeatedly until the seat reaches the desired angle.

Height



Pull the lever up or press the lever down repeatedly until the seat reaches the desired height.

Backrest angle



Pull the lever and apply your weight to or lift your weight off the backrest as required.

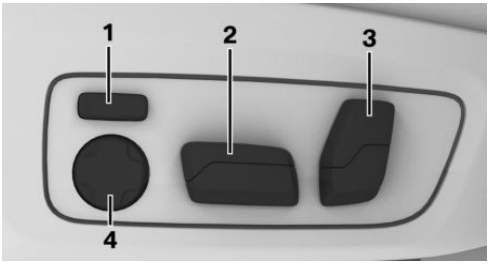
Electrically adjustable seats

General

The driver's seat setting is saved for the current profile. If a driver profile is selected, the saved position is retrieved automatically.

The current seat position can be saved using the memory function.

Overview



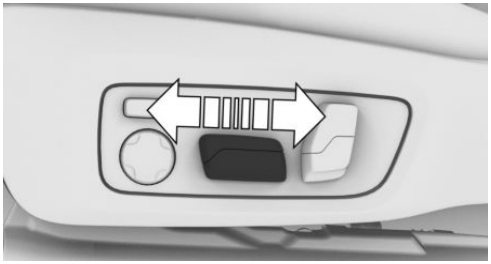
1 Backrest width

2 Forward/back, height, seat angle

3 Backrest tilt, head restraint

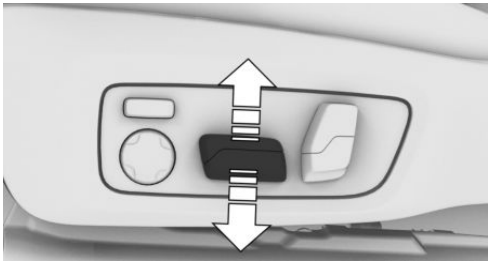
4 Lumbar support

Forward/back



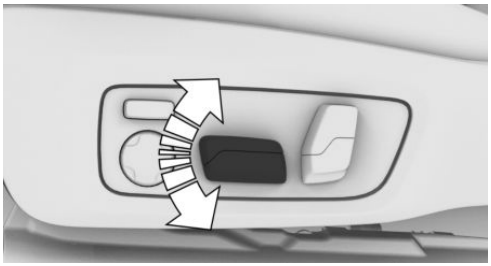
Press the switch forwards or backwards.

Height



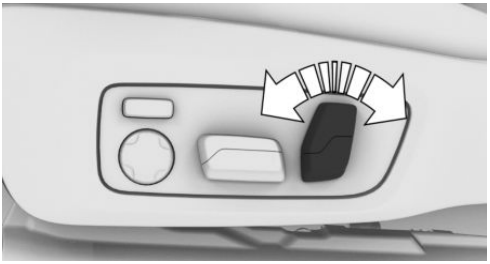
Press the switch up or down.

Seat angle



Tilt the switch up or down.

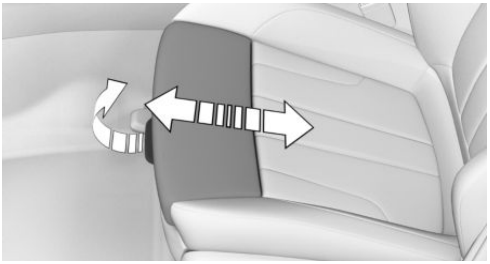
Backrest angle



Tilt the switch forwards or backwards.

Thigh support

Sport seat



Pull the lever on the front of the seat and adjust the thigh support forwards or backwards.

Lumbar support

Principle

The curvature of the backrest can be changed to provide support for the lumbar region, or lordosis. The upper edge of the pelvis and the spinal column are supported to encourage an upright posture.

Adjusting

▷ Press the button at the front/rear:

The curvature is increased/decreased.

▷ Press the button at the top/bottom:
The curvature is shifted upwards/downwards.

Function restriction

It may not be possible to adjust the lumbar support at very high and very low temperatures.

Backrest width

Principle

To adjust the backrest width can improve lateral support when taking corners.

General

The backrest width is changed by adjusting the side sections of the backrest.

Adjusting

▷ Press the button at the front:
Backrest width is reduced.

▷ Press the button at the rear:
Backrest width is increased.

Function restriction

It may not be possible to adjust the backrest width at very high and very low temperatures.

Seat belts

General

For the safety of the vehicle occupants, the vehicle is equipped with five seat belts. However, they can only provide effective protection when worn correctly.

Before each journey, always make sure that all occupants have fastened their seat belts. The airbags supplement the seat belts as an additional safety device. The airbags are not a substitute for the seat belts.

The belt anchorage is suitable for adults of any stature if the seat is adjusted correctly.

The two outer belt buckles on the rear seats are intended for those sitting on the left and right.

The inner belt buckle on the rear seats is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

If a seat belt is used by more than one person at the same time, the protective function of the seat belt is no longer guaranteed. There is a risk of injury or even death. Only one person should use each seat belt at any one time. Do not allow infants and children to travel on the lap of another occupant. Instead, secure the infant or child in a child restraint system intended for this purpose.

⚠ WARNING

The protective function of the seat belts may be limited or may even fail completely if the seat belts are worn incorrectly. If a seat belt is not worn correctly, additional injuries can be caused, for example in the event of an accident, braking or evasive action. There is a risk of injury or even death. Make sure that all vehicle occupants have fastened their seat belts correctly.

⚠ WARNING

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis, or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable. Wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack seat belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing by polishes, oils and chemicals and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using a mild soap and water solution. The seat belt should be replaced if the seat belt strap becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. Seat belts should not be worn with straps twisted. Each seat belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is forbidden to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

⚠ WARNING

No modifications or additions should be made by the user that will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

⚠ WARNING

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the middle seat belt is not ensured. There is a risk of injury or even death. Lock the wider rear seat backrest when using the middle seat belt.

⚠ WARNING

The protective function of the seat belts may be limited or may even fail completely in the following situations:

- ▷ If the seat belts or belt buckles are damaged, dirty or have been modified in another way.
- ▷ If the belt tensioners or belt retractors have been modified.

Seat belts can be damaged in an accident without the damage necessarily being apparent. There is a risk of injury or even death. Do not modify seat belts, belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors and belt anchor points and ensure that they are kept clean. After an accident, have the seat belts inspected at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Correct seat belt use

- ▷ Place the seat belt tightly over the pelvis and shoulder, close to the body and without twisting.
- ▷ Make sure that the seat belt is positioned low at the hips in the area of the pelvis. The seat belt must not press on the abdomen.
- ▷ The seat belt must not be allowed to rub against sharp edges, be routed over solid or breakable objects or be trapped.
- ▷ Avoid wearing bulky clothing.
- ▷ Keep the seat belt taut by occasionally pulling upwards on the upper section.

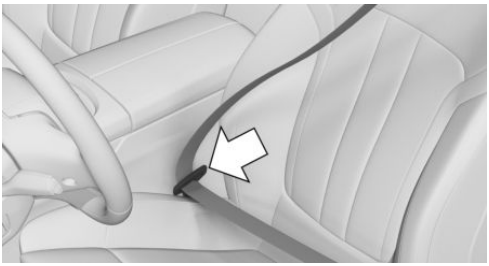
Adjustment for automatic retracting seat belts

- ▷ Draw the buckle tongue attached to the seat belt across the body and press it into the buckle catch until a ‘click’ is heard.
- ▷ Adjustment of the belt length is very important. To adjust the lap belt and check whether the buckle has locked correctly, pull upwards on the shoulder strap until the lap belt fits tightly.
- ▷ The length of the diagonal shoulder strap adjusts itself automatically to allow freedom of movement.

▷ To release the seat belt, press the button on the buckle catch unit.

Fastening the seat belt

1. When fastening the seat belt, guide it slowly over the shoulder and pelvis.
2. Insert the seat belt tongue in the belt buckle. The seat belt buckle must be heard to engage.



If fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belts are automatically tensioned when driving off.

Unfastening the seat belt

1. Hold the seat belt firmly.
2. Press the red button on the belt buckle.
3. Guide the seat belt back up to the reel mechanism.

Seat belt reminder for driver and front passenger seat

General

The seat belt reminder is activated when the seat belt on the driver's side is not fastened.

The seat belt warning will also be activated if a seat belt is unfastened during the journey.

On some national-market versions, the seat belt reminder is also active if the front passenger seat belt is not fastened and heavy objects are on the front passenger seat.

Display in the instrument cluster

A Check Control message is shown. Check whether the seat belt has been fastened correctly.

Seat belt reminder for rear seats

General

The seat belt reminder is automatically activated every time the engine starts.

The seat belt reminder will also be activated if a rear seat belt is unfastened during the journey.

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated after the engine starts.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment and country specifications.

Symbol	Description
	Green: seat belt fastened on the corresponding rear seat.
	Red: seat belt not fastened on the corresponding rear seat.

Safety function

In critical driving situations, for example full braking, the front seat belts are tensioned automatically.

If the situation passes without an accident, the belt tension is slackened again.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unfasten the seat belt by pressing the red button in the belt buckle. Fasten

the seat belt again before continuing your journey.

Front head restraints

Safety notes

WARNING

If the head restraints are removed or incorrectly adjusted, they cannot provide protection as intended and head and neck injuries may result. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before a journey, re-install any removed head restraints on all occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so that its centre supports the back of the head at eye level where possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. If necessary, adjust the distance by adjusting the backrest angle.

WARNING

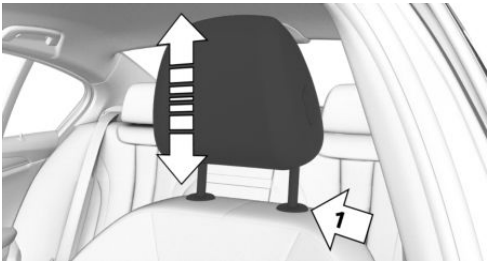
Parts of the body can become trapped when the head restraints are moved. There is a risk of injury. When moving the head restraint, make sure that the area of movement is kept clear.

WARNING

Objects on the head restraint impair the protective function of the head restraint in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Do not fit any covers on the seats or head restraints.
- ▷ Do not hang objects such as coat hangers directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been classified as safe for attaching to the head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for example cushions, during the journey.

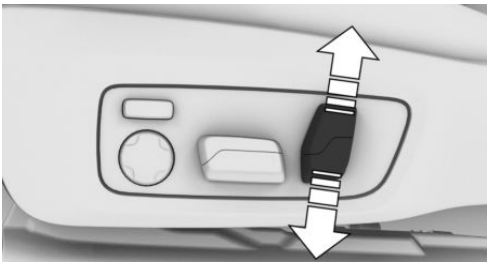
Adjusting the height



- ▷ Down: press the button, arrow 1, and slide the head restraint downwards.
- ▷ Up: push the head restraint upwards.

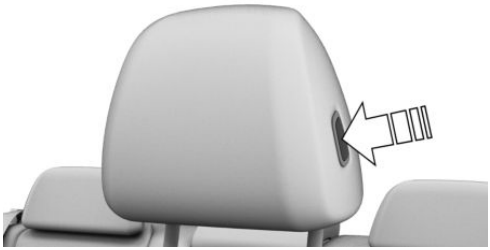
After adjusting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height: M sport seat



Press the switch up or down.

Adjusting the distance



- ▷ Back: press the button and slide the head restraint towards the rear.
- ▷ Forward: pull the head restraint forwards.

After adjusting the distance, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

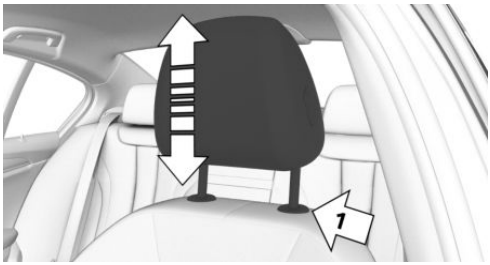
Adjusting the distance: M sport seat

The distance from the back of the head is adjusted by the seat backrest angle.

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no-one is intending to sit in the seat in question.



1. Push the head restraint up until resistance is felt.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint fully out.

Removing: M sport seat

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Installing

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

Rear head restraints

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

If the head restraints are removed or incorrectly adjusted, they cannot provide protection as intended and head and neck injuries may result. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before a journey, re-install any removed head restraints on all occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so that its centre supports the back of the head at eye level where possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. If necessary, adjust the distance by adjusting the backrest angle.

⚠ WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the head restraints are moved. There is a risk of injury. When moving the head restraint, make sure that the area of movement is kept clear.

⚠ WARNING

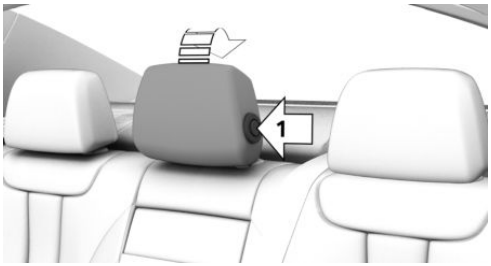
Objects on the head restraint impair the protective function of the head restraint in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Do not fit any covers on the seats or head restraints.

- ▷ Do not hang objects such as coat hangers directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been classified as safe for attaching to the head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for example cushions, during the journey.

Folding down the head restraints

Head restraints can be folded back to improve rear visibility. Only fold back the head restraint if no one is sitting on the seat in question.



- ▷ Backward: press the button, arrow 1, and fold back the head restraint.
- ▷ Forwards: fold the head restraint forwards as far as it will go. Ensure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height

The outer head restraints can be adjusted in height.

- ▷ Down: press the button, arrow 1, and slide the head restraint downwards.
- ▷ Up: push the head restraint upwards.

After adjusting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

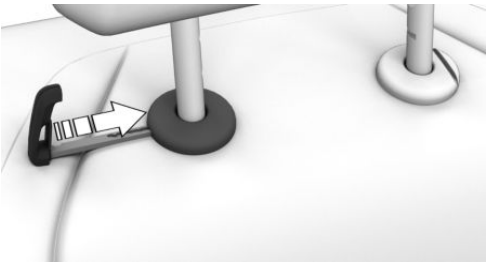
Removing the outer head restraint

Only remove the head restraint if no-one is intending to sit in the seat in question.

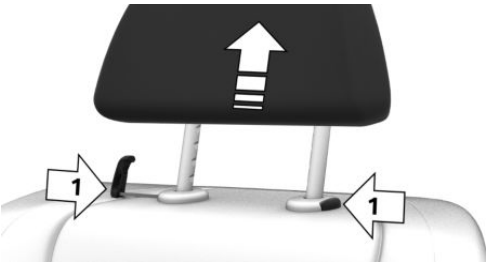
1. Fold down the corresponding rear seat backrest.

   Expand the luggage compartment, see page 331.
2. Push the head restraint up until resistance is felt.
3. Insert the integrated key.

   Integrated key, see page 102.



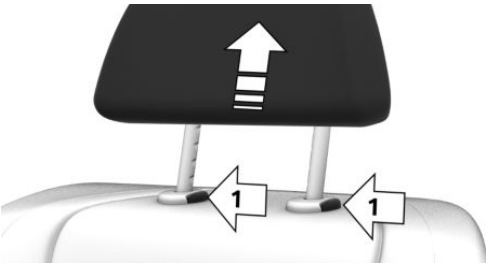
4. Press and hold the integrated key and the button simultaneously, arrows 1, and pull the head restraint fully out.



Removing the middle head restraint

Only remove the head restraint if no one is sitting on the middle seat.

1. Push the head restraint up until resistance is felt.
2. Press the buttons, arrows 1, and pull the head restraint fully out.



Installing

To install, insert the head restraint into the mount and push down until resistance is felt.

After installation, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Exterior mirror

General

The mirror setting is saved for the current driver profile. If a driver profile is selected, the saved position is retrieved automatically.

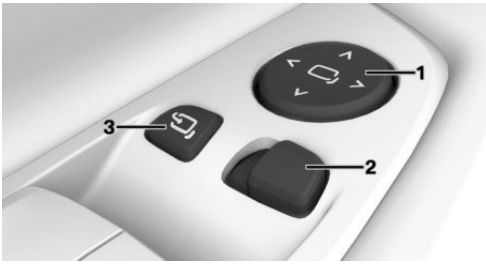
The current exterior mirror position can be saved with the memory function.

Safety note

WARNING

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to road users behind the vehicle could be incorrectly estimated, for example when changing lane. There is a risk of accident. Look over your shoulder to estimate the distance from following traffic.

Overview



1 To adjust

2 To select a mirror, automatic parking function

3 To fold in and out

Electrical adjustment

Press the button.

The selected mirror moves in response to the button movement.

Selecting a mirror

To switch to the other mirror:

Push the switch.

Malfunction

In the event of an electrical fault, press the edges of the mirror glass to adjust the mirror.

Folding in and out

NOTE

Because of its width, the vehicle could sustain damage in car washes. There is a risk of material damage. Before washing, fold the mirrors in manually or with the button.

Press the button.

The mirrors can be folded in at vehicle speeds up to approx. 20 km/h, 15 mph.

Folding the mirrors in and out is useful in the following situations:

- ▷ In car washes.
- ▷ In narrow streets.

Mirrors which are folded in automatically fold out when the vehicle reaches a speed of approximately 40 km/h, 25 mph.

Automatic heating

If required, both exterior mirrors are automatically heated when drive-ready state is switched on.

Automatic dimming

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the rear-view mirror are used to control this function.

Automatic parking function, exterior mirror

Principle

When reverse gear is engaged, the passenger-side mirror glass is tilted downwards. This provides a better view of the kerb or other obstacles near the ground, for example when parking.

Activating

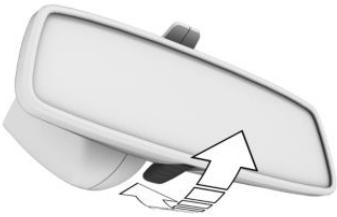
1. Push the switch to the driver's mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

The automatic parking function is deactivated when the trailer socket is in use.

Deactivating

Push the switch to the passenger-side mirror position.

Rear-view mirror, manual-dim



To reduce glare tilt the lever on the rear-view mirror forward.

Rear-view mirror, automatic dim

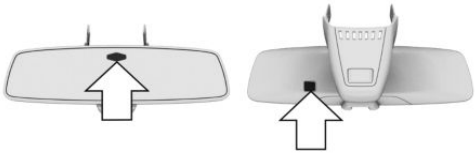
General

The rear-view mirror is dimmed automatically.

The function is controlled by photocells:

- ▷ In the mirror glass.
- ▷ On the back of the mirror.

Overview



Operating requirements

- ▷ Keep the photocells clean.
- ▷ Do not obstruct the zone between the rear-view mirror and the windscreen.

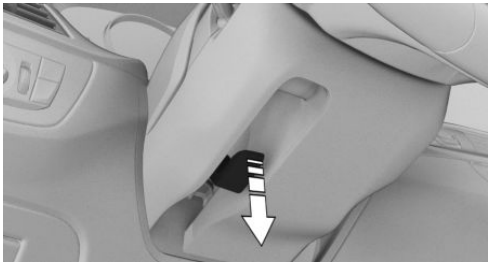
Steering wheel

Safety note

WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel while driving may cause the steering wheel to move unexpectedly. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Manual steering wheel adjustment



1. Fold the lever downwards.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seated position.
3. Swing the lever back up.

Steering wheel heating

Overview

Button for steering wheel heating

Switching on/off

Press the button.

A Check Control message is shown.

If a journey is resumed within about 15 minutes after a temporary stop, steering wheel heating is automatically switched on, provided that the function was switched on at the end of the last journey.

Memory function

Principle

The memory function enables the following settings to be stored and retrieved when required:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Exterior mirror position.
- ▷ Height of the Head-Up Display.

General

For each driver profile, two memory slots can be assigned with different settings.

The following settings are not saved:

- ▷ Backrest width.
- ▷ Lumbar support.

Safety notes

WARNING

Using the memory function while driving may cause the seat or steering wheel to move unexpectedly. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only call up the memory function when the vehicle is at standstill.

WARNING

There is a risk of entrapment when the seats are moved. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Before making any adjustment, make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear.

Overview

The memory buttons are on the driver's door.

Saving

1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press the button. The lettering in the button is illuminated.
3. Press the desired button 1 or 2 while the lettering is illuminated. A signal sounds.

Recalling

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

The saved position is called up.

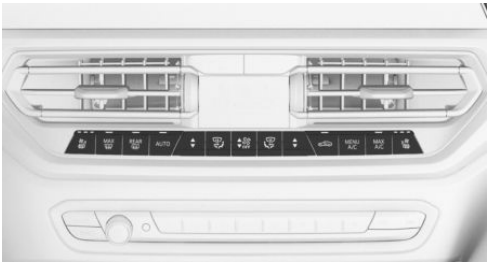
The operation is halted when you press a seat adjustment switch or press one of the memory buttons again.

Once underway, adjustment of the seat position on the driver's side is disabled after a short while.

Seat heating

Overview

Front



Seat heating

Rear

Seat heating

Switching on

Press the button once for each temperature level.

The highest level is selected if the three LEDs are illuminated.

If a journey is resumed within about 15 minutes after a temporary stop, seat heating is automatically switched on at the last temperature setting.

If a driving mode for optimising consumption is activated, the heater output is reduced if necessary.

For further information:

Driving modes for optimising consumption, see page 350.

Switching off

Press and hold the button until the LEDs are extinguished.

Regulation climate control

Principle

Depending on the equipment, some heating and cooling functions can be activated automatically according to the outside temperature.

General

The outside temperature from which the functions are to be activated automatically can be set using iDrive.

Activation is performed if the outside temperature exceeds or falls below the set temperature in the first few minutes after drive-ready state has been switched on. A new alignment is carried out after the settings have been changed.

Depending on the equipment version, the following functions can be activated automatically:

- ▷ Seat heating.
- ▷ Steering wheel heating.

If the journey is continued within about 15 minutes after a temporary stop, the functions are automatically activated with the most recent settings.

Operating requirements

- ▷ The seat belt of the driver's seat is fastened.
- ▷ The drive-ready state is switched on.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. If necessary, "Regulation climate control"
5. Select the desired function.
6. Activate the required rule.
7. If applicable, adjust the level.

Carrying children safely

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Important considerations

Safety notes

WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

WARNING

Hot vehicles can have fatal consequences, in particular for children or pets. There is a risk of injury or even death. Do not leave anyone unsupervised in the vehicle, especially children or pets.

WARNING

Child restraint systems and their parts can get very hot when exposed to direct sunlight. Contact with hot parts can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight; cover the child restraint system if necessary. It may be necessary to allow the child restraint system to cool down before strapping a child in. Do not leave children unsupervised in the vehicle.

Children on the rear seats

General

Accident research has shown that the safest place for children is on the rear seat.

Wherever possible, children younger than 12 years old or shorter than 150 cm, 5 ft should only be transported in the rear using child restraint systems appropriate for their age, weight and stature. Children aged 12 years and older must be secured with a seat belt as soon as use of a child restraint system is no longer appropriate due to their age, weight or stature.

Safety note

WARNING

Children shorter than 150 cm, 5 ft cannot wear the seat belt correctly without using additional child restraint systems. The protective function of the seat belts may be limited or may even fail completely if the seat belts are worn incorrectly. If a seat belt is not worn correctly, additional injuries can be caused, for example in the event of an accident, braking or evasive action. There is a risk of injury or even death. Children under 150 cm, 5 ft tall must be secured in suitable child restraint systems.

Not for Australia/New Zealand: Children on the front passenger seat

General

When using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front and side airbags on the passenger side are deactivated. Front passenger airbags can only be deactivated with the key switch for front passenger airbags. If the front passenger airbags cannot be deactivated, do not carry children on the front passenger seat, even in suitable child restraint systems.

For further information:

Key switch for front passenger airbags, see page 210.

Safety note

WARNING

Active front passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system if they are deployed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.

Fitting child restraints

General

Please comply with the operating and safety instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, attaching and using child restraint systems.

Safety notes

WARNING

If child restraint systems and their attachment systems have been damaged or subjected to stresses in an accident, their protective function may be limited or may fail completely. A child might not be adequately restrained, for example in the event of an accident, braking or evasive action. There is a risk of injury or even death.

Child restraint systems that are damaged or have been subjected to stresses in an accident must not be used further.

If attachment systems have been damaged or subjected to stresses in an accident, have them checked and replaced by a Service Partner of the manufacturer, another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

WARNING

If the seat is not adjusted properly or the child seat has been installed incorrectly, the child restraint system may have limited stability or may not be stable at all. There is a risk of injury or even death. Make sure that the child restraint system rests firmly against the backrest. Wherever possible, adapt the backrest angle of all the relevant seat backrests and adjust the seats correctly. Make sure that the seats and their backrests are correctly engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints, or remove them.

For Australia/New Zealand: installation of child restraints

Please note the following warning because your vehicle has been equipped with a front airbag for the front passenger's seat that cannot be deactivated:

It is recommended not to use any kind of child restraint system on the front passenger's seat.

Extreme hazard

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

Not for Australia/New Zealand: On the front passenger seat

Deactivating airbags

WARNING

Active front passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system if they are deployed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.

Before fitting a child restraint on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front and side airbags on the passenger side are disabled. If the airbag cannot be deactivated, do not fit child restraint systems.

For further information:

Key switch for front passenger airbags, see page 210.

Rearward-facing child restraint systems

DANGER

If triggered, active front passenger airbags can fatally injure a child in a rearward facing child restraint system. There is a risk of injury or even death. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.

Follow the information on the front passenger sun visor.

Never use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it, as death or serious injury to the child can occur.

Seat position and height

After installing a universal child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and adjust it to the highest position. This seat position and height achieves the best possible routing of the belt and protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper attachment point of the seat belt is located ahead of the child seat's belt guide, carefully move the front passenger seat forwards until the best possible belt guidance is achieved.

Backrest width

With adjustable backrest width: before fitting a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, fully open the backrest width. Do not

change the backrest width from this point on and do not call up a memory position.

ISOFIX child safety seat fasteners

General

Please comply with the operating and safety instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, attaching and using ISOFIX child restraint systems.

Suitable ISOFIX child restraint systems

Only certain ISOFIX child restraints may be used in the seats intended for this purpose. The corresponding size class and size category are denoted by a letter or ISO reference on a plate on the child seat.

For further information:

Suitable seats for child restraint systems, see page 141.

Fixtures for lower ISOFIX anchors

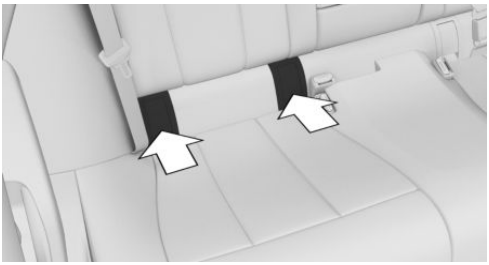
Safety note

WARNING

If the ISOFIX child restraint systems are not engaged correctly, the protective effect of the ISOFIX child restraint systems will be limited. There is a risk of injury or even death. Make sure the lower anchor point has engaged correctly and the ISOFIX child restraint system rests firmly against the backrest.

Position

Symbol	Meaning
	The corresponding symbol shows the fixtures for the lower ISOFIX anchors.



The fixtures for the lower ISOFIX anchors are located behind the marked covers.

Before fitting ISOFIX child restraints

Pull the seat belt away from the area of the child seat mountings.

Fitting ISOFIX child restraint systems

1. Install the child restraint system, see the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Make sure that both ISOFIX anchors are engaged correctly.

i-Size child restraint systems

General

i-Size is a regulation for child restraint systems, which is used for the approval of child restraint systems.

Symbol	Meaning
	If this symbol is seen in the vehicle, the vehicle has also been approved in accordance with i-Size. The symbol shows the mounts for the system's lower anchors. The lower anchors meet the European i-Size requirements.
	The corresponding symbol shows the mounting point for the upper retaining strap.

Fixtures for the upper retaining strap

Safety notes

WARNING

If the upper retaining strap is used incorrectly on the child restraint system, the protective effect will be reduced. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not twisted and is not routed to the upper mounting point over sharp edges.

WARNING

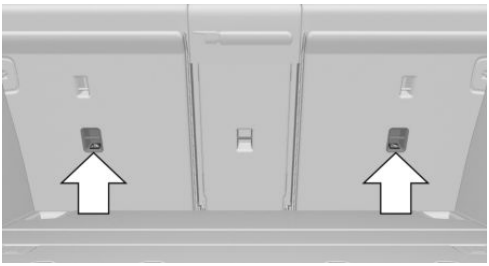
If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or non-existing. The rear backrest can fold forward in certain situations, for example braking manoeuvre or accident. There is a risk of injury or even death. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.

NOTE

The mounting points for the upper retaining straps of child restraint systems are only intended for these retaining straps. The mounting points can be damaged if other objects are attached. There is a risk of material damage. Only attach child restraint systems to the upper mounting points.

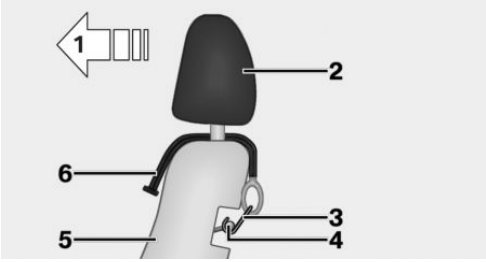
Mounting points

Symbol	Meaning
	The corresponding symbol shows the mounting point for the upper retaining strap.



Depending on the equipment installed, there are two or three mounting points for the upper retaining strap of ISOFIX child restraint systems.

Routing the retaining strap



1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraint
3 Hook for the upper retaining strap
4 Mounting point
5 Seat backrest
6 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point

1. Raise head restraint if necessary.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between or along both sides of the head restraint mounts to the mounting point.
3. Guide the retaining strap between the seat backrest and the luggage compartment cover.
4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the mounting point.
5. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it firmly down.
6. Push the head restraint down if necessary and engage it in place.

Suitable seats for child restraint systems

General

The legal provisions determining which child seat is permitted for which age and body size may vary from country to country. Please comply with the relevant national legal provisions.

Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

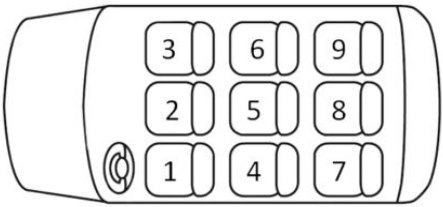
For detailed information about using child restraint systems:

Seats for child restraint systems, see page 433.

Seats and child restraint systems

The following section provides information on which child restraint system is suitable for which seat in the vehicle.

Left-hand drive vehicles, seats:



Seat	Airbag, front passenger	Fastening				
1		X				
3 a)	ON	X				
	OFF	U	L			
4, 6 - b)		U	L		e)	
5 - c, d)		U				

a) Adapt the fore/aft position of the front passenger seat and, if necessary, move it to the highest position to achieve the best possible belt fit.

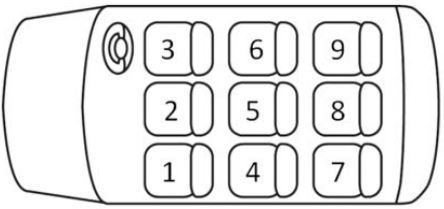
b) When using child seats on the rear seats, adjust the front/back position of the front seat if necessary, and also adjust the head restraint of the rear seat or remove it.

c) Only occupy the outer seats if the belt buckles are easily accessible.

d) The seat is not suitable for child seats with a support stand.

e) Depending on the equipment or national-market version.

Right-hand drive vehicles, seats:



Seat	Airbag, front passenger	Fastening				
1 a)	ON	X				
	OFF	U	L			
3		X				
4, 6 - b)		U	L		e)	
5 - c, d)		U				

a) Adapt the fore/aft position of the front passenger seat and, if necessary, move it to the highest position to achieve the best possible belt fit.

b) When using child seats on the rear seats, adjust the front/back position of the front seat if necessary, and also adjust the head restraint of the rear seat or remove it.

c) Only occupy the outer seats if the belt buckles are easily accessible.

d) The seat is not suitable for child seats with a support stand.

e) Depending on the equipment or national-market version.

Symbol	Meaning	Symbol	Meaning
X	Not suitable for child restraint systems.		Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems.
U	Suitable for Universal-category child restraint systems approved for use in this weight group.		Suitable for ISOFIX and i-Size child restraint systems.
L	Suitable for child restraint systems in the Semi-Universal category if the vehicle and the seat are listed in the list of vehicle models from the manufacturer of the child restraint system.		Suitable for child restraint systems with an upper retaining strap.

Suitable seats for child restraint systems with a belt

Information about which child restraint systems can be used on the seats in question in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Weight of child	Approximate age	Front passenger seat, airbag ON	Front passenger seat, airbag OFF– a)	Rear seats, outer	Rear seat, middle – b, c)
0	Up to 10 kg	Up to 9 months	X	U, L	U, L	U
0+	Up to 13 kg	Up to 18 months	X	U, L	U, L	U
I	9 – 18 kg	Up to 4 years	X	U, L	U, L	U
II	15 – 25 kg	Up to 7 years	X	U, L	U, L	U
III	22 – 36 kg	7 years and over	X	U, L	U, L	U

U: suitable for Universal-category child restraint systems approved for use in this weight group.

L: suitable for child restraint systems in the Semi-Universal category if the vehicle and the seat are listed in the list of vehicle models from the manufacturer of the child restraint system.

X: unsuitable for Universal-category child restraint systems approved for use in this weight group.

a) Adapt the fore/aft position of the front passenger seat and, if necessary, move it to the highest position to achieve the best possible belt fit.

b) Only occupy the outer seats if the belt buckles are easily accessible.

c) The seat is not suitable for child seats with a support stand.

Suitable seats for ISOFIX child restraint systems

The following ISOFIX child restraint systems may be used on the seats designated as appropriate for this purpose. The corresponding size class and size category are denoted by a letter or ISO reference on a plate on the child seat.

Group	Weight of child	Approximate age	Class/category	Front passenger seat, airbag ON	Front passenger seat, airbag OFF – b)	Rear seats, outer – a)	Rear seat, middle
Carrycot			F - ISO/L1	X	X	X	X
			G - ISO/L2	X	X	X	X
0	Up to 10 kg	Approximately 9 months	E - ISO/R1	X	X	IL	X
0+	Up to 13 kg	Approximately 18 months	E - ISO/R1	X	X	IL	X
			D - ISO/R2	X	X	IL	X
			C - ISO/R3	X	X	IL	X
I	9 - 18 kg	Up to approximately 4 years	D - ISO/R2	X	X	IL	X
			C - ISO/R3	X	X	IL	X
			B - ISO/F2	X	X	IL, IUF	X
			B1 - ISO/F2X	X	X	IL, IUF	X
			A - ISO/F3	X	X	IL, IUF	X

a) When using child seats on the rear seats, adapt the front/back and height position of the front seat if necessary, and also adjust the head restraint of the rear seat or remove it.

b) Only if equipped with ISOFIX child safety seat fasteners.

IL: suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in the Semi-Universal category if the vehicle and the seat are listed in the list of vehicle models provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system.

IUF: suitable for forward-facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the Universal category that have been approved for use in this weight class.

X: the seat is not approved or equipped with mounting points for the ISOFIX system.

Suitable seats for i-Size child restraint systems

Information about which child restraint systems can be used on the different vehicle seats, if those child restraint systems are suitable for i-Size or meet i-Size requirements – in accordance with standard ECE-R 129:

Group	Front passenger seat, airbag ON	Front passenger seat, airbag OFF	Rear seats, outer 2nd seat row	Rear seat, middle 2nd seat row
i-Size	X	X	i-U	X
i-U, suitable for rearward and forward-facing i-Size child restraint systems.				
X: not suitable for i-Size child restraint systems.				

Recommended child seats

Please comply with the operating and safety instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, attaching and using child restraint systems.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the following child restraint systems:

- ▷ Maxi-Cosi CabrioFix.
- ▷ Maxi-Cosi FamilyFix base.
- ▷ Römer DUO PLUS.
- ▷ Römer KIDFIX XP.

For Australia/New Zealand: Child restraints

General

In accordance with ADR 34/03, provisions have been made to allow installation of a child restraint system at each rear seat position.

The anchoring hooks which belong to the upper restraining strap of the child restraint - AS 1754, can be applied immediately to the relevant mounting.

Please refer strictly to the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint system.

Each seating position is fitted with a head rest.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle. After using and removing child restraints, fold away the anchor brackets if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

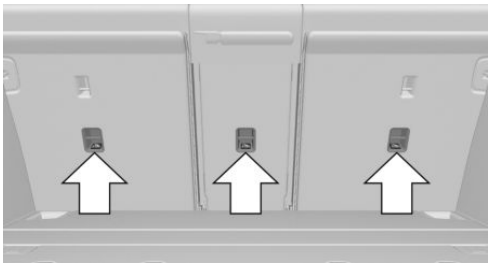
If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or non-existing. The rear backrest can fold forward in certain situations, for example braking manoeuvre or accident. There is a risk of injury or even death. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.

⚠ WARNING

If the upper retaining strap is used incorrectly on the child restraint system, the protective effect will be reduced. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not twisted and is not routed to the upper mounting point over sharp edges.

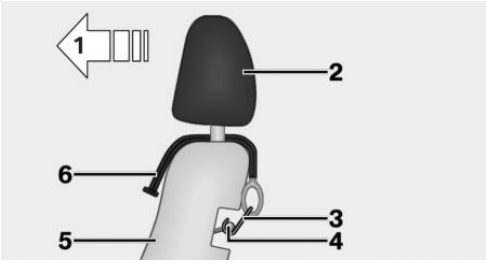
Mounting points

Symbol	Meaning
	The corresponding symbol shows the mounting point for the upper retaining strap.



Depending on the equipment fitted in the vehicle, there are two outer mounting points or three other mounting points for child restraints with tether straps.

Routing the retaining strap



1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraint
3 Hook for the upper retaining strap
4 Mounting point
5 Seat backrest
6 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point

1. Raise head restraint if necessary.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between the head restraint mounts.

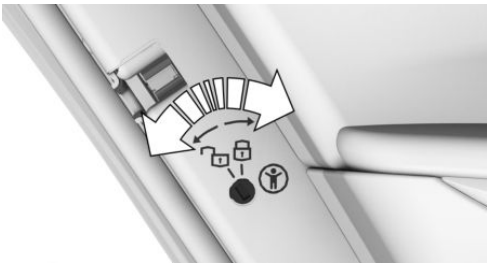
   Middle seat: guide the upper retaining strap over or along both sides of the head restraint to the mounting point.
3. If there is a retaining strap, guide it between the backrest and the case of the luggage net.
4. Guide the retaining strap between the seat backrest and the luggage compartment cover.
5. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the mounting point.
6. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it firmly down.
7. Push the head restraint down if necessary and engage it in place.

Securing doors and windows in the rear

General

In certain situations, for example when carrying children, it may be advisable to secure the rear doors and windows.

Doors



Unlock or lock the safety switches on the rear doors with the integrated key.

Symbol	Function
	Child locks are unlocked.
	Child locks are locked.

The door in question can now only be opened from the outside.

Safety switch for the rear

Press the button on the driver's door.

Various functions are disabled and cannot be operated in the rear.

For further information:

For safety switch, see page 118.

Driving

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

BMW eDRIVE

Principle

This BMW is a hybrid vehicle. As well as the internal combustion engine, the vehicle is equipped with a high-voltage hybrid system consisting of an electric motor and a high-voltage battery, among other components.

The hybrid system can move the vehicle under electric power alone, or support the internal combustion engine in certain situations.

General

When driving under electric power, the vehicle does not consume any fuel. For example, this allows particularly environmentally friendly driving in inner-city areas, without generating emissions.

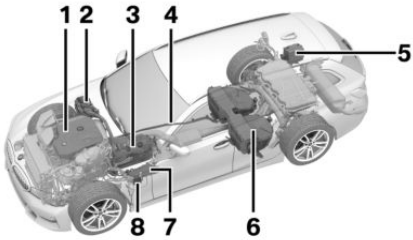
During driving with the combustion engine, the hybrid system helps to lower fuel consumption. The electric motor is switched on to support this, if required by the situation.

In addition, the electric motor acts as a generator: the electric motor converts the kinetic energy of the vehicle into electrical energy when braking and when rolling in overrun mode. The electrical energy is saved in the high-voltage battery and is used to drive the electric motor.

The high-voltage battery can be charged using the charge point at charging stations or at domestic socket outlets.

Overview

Hybrid system components



1 Internal combustion engine
2 Power electronics
3 Electric motor
4 High-voltage cables: orange
5 Auxiliary battery for internal combustion engine
6 High-voltage battery
7 Charge control unit
8 Charge point

Hybrid system settings

General

The hybrid system properties can be set to the following hybrid modes using Driving Experience Control:

- ▷ SPORT
- ▷ HYBRID
- ▷ ELECTRIC

- ADAPTIVE
- BATTERY CONTROL

For system reasons, different maximum speeds apply to the individual settings. The speed range that is possible in each case is indicated by a blue mark on the speedometer.

HYBRID, ADAPTIVE and SPORT

The vehicle is propelled in hybrid mode; in other words, in combined propulsion with the internal combustion engine and electric motor.

ELECTRIC

In ELECTRIC, the vehicle is driven exclusively electrically.

BATTERY CONTROL

With BATTERY CONTROL, the electric range can be retained and conserved for a later point in the journey or increased if necessary.

Display of the hybrid system

The hybrid system's displays provide information about the current state of the hybrid drive and depict the usage of the system in a diagram.

For further information:

Displays of the hybrid system, see page 177.

While the vehicle is in motion

Observe the descriptions for the following topics in the chapter on functions when driving:

- General driving information.
- Safety Information.
- Operating requirements.
- Automatic Start/Stop function, coasting.
- Energy recuperation, CHARGE.
- Support by the electric motor.
- Anticipatory hybrid drive.

For further information:

Functions when driving, see page 152.

Charging vehicle

The high-voltage battery of the vehicle can be charged using the charging socket at charging stations or at domestic socket outlets.

Regular and complete charging of the high-voltage battery reduces fuel consumption, because electrical energy is used.

For further information:

Charge vehicle, see page 356.

Air conditioning when parking and charging

The hybrid system allows the automatic air conditioning to be operated before the start of a journey and with the internal combustion engine switched off.

When the vehicle is being charged or if the high-voltage battery is sufficiently charged, the interior can be cooled or heated in advance before the start of a journey.

The standing air conditioning can also be switched on directly.

For further information:

Stationary air conditioning, see page 316.

Energy-saving driving

Observe the following descriptions for energy-saving driving.

For further information:

- Saving fuel, see page 348.
- Using the hybrid system efficiently, see page 349.
- Driving modes for optimising consumption, see page 350.

Safety of the hybrid system

For further information:

Working on the hybrid system, see page 20.

Acoustic protection for pedestrians

Depending on the country variant, the system generates a continuous driving noise when at a standstill in drive-ready state and during electric driving up to 30 km/h, 20 mph.

A loudspeaker system plays the noise outside the vehicle.

As a result, other road users, for example pedestrians or cyclists, can detect the vehicle better.

High-voltage battery, long stationary periods

Follow notes on vehicle lay-up and longer stationary periods.

For further information:

High-voltage battery, long stationary periods, see page 426.

Start/Stop button

Principle

Drive-ready state is switched on and off by pressing the Start/Stop button.

Steptronic transmission: drive-ready state is switched on by pressing the Start/Stop button while the brake pedal is depressed.

Pressing the Start/Stop button again switches drive-ready state off again and standby state is switched on.

The drive-ready state cannot be switched on when the charging cable is connected.

For further information:

- ▷ Drive-ready state, see page 52.
- ▷ Standby state, see page 52.
- ▷ Charging cable, see page 357.

Driving off

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Apply the drive position.
3. Releasing the parking brake.
4. Drive off.

Full drive power may not be available until approx. 30 seconds after the internal combustion engine is started. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate in the usual way.

Maximum drive power can be used as soon as eBOOST is available.

Automatic Start/Stop function

Principle

The Auto Start Stop function helps you to save fuel. The system therefore shuts down the internal combustion engine, if the preconditions for electric driving are met. The standby state remains switched on.

General

READY is shown in the instrument cluster. If needed, the internal combustion engine starts automatically.

The internal combustion engine is also stopped during the journey when rolling off or braking. This drive state, where the vehicle is rolling and energy recuperation is not active, is referred to as coasting.

The internal combustion engine is not shut down automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ The internal combustion engine is not at operating temperature.
- ▷ Gear selector lever in M/S position.
- ▷ High-voltage battery is heavily discharged or vehicle electric system is highly loaded.

- ▷ High stress of the automatic air conditioning system in the heating up and cooling down phase.
- ▷ Front flap is unlocked.
- ▷ Vehicle is optimised for the current style of driving, for example during running in or after a visit to the workshop.
- ▷ Hybrid system is faulty.

Safety function

An automatically stopped internal combustion engine does not start automatically:

- ▷ When the driver's door is open, when neither the brake nor the accelerator pedal is pressed and the driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- ▷ With the front flap released.

The indicator lamps illuminate. The internal combustion engine can only be started using the start/stop button.

Parking the vehicle during automatic engine stop

With automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be parked safely, for example in order to leave it.

1. Press the start/stop button.
   - ▷ The standby state is activated.
   - ▷ The Auto Start Stop function is deactivated.
   - ▷ Selector lever position P is automatically engaged.
2. Apply the parking brake.

Malfunction

If there is a malfunction, Auto Start Stop function no longer shuts down the internal combustion engine automatically. A message is displayed. It is possible to keep driving. Have the system checked.

Functions when driving

General

The internal combustion engine provides the main driving power. At the same time, the high-voltage battery is charged as needed. The hybrid system starts the internal combustion engine automatically.

While driving electrically with ePOWER, the vehicle is powered by the electric motor.

Depending on the charge state of the high-voltage battery, the maximum speed, acceleration capability and range achieved may vary.

For electric driving and driving with the internal combustion engine, the relevant prerequisites must be met.

Driving off and accelerating are energy intensive. To optimise acceleration and reduce fuel consumption, the electric motor supports the internal combustion engine.

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

With electric driving, pedestrians and other road-users might not detect the vehicle as well as usual due to the lack of engine noise. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Operating requirements

Electric driving

- ▷ Charge state and temperature of high-voltage battery is adequate.
- ▷ Selector lever position D or R engaged.
- ▷ Accelerator pedal is not pressed too far.
- ▷ Possible maximum speed for electric driving is not exceeded.

Automatic starting of the internal combustion engine while the vehicle is being driven

Depending on the hybrid mode set, the internal combustion engine is started automatically while the vehicle is being driven under conditions such as the following:

- ▷ With high acceleration or on upward gradients.
- ▷ By depressing the accelerator pedal beyond the full-throttle position, kickdown.
- ▷ Charge level of the high-voltage battery is too low.
- ▷ Selector lever position M/S is engaged.
- ▷ During manual gear-shifting using the shift paddles.
- ▷ Anticipatory hybrid drive with active route guidance, for example outside built-up areas.
- ▷ Request to the hybrid components depending on system.

Automatic stopping of the internal combustion engine while the vehicle is being driven

Depending on the driving situation, the internal combustion engine is stopped if the requirements for electric driving are met.

Automatic Start/Stop function, coasting

Principle

The Automatic Start/Stop function shuts down the internal combustion engine when you are driving, braking and rolling, and when the vehicle is stationary. The condition of decelerating without energy recuperation with the internal combustion engine switched off is also called coasting. Comfort functions such as automatic air conditioning are still supplied by the high-voltage battery and may remain switched on.

After coasting, the internal combustion engine or electric motor provides the necessary drive power automatically again, depending on the hybrid mode.

Operating requirements

Coasting is possible under the following preconditions:

- ▷ In the HYBRID ECO PRO driving mode if the traffic situation allows you to do so.
- ▷ Transmission position D engaged.

Energy recuperation: CHARGE

Principle

The electric motor acts as a generator and converts the kinetic energy of the vehicle into electrical energy during braking and rolling.

The high-voltage battery is charged by this energy recuperation. If needed, this saved electrical energy is supplied back to the electric motor.

General

Depending on the set hybrid mode, the high-voltage battery is recharged at different rates, and the vehicle is decelerated at different rates when rolling.

Operating requirements

Recovering kinetic energy depends on the following factors, for example:

- ▷ Vehicle is in motion.
- ▷ Selector lever is in position D or M/S.
- ▷ High-voltage battery is not completely charged.

Displays in the instrument cluster

For further information:

Displays of the hybrid system, see page 177.

Support by electric motor

Principle

The internal combustion engine provides the main driving power.

The electric motor assists with additional drive power if needed.

eASSIST

In normal drive operation, the electric motor supports the internal combustion engine depending on the situation.

eBOOST

With increased acceleration – when overtaking, for example – the maximum available power of the electric motor is called on. To do this, press the accelerator pedal firmly.

Anticipatory hybrid drive

Principle

The system makes it possible to distribute the available electrical energy as effectively as possible so that electric driving can take place in urban areas and in the destination when the navigation system route guidance is active. If the high-voltage battery is sufficiently charged, additional route sections for electric driving are selected.

General

Downward gradients, for example, are taken into account for efficient energy recuperation purposes.

The internal combustion engine is automatically activated or deactivated depending on the route section, which supports an efficient driving style and emission-free driving in urban areas.

For further information:

Using the hybrid system efficiently, see page 349.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Selector lever position D engaged.
- ▷ Route guidance active.
- ▷ HYBRID STANDARD, HYBRID ECO PRO, HYBRID COMFORT or ADAPTIVE activated, depending on equipment.

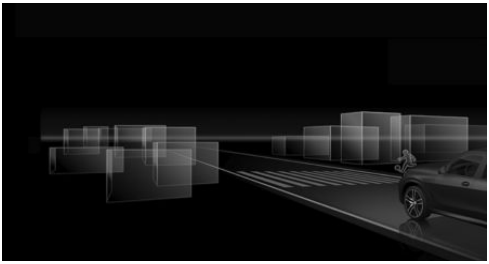
Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Anticipatory hybrid drive"

Displays

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Energy flow"

Display



An example: built-up area. Preparations are made for electric driving before a built-up area is reached. When the built-up area is reached, electric driving is switched to automatically.

Other situations are also shown on the Control Display:

- ▷ Downward gradient: electric driving takes place and the high-voltage battery is charged on the downward gradient.
- ▷ Target area: electric driving takes precedence in the target area.

▷ Energy distribution: if the high-voltage battery is sufficiently charged, electric driving takes precedence on later route sections outside built-up areas.

eDRIVE zone

Depending on the national-market version, electric driving is supported by the eDrive zone app in selected urban areas. When you drive in an eDrive zone, the driving mode is switched to ELECTRIC automatically if necesssary.

The eDrive zones are highlighted in colour in the map view of the navigation system.

The eDrive zone function and the display in the map view can be activated or deactivated. The function and the display in the map view are activated when the vehicle is delivered.

Driving Experience Control

Principle

Driving Experience Control influences the driving dynamics and hybrid system characteristics of the vehicle.

The vehicle can be adapted depending on the situation using various driving modes.

General

The following systems are influenced, for example:

- ▷ Engine characteristics.
- ▷ Properties of the hybrid system.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission.
- ▷ Adaptive M suspension.
- ▷ Steering.
- ▷ Display in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Cruise Control.

Overview

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selected drive mode is shown in the instrument cluster.

Drive modes

Button	Drive mode
SPORT	SPORT STANDARD XTRABOOST SPORT INDIVIDUAL
HYBRID	HYBRID STANDARD HYBRID ECO PRO
ELECTRIC	ELECTRIC STANDARD ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL
ADAPTIVE	ADAPTIVE
	BATTERY CONTROL

Some driving modes can be configured individually.

Drive modes in detail

SPORT STANDARD

Principle

Dynamic configuration for greater agility with an optimised suspension.

Switching on

SPORT Press the button until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

XTRABOOST

Principle

If available, the electric motor provides additional power. Dynamic configuration for maximum agility with an adapted drive.

Switching on

SPORT Press the button repeatedly until XTRABOOST is displayed in the instrument cluster.

SPORT INDIVIDUAL

Principle

Individual settings can be made in SPORT INDIVIDUAL drive mode.

Configuring

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "SPORT INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting:

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Reset SPORT INDIVIDUAL to default setting:

"Reset to SPORT STANDARD".

HYBRID STANDARD

Principle

HYBRID STANDARD is activated every time the vehicle is started via the start/stop button.

In HYBRID STANDARD, the vehicle is propelled according to the various driving situations in hybrid mode; in other words, in combined propulsion with the internal combustion engine and electric motor. In each case, the most efficient type of drive takes precedence.

Switching on

HYBRID Press the button repeatedly until HYBRID is displayed in the instrument cluster.

HYBRID ECO PRO

Principle

In HYBRID ECO PRO, the vehicle is propelled according to the various driving situations in hybrid mode. HYBRID ECO PRO supports a fuel-efficient driving style by adapting the engine control and comfort functions; for example, climate control output.

Switching on

HYBRID Press the button repeatedly until HYBRID ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

ELECTRIC STANDARD

Principle

The vehicle is exclusively electrically driven.

If necessary, the maximum electric speed that applies to ELECTRIC STANDARD may be deliberately exceeded with the aid of kickdown. The internal combustion engine is automatically started and changes to the most recently selected hybrid mode.

For further information:

BMW eDrive, see page 149.

Switching on

Press the button repeatedly until ELECTRIC is displayed in the instrument cluster.

ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL

Principle

The vehicle is exclusively electrically driven.

In ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL driving mode, individual settings can be made for comfort functions; for example, climate control output. This supports a fuel-efficient driving style.

Configuring

ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL can be specified as the default mode, for example.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "Configure INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Reset ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL to the default settings:

"Reset".

ADAPTIVE

Principle

Balanced drive mode with a configuration that automatically adapts to the driving situation and driving style.

Using the navigation system, upcoming route stages are also taken into account.

Switching on

Press the button. ADAPTIVE is displayed in the instrument cluster.

BATTERY CONTROL

General

A certain charge state of the high-voltage battery can be maintained or increased with BATTERY CONTROL. This charge state can be set. The electric range can be conserved in this way for a later point in the journey, for example.

If the current charge state is too low, the battery is charged during the journey. This charging process increases average consumption.

Switching on

Press the button.

The LED in the button illuminates red.

Setting the charge state

The charge state can be set in various ways.

Using the button:

1. Press the button.

   BATTERY CONTROL is displayed in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display.
2. Select "Set target value" on the Control Display.
3. "Target:": set the required value.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "BATTERY CONTROL"
5. Set the desired value.

The Control Display shows the charge state that is to be saved as a percentage.

The instrument cluster shows a mark for the set value in the charge status display of the high-voltage battery.

For further information:

Charge state indicator the high-voltage battery, see page 177.

INDIVIDUAL configuration

General

The individual configuration of the drive mode is saved for the current driver profile. The configuration set last is directly activated when the drive mode is called up again.

Activating the configuration of the drive mode

Press the button of the desired drive several times.

Parking brake

Principle

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example with a chock.

⚠ WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Overview

Parking brake

Engaging

When the vehicle is stationary

Pull the switch.

The LED is illuminated.

PARK

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated red. The parking brake is engaged.

While the vehicle is in motion

General

Use during the journey serves as an emergency brake.

Pull and hold the switch. Vehicle brakes strongly for as long as the switch is pulled.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated red, a signal sounds and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is shown.

Apply the parking brake when the vehicle is stationary.

With emergency stop assistant

Briefly press the switch to activate the emergency stop function.

For further information:

Emergency Stop Assistant, see page 240.

Releasing

Releasing manually

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2.

Steptronic transmission: press the switch with the brakes applied or selector lever position P engaged.

   The LED and indicator lamp are illuminated.

   The parking brake is released.

Automatic release

The parking brake is automatically released on driving off.

LED and indicator lamp turn off.

Steptronic transmission: Automatic Hold

Principle

This system provides assistance by automatically applying and releasing the brake, for example in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is held automatically when at a standstill.

On upward gradients, it prevents the vehicle from rolling back when driving off.

General

The parking brake is automatically applied in the following conditions:

- ▷ When drive-ready state is switched off.
- ▷ When the driver's door is opened with the vehicle at a standstill.
- ▷ If the vehicle is brought to a standstill with the parking brake during a journey.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example with a chock.

⚠ WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

NOTE

Automatic Hold applies the parking brake when the vehicle is stationary and prevents the vehicle from rolling in car washes. There is a risk of material damage. Deactivate Automatic Hold before driving into the car wash.

Overview

AUTO H Automatic Hold

Activating the Automatic Hold function

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. AUTO H Press the button.

   The LED is illuminated.

AUTO H The indicator lamp illuminates green.

Automatic Hold is ready to operate.

When the vehicle is restarted, the last selected setting is retained.

Automatic Hold holds the vehicle

Operational readiness is established and the driver's door is closed.

PARK (P) Once the brake has been applied, the vehicle is secured from rolling as soon as the indicator lamp is illuminated green.

Driving off

To drive off, press the accelerator pedal.

The brake is released automatically and the indicator lamp for the parking brake is no longer illuminated.

Automatic activation of the parking brake

The parking brake is automatically applied when the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold and drive-ready state is switched off or the vehicle is exited.

PARK (P) The indicator lamp changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not applied automatically if drive-ready state was switched off while the vehicle was still rolling. Automatic Hold is switched off in this case.

Switching off operational readiness

AUTO H Press the button.

The LED is extinguished.

AUTO H The indicator lamp extinguishes.

Automatic Hold is switched off.

If the vehicle is being held stationary by Automatic Hold, also depress the brake pedal when switching off.

Malfunction

If the parking brake has failed or malfunctioned, secure the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away before leaving the vehicle.

A Check Control message is shown.

After getting out, secure the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away, for example with a chock.

After a power failure

To restore parking brake functionality after a power failure:

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Pull the switch with the brakes applied or selector lever position P engaged and then press it.

The procedure can take a few seconds. Any sounds that occur are normal.

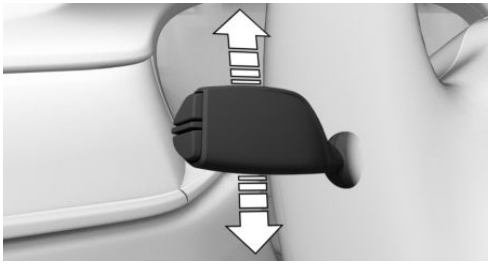
The indicator lamp no longer illuminates as soon as the parking brake is once again operational.

Turn indicator

Turn indicator in exterior mirror

Do not fold in the exterior mirrors while driving or while operating the turn indicators or hazard warning lights to ensure that the indicator lamps in the exterior mirrors are well recognisable.

Indicating



Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

Triple turn signal

Briefly press the lever up or down.

The duration of the triple turn signal can be set.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "One-touch indicator"
5. Select the desired setting.

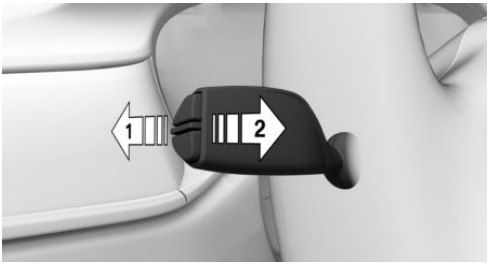
The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Indicating a turn briefly

Press the lever as far as the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

High-beam headlights, headlight flasher

Push the lever forwards or pull it back.



▷ High-beam headlights on, arrow 1.

The high-beam headlights are illuminated when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

▷ High-beam headlights off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Wiper system

General

Do not use the wipers on a dry windscreen, otherwise the wiper blades will wear or become damaged more quickly.

Safety notes

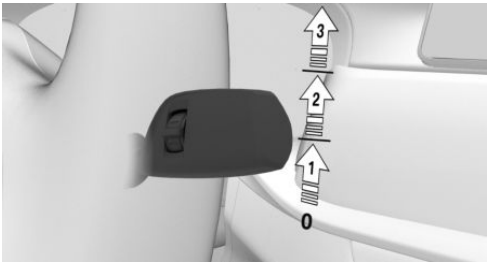
WARNING

If the wipers start moving when they are folded away from the windscreen, parts of the body may become trapped or the vehicle may be damaged. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are folded away from the windscreen, and that the wipers are in contact with the windscreen when switching on.

NOTE

If the wipers are frozen to the windscreen, switching them on may cause the wiper blades to tear off and the wiper motor to overheat. There is a risk of material damage. Defrost the windscreen before switching on the wipers.

Switching on



Press the lever upwards to the desired position.

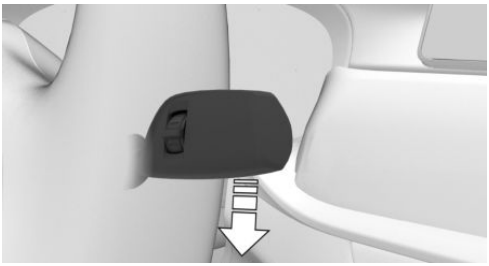
- ▷ Rest position of the wipers, position 0.
- ▷ Rain sensor, position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed, position 2.

  When the vehicle is at a standstill, the wipers switch to intermittent operation.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

  When the vehicle is at a standstill, the wipers switch to normal speed.

If a journey is interrupted with the wiper system switched on: when the journey is resumed, the wipers continue operating at the previously set level.

Switching off and flick-wiping



Press the lever down.

- ▷ To switch off: press the lever downwards to the home position.
- ▷ To flick-wipe: press the lever downwards from the home position.

  The lever returns to the home position when released.

Rain sensor

Principle

The rain sensor automatically controls the wiper operation depending on the level of rainfall.

General

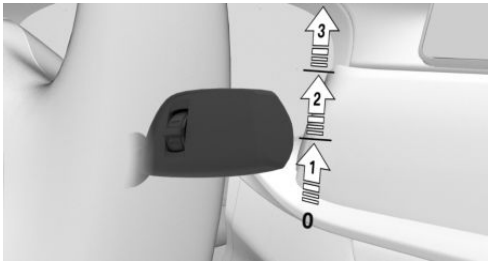
The sensor is mounted on the windscreen, directly in front of the rear-view mirror.

Safety note

NOTE

In car washes, the wipers may inadvertently start moving if the rain sensor is activated. There is a risk of material damage. Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes.

Activating



Press the lever upwards once from the home position, arrow 1.

Wiping is started.

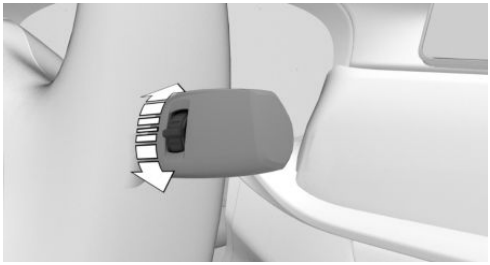
The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

If there is frost, wiping may not start.

Deactivating

Press the lever back to the home position.

Setting the sensitivity of the rain sensor



Turn the knurled wheel to set the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Upwards: high sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Downwards: low sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Windscreen washer

Safety notes

WARNING

At low temperatures, the washer fluid can freeze onto the windscreen and restrict visibility. There is a risk of accident. Only use the washer systems if there is no possibility of the washer fluid freezing. Use antifreeze if required.

NOTE

If the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the washer pump cannot operate as intended. There is a risk of material damage. Do not use the washer system with the washer fluid reservoir empty.

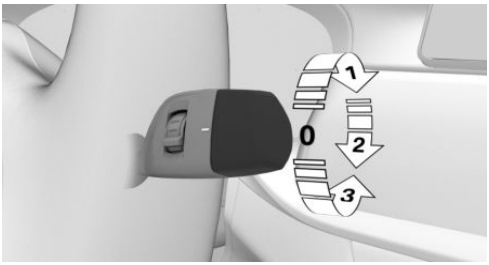
Cleaning the windscreen

Pull the lever.

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen directly in front of the wiper blade as the wipers move up.

Rear wiper

Overview



Switching on

Turn the outer switch upwards.

- ▷ Rest position of the wiper, position 0.
- ▷ Intermittent mode, arrow 1. Engaging reverse gear activates continuous operation.

To clean the rear window

Turn the outer switch in the desired direction.

- ▷ In rest position: turn the switch downwards, arrow 3. The switch returns to the rest position when released.
- ▷ In intermittent operation: turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch returns to the intermittent position when released.

The function is deactivated if the washer fluid level in the reservoir is low.

Fold-out position of the wipers

Principle

In the fold-out position, the wipers can be folded away from the windscreen.

General

This is necessary for example when replacing the wiper blades or to keep them away from the windscreen when there is frost.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

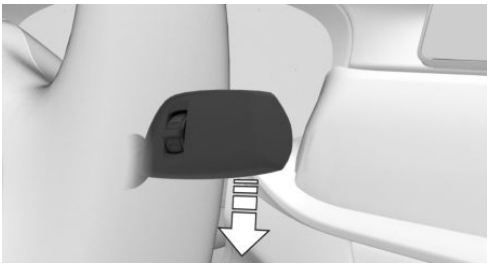
If the wipers start moving when they are folded away from the windscreen, parts of the body may become trapped or the vehicle may be damaged. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are folded away from the windscreen, and that the wipers are in contact with the windscreen when switching on.

⚠ NOTE

If the wipers are frozen to the windscreen, switching them on may cause the wiper blades to tear off and the wiper motor to overheat. There is a risk of material damage. Defrost the windscreen before switching on the wipers.

Folding out the wipers

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press the wiper lever down and hold until the wipers stop in an approximately vertical position.



3. Lift the wipers completely away from the windscreen.

Folding in the wipers

After folding the wipers in, the wiper system must be reactivated.

1. Fold the wipers fully down onto the windscreen.
2. Switch on standby state and press and hold the wiper lever down again.
3. The wipers move back to the rest position and are operational once again.

Steptronic transmission

Principle

The Steptronic transmission combines the functions of an automatic transmission with the option to change gear manually if required.

Safety note

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away, for example by applying the parking brake.

Selector lever positions

D drive position

Selector lever position for all normal driving. All gears for forward driving are selected automatically.

R Reverse

Only engage selector lever position R when the vehicle is stationary.

N neutral

In selector lever position N, the vehicle can be pushed or can roll without power from the engine, for example in car washes.

P Park

General

Selector lever position for parking the vehicle, for example. In selector lever position P, the transmission blocks the individual wheels.

Only engage selector lever position P when the vehicle is stationary.

P is engaged automatically

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ After switching off drive-ready state if selector lever position R, D or M/S is engaged.
- ▷ After switching off standby state if selector lever position N is engaged.
- ▷ If, while the vehicle is at a standstill and selector lever position D, M/S or R is engaged, the driver's seat belt is unfastened, the driver's door is opened and the brake pedal is not depressed.

Before leaving the vehicle, ensure that selector lever position P is engaged. The vehicle could otherwise start to move. Also apply the parking brake.

For further information:

Parking brake, see page 158.

Engaging selector lever positions

General

Apply the brakes until you are ready to drive off, otherwise the vehicle will move when a drive position is selected.

Operating requirements

The selector lever will only move from position P to another selector lever position if drive-ready state is switched on and the brake pedal is depressed.

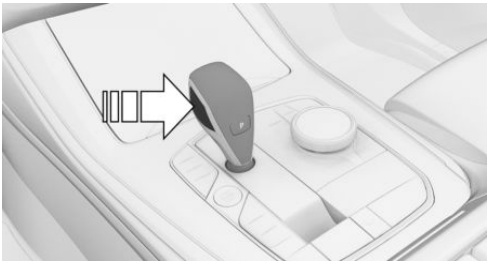
It may not be possible to move out of selector lever position P until all technical requirements are fulfilled.

Engaging selector lever positions D, N, R

A selector lever lock prevents the following incorrect operation:

- ▷ Inadvertent shifting to selector lever position R.
- ▷ Inadvertent change from selector lever position P to another selector lever position.

1. Fasten the driver's seat belt.
2. Press and hold the button to cancel the selector lever lock.



3. Briefly press the selector lever in the desired direction, possibly overcoming a resistance point. The selector lever returns to the middle position when released.

Engaging selector lever position P

Press button P.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General

In some situations, the vehicle may need to be rolled a short distance without power, for example in a car wash, or may need to be pushed.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing the brake.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. If necessary, switch off Automatic Hold.

   Automatic Hold, see page 159.
4. Press the brake.
5. Touch the selector lever lock and engage selector lever position N.
6. Switch off drive-ready state.

Standby state then remains switched on and a Check Control message is shown.

The vehicle can now roll.

NOTE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of material damage. Do not switch off standby state in car washes.

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged after approximately 35 minutes.

If there is a fault, it may not be possible to change the selector lever position.

Unlock the transmission lockout electronically if necessary.

Kick-down

Kick-down is used to achieve maximum performance.

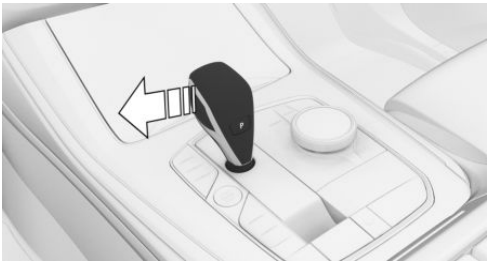
Press the accelerator pedal down beyond the regular full-throttle position; some resistance will be felt.

Sport program M/S

Principle

In the sport programme, the gear shift points and gear shift times are configured for more sporty driving. For example, the transmission shifts up later and the gearshift times are shorter.

Activating the sport programme



Press the selector lever out of selector lever position D to the left.

The gear selected appears on the instrument cluster, for example S1.

The sport programme of the gearbox is activated.

Electric driving eDRIVE and the Auto Start Stop function are deactivated. Rolling and braking phases are used more frequently for energy recuperation. The high-voltage battery can be charged according to the driving situation. Charging can increase fuel consumption.

Exiting sport programme

Press the selector lever to the right.

D is shown in the instrument cluster.

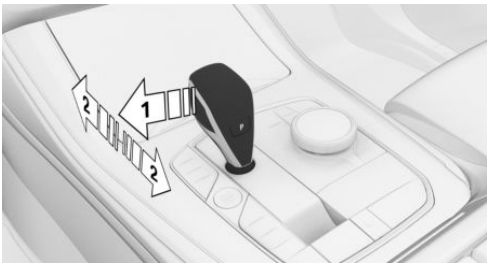
Manual mode M/S

Principle

The gears can be changed manually in manual operation.

Activating manual operation

1. Press the selector lever from selector lever position D to the left, arrow 1.



2. Press the selector lever forwards or pull it backwards, arrows 2.

Manual operation becomes active and the gear is shifted.

The gear selected appears on the instrument cluster, for example M1.

Shifting gears

▷ To shift down: press the selector lever forwards.

▷ To shift up: pull the selector lever backwards.

In certain situations, the transmission continues to shift automatically, for example when engine speed limits are reached.

Steptronic sport transmission: preventing automatic upshift in manual mode M/S

Depending on the motorisation: when SPORT driving mode is selected, the Steptronic Sport transmission does not automatically shift up in M/S manual mode when certain engine speed limits are reached.

In addition, there is no down shift for kick-down.

For further information:

SPORT, see page 156.

Exiting manual operation

Press the selector lever to the right.

D is shown in the instrument cluster.

Shift paddles

Principle

Shift paddles on steering wheel enable fast gear-shifting without taking hands off steering wheel.

General

Gearshift

Gear shifting is only carried out at the appropriate engine RPM and vehicle speed.

Short-term manual operation

In selector lever position D, operating a shift paddle causes the system to switch to manual operation temporarily.

The gearbox reverts to automatic operation from manual operation after a certain period of time of moderate driving without acceleration or gear shifts using the shift paddles.

It is possible to change to automatic mode:

▷ Pull and hold the right shift paddle until D is shown in the instrument cluster.

▷ In addition to pulling the right shift paddle, pull the left shift paddle.

Permanent manual mode

In selector lever position S, operating a shift paddle causes the system to switch permanently to manual mode.

Steptronic sport transmission

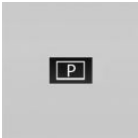
In the corresponding gearbox version, operating the kick-down and the left shift paddle at the same time allows you to change down to the lowest possible gear. This is not possible in short-term manual mode.

Shifting gears

- To change up: pull the right shift paddle.
- To change down: pull the left shift paddle.
- To change down to the lowest possible gear: pull and hold the left shift paddle.

The gear selected appears briefly on the instrument cluster, followed by the gear currently in use.

Displays in the instrument cluster



The selector lever position is displayed, for example P.

Unlocking the transmission lockout electronically

General

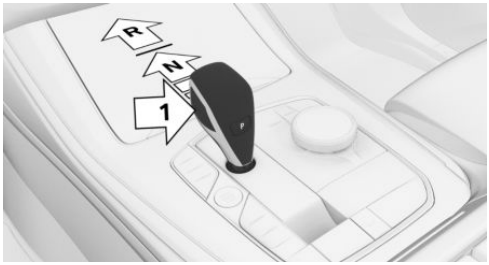
Unlock the transmission lockout electronically to manoeuvre the vehicle out of danger.

Before releasing the transmission lockout, apply the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Apply the brakes and keep them applied.
2. Press the start/stop button. Press and hold the start/stop button.
3. With your free hand, press the button on the selector lever, arrow 1, push the selector lever to selector lever position N and hold it there, arrow N, until selector lever position N is displayed in the instrument cluster.

   A Check Control message is shown.



4. Release the Start/Stop button and selector lever.
5. Release the brake.
6. Manoeuvre the vehicle out of danger and then secure it against rolling away.

For further information:

Tow-starting/towing, see page 419.

Launch Control

Principle

When the ambient conditions are dry, Launch Control permits optimised acceleration on a road surface that offers plenty of grip.

General

Use of Launch Control causes premature component wear, as the function subjects the vehicle to very high stresses and loads.

Do not use Launch Control when running in.

When starting with Launch Control, do not turn the steering wheel.

For further information:

Running in, see page 336.

Operating requirements

Launch Control is available when the engine is at operating temperature. The engine is at operat-

ing temperature after an uninterrupted journey of at least 10 km, 6 miles.

Starting with Launch Control

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2.

Press the button.

   TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.
3. Engage selector lever position S.
4. Press the brake firmly with the left foot.
5. Press the accelerator pedal down beyond the resistance at the full-throttle position and hold, kick-down.

   A flag symbol is shown in the instrument cluster.
6. The starting engine speed is adjusted. Wait briefly until the engine speed is constant. Keep the accelerator pedal in this position.
7. Release the brake within 3 seconds of the flag symbol illuminating.

   The vehicle accelerates.

   Upshifts are automatic as long as the flag symbol is displayed and the accelerator pedal is not released.

Using again during a journey

Once Launch Control has been used, the transmission requires approximately 5 minutes to cool down before Launch Control can be used again. Launch Control adapts to the ambient conditions when used again.

After using Launch Control

To assist driving stability, re-activate Dynamic Stability Control, DSC as soon as possible.

System limits

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode.

Displays

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

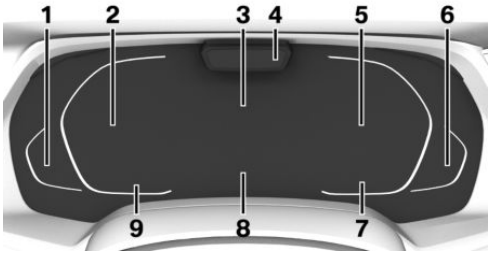
Instrument cluster

General

Depending on the equipment, changes to the displays in the instrument cluster can be deactivated via iDrive.

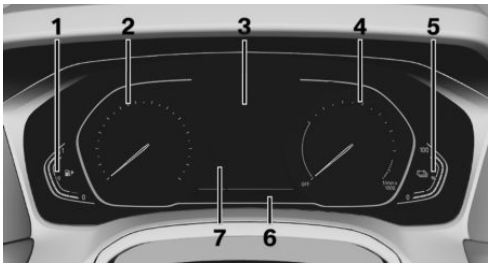
The displays in the instrument cluster can sometimes differ from the illustrations in the Owner's Handbook.

Full Black Panel Display: Overview



1 Fuel gauge 185
Total range 188
2 Speedometer
3 Central display area 172
Navigation display
Charge screen 176
4 Depending on the vehicle equipment: Driver Attention Camera
5 Selection lists 193
Widgets 173
Trip distance recorder, see Journey data 194
Performance display 186
Status of Driving Experience Control 155
Gear indicator 165
6 Charge state indicator the high-voltage battery 177
Electric range 177
7 Outside temperature 187
8 Check Control 179
9 Speed Limit Assist 264
Speed Limit Info 190
Time 75

Instrument cluster without extended functionality: Overview



1 Fuel gauge 185
Charge state indicator the high-voltage battery 177
2 Speedometer
3 Check Control 179

Widgets 174
Service requirements 189
Navigation display
Total range 188
4 Revolution counter 186
Display of the hybrid system 177
Performance display 186
5 Charge state display 177
6 Outside temperature 187
Gear indicator
Status of Driving Experience Control 155
Time 75
7 Speed Limit Info 190
Charge screen 176

Central display area

Depending on the equipment and setting, the following is displayed in the central display area of the instrument cluster:

- ▷ Navigation displays such as the map view or, if route guidance is active, a route preview with route guidance information.
- ▷ Displays showing service requirements.
- ▷ Charge screen.
- ▷ Assisted Driving View. Information about the Driver Assistance Systems appears in an animated vehicle environment.

Some displays in the central display area can be configured individually.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment and country specifications.

Settings

Individual displays in the instrument cluster can be configured individually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. Select the desired setting.

Assisted Driving View

Principle

Depending on the equipment and if driver assistance is active, information about the driver assistance systems appears in an animated vehicle environment.

General

Depending on the setting, Assisted Driving View can be displayed permanently or temporarily if driver assistance is active in the instrument cluster.

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Settings

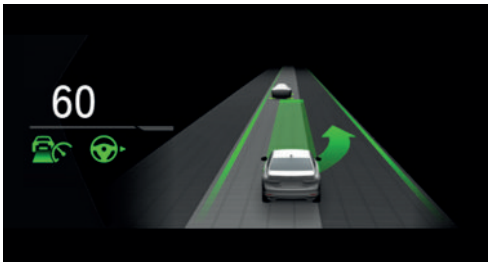
Permanent display

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. "Central display area"
6. "Assisted Driving View"

Temporary display

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. "Display Assisted Driving View when driver assistance is active"

Display



An example: the indicator and warning lamps for Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC and the lane change assistant indicate a move into the adjacent lane. At the same time, the move into the adjacent lane is shown as an animation in the Assisted Driving View.

System limits

The detection ability of the system is limited.

Only objects detected by the system are taken into account.

Full Black Panel Display: Widgets

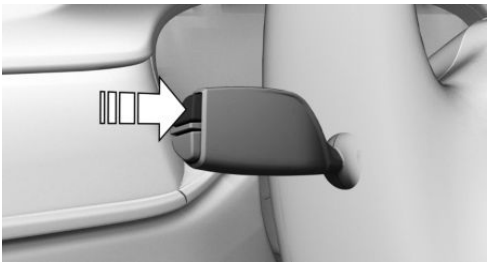
Principle

Displays for particular functions can be shown in the instrument cluster.

The following displays can be selected:

- ▷ Current entertainment source, for example radio.
- ▷ Torque and power.
- ▷ G meter.
- ▷ Journey data.
- ▷ Efficiency display.

Selecting



Press the button on the turn indicator lever repeatedly until the desired widget is selected.

Display

G meter

The G meter shows the forces which act on the passengers in the longitudinal and transverse direction during the journey.

Efficiency display

Principle

Information on the driving style and consumption can be shown as a widget in the instrument cluster, taking the form of a consumption display, for example.

General

Various information is displayed, depending on the activated driving mode:

Drive mode	Display
HYBRID	Average consumption, fuel. Momentary consumption, fuel. Consumption display, fuel. Odometer for driving without an internal combustion engine.
ELECTRIC	Average consumption, electrical. Momentary consumption, electrical. Consumption display, electric. Odometer for driving without an internal combustion engine.
SPORT	Engine temperature.

Average consumption

Average consumption indicates the fuel consumption over a specific route.

In ELECTRIC, the average electric consumption is displayed.

Current consumption

The current consumption indicates how much fuel is currently being used. It is possible to check the economy and environmental compatibility of your driving style.

In ELECTRIC, the current electric consumption is displayed.

Instrument cluster without extended functionality: Widgets

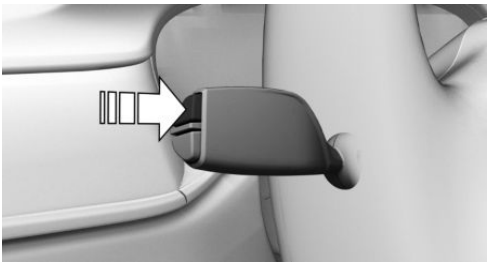
Principle

Displays for particular functions can be shown in the instrument cluster.

- ▷ Distance travelled.
- ▷ Consumption display.
- ▷ Current consumption and average consumption.
- ▷ Digital speed.
- ▷ Navigation data.

  When route guidance is activated in the navigation system.
- ▷ Driver Assistance Systems.
- ▷ Compass display for the direction of travel.
- ▷ Current entertainment source, for example radio.

Selecting



Press the button on the turn indicator lever repeatedly until the desired widget is selected.

Configuring widgets

Some widgets can be configured individually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"

4. "Instrument cluster"
5. "Configure widgets"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Information in detail

Distance travelled

Depending on the setting for displaying journey data, the total distance driven and the route covered are shown in the widget for the distance travelled.

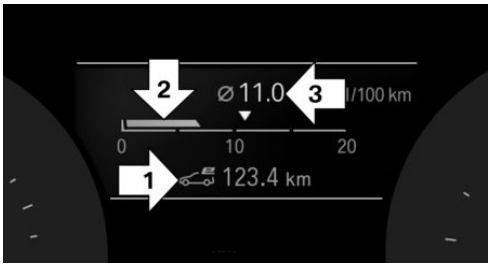
Consumption display

General

The average consumption values can be shown on the on-board computer in the form of a bar display.

In ELECTRIC, the electric consumption figures are displayed.

Display



- ▷ Odometer for a electric driving, arrow 1.
- ▷ Current consumption, arrow 2.
- ▷ Average consumption, arrow 3.

Current consumption and average consumption

Depending on the setting for displaying journey data, the current consumption and average consumption are shown in the widget.

Navigation data

General

The expected arrival time and remaining distance to the destination are displayed if a destination was entered in the navigation system before starting the journey.

Display

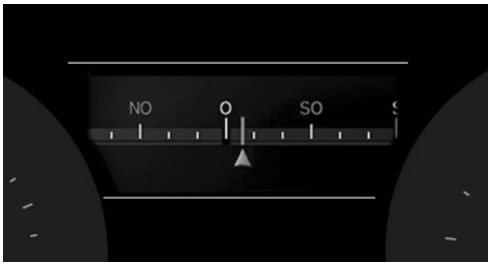
- ▷ Arrival time, arrow 1.
- ▷ Distance to destination, arrow 2.

Compass

General

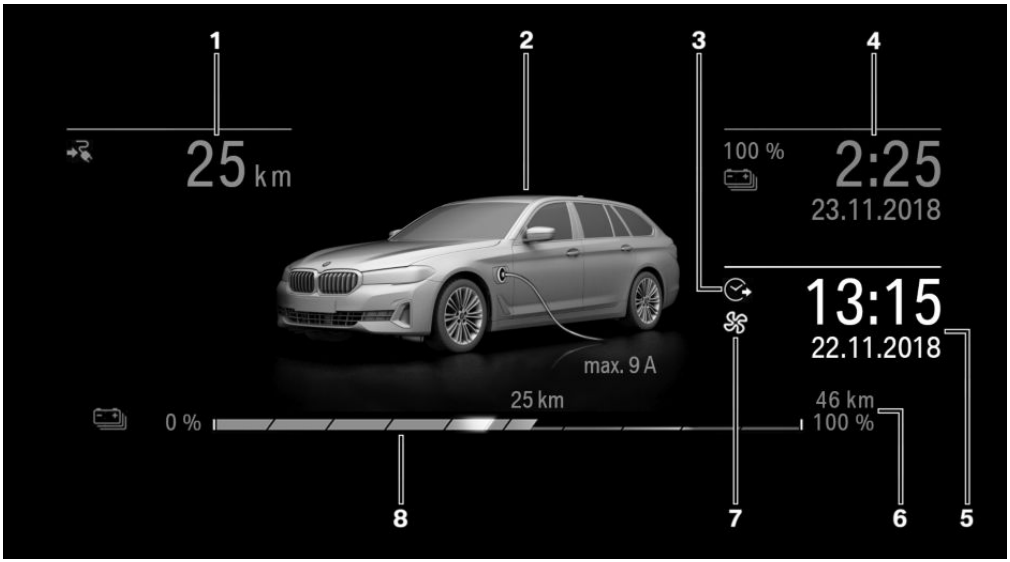
The compass shows the direction in which the vehicle is currently driving.

Display



Charge screen

Full Black Panel Display: Overview



1 Range for electric driving 362
2 Charge state with charging cable 362
3 Departure time timer 363
4 Time for end of charging 362
5 Departure time for timer 363
6 Maximum electrical range 362
7 Standing air conditioning 363
8 Current charge state 362

Instrument cluster without extended functionality: Overview

1 Range for electric driving 362
2 Maximum electrical range 362
3 Range for electric driving 362
4 Departure time for timer 363
5 Departure time timer 363
6 Standing air conditioning 363
7 Charge state with charging cable 362

Display of the hybrid system

Displays in the instrument cluster

General

The following functions of the hybrid system are shown:

- ▷ Charge state indicator the high-voltage battery.
- ▷ Drive-ready state: READY.
- ▷ Electric driving: ELECTRIC.
- ▷ Electric driving: ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL
- ▷ Hybrid mode: HYBRID STANDARD.
- ▷ Hybrid mode: HYBRID ECO PRO.
- ▷ BATTERY CONTROL.
- ▷ XTRABOOST.

What is displayed depends on the operating mode of the system.

Charge state indicator of the high-voltage battery

Principle

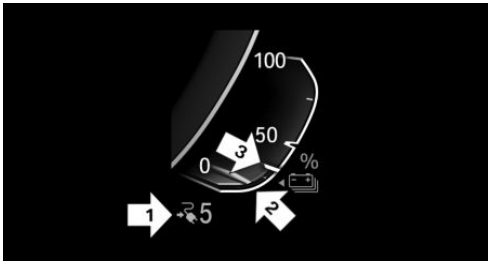
Displays the current charge state of the high-voltage battery in percent.

Safety note

WARNING

Even when the display shows that the high-voltage battery is discharged, the high-voltage system will still be carrying high-voltage. There is a risk of injury or fire. Do not touch or modify live parts, for example orange high-voltage cables, even if the batteries are empty.

Full Black Panel Display: Display



- Electric range, arrow 1.
- Current charge state, arrow 2.
- Set charge state of the BATTERY CONTROL function, arrow 3.

Instrument cluster without extended functionality: Display

Drive-ready state: READY

READY shows the drive-ready state.

For further information:

Drive-ready state, see page 52.

Electric driving: ELECTRIC

The display becomes active after ELECTRIC is activated via Driving Experience Control.

For further information:

Driving Experience Control, see page 155.

Electric driving: ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL

The display becomes active after ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL is activated via Driving Experience Control.

For further information:

Driving Experience Control, see page 155.

Hybrid mode: HYBRID STANDARD

The display becomes active after HYBRID STANDARD is activated via Driving Experience Control.

For further information:

Driving Experience Control, see page 155.

Hybrid mode: HYBRID ECO PRO

The display becomes active after HYBRID ECO PRO is activated via Driving Experience Control.

For further information:

Driving Experience Control, see page 155.

BATTERY CONTROL

The display becomes active after BATTERY CONTROL is activated via the BATTERY CONTROL button.

The available electric range is saved for later.

For further information:

Driving modes in detail, see page 156.

XTRABOOST

The display becomes active after XTRABOOST is activated via Driving Experience Control.

For further information:

Driving Experience Control, see page 155.

Display on the control display

Current vehicle status

General

The following are shown:

- ▷ Active components of the hybrid system.
- ▷ Direction of energy flows:

  Orange: energy flow of the internal combustion engine.

  Blue: energy flow of the hybrid system.
- ▷ Vehicle states:
  - ▷ ePOWER.
  - ▷ POWER.
  - ▷ eBOOST.
  - ▷ CHARGE.
  - ▷ Coasting.
  - ▷ Charging.
- ▷ System requirements of the hybrid system, for example drive system is not yet at operating temperature.
- ▷ Driver request, for example, gear selector lever in M/S position.

Displaying current vehicle status

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Energy flow"

Check Control

Principle

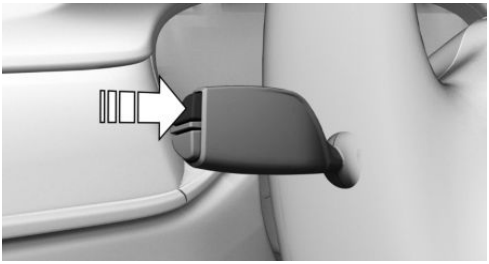
The Check Control monitors vehicle functions and alerts you to any faults in the monitored systems.

General

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lamps and text messages in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-Up Display.

If required, an acoustic signal is also output and a text message shown on the Control Display.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button on the turn indicator lever.

Continuous display

Some Check Control messages are displayed permanently and remain until the fault has been repaired. If a number of malfunctions have occurred at the same time, the messages are displayed in succession.

The messages can be hidden for approximately 8 seconds. Afterwards they are displayed again automatically.

Temporary display

Some Check Control messages are automatically hidden after approximately 20 seconds. The Check Control messages remain saved and can be displayed again.

Displaying saved Check Control messages

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control messages"
4. Select a text message.

Display

Check Control

At least one Check Control message is displayed or saved.

Text messages

Text messages and symbols in the instrument cluster explain what a Check Control message means and what the indicator and warning lamps signify.

Supplementary text messages

Additional information, for example the cause of the fault and any action required, can be called up via Check Control.

If the message is urgent, the supplementary text is shown in the Control Display automatically.

It is possible to select additional assistance depending on the Check Control message.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control messages"
4. Select the required text message.
5. Select the desired setting.

Messages displayed at the end of a journey

Certain messages displayed when driving are displayed again when drive-ready state is switched off.

Indicator and warning lamps

Principle

Indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster show the status of some functions in the vehicle and indicate any malfunctions in monitored systems.

General

Indicator and warning lamps can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colours.

When drive-ready state is switched on, the functionality of some lights is checked and they illuminate briefly.

Red lights

Seat belt reminder

The driver's side seat belt is not fastened. On some national-market versions: the front passenger seat belt is not fastened or objects are detected on the front passenger seat.

Check whether the seat belt has been fastened correctly.

Seat belt reminder for rear seats

Seat belt on the corresponding rear seat is not fastened.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment and country specifications.

Airbag system

Airbag system and belt tensioner may be faulty.

Immediately have the vehicle checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Parking brake

PARK (P)

The parking brake is engaged.

For further information:

Release the parking brake, see page 159.

Brake system

Brake system malfunctioning. Continue driving at moderate speed.

Immediately have the vehicle checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Collision warning with braking function

Indicator lamp is illuminated: advance warning. Brake and increase the distance.

Indicator lamp flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and take evasive action if necessary.

For further information:

Front-end collision warning with light braking function, see page 214.

Junction warning with City braking function

Indicator lamp illuminates: risk of collision with a crossing vehicle.

Indicator lamp illuminates: risk of a collision with a vehicle with unidentifiable direction of travel or advance warning in the case of vehicles crossing your own direction of travel.

The driver must intervene personally, for example by braking.

Indicator lamp flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning in the case of vehicles crossing your own direction of travel.

Brake and take evasive action if necessary.

For further information:

Junction warning with City braking function, see page 219.

Person warning with light braking function

Indicator lamp is illuminated and an acoustic signal sounds: imminent collision with a detected pedestrian or a cyclist.

Take action yourself immediately by braking or swerving.

For further information:

Person warning with light braking function, see page 222.

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function

Indicator lamp flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: brake and take evasive action, if necessary.

For further information:

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, see page 255.

Steering and lane control assistant

Indicator lamp flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: the system is switching off.

For further information:

Steering and lane control assistant, see page 268.

Yellow lights

Steering and lane control assistant

Indicator lamp illuminates and an acoustic signal may sound: a system interruption is imminent.

Indicator light flashing: lane boundary has been driven over.

For further information:

Steering and lane control assistant, see page 268.

Anti-lock Brake System ABS

Braking force boost may be faulty. Avoid sudden braking. Bear in mind that stopping distances will be longer.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC

If the indicator lamp is flashing: DSC is regulating the acceleration and braking forces. The vehicle is being stabilised. Decrease speed and adjust driving style to the road conditions.

If the indicator lamp is illuminated: DSC has failed.

Immediately have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For further information:

Dynamic Stability Control DSC, see page 247.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC deactivated, or Dynamic Traction Control DTC activated

DSC is deactivated or DTC is activated.

For further information:

- ▷ Dynamic Stability Control DSC, see page 247.
- ▷ Dynamic Traction Control DTC, see page 248.

Runflat indicator RPA

RPA reports a loss of tyre inflation pressure in a tyre.

Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.

For further information:

Runflat indicator RPA, see page 386.

Tyre Pressure Monitor

Indicator lamp illuminates: the Tyre Pressure Monitor is reporting a low tyre inflation pressure or a flat tyre. Note the information in the Check Control message.

Indicator lamp flashes and then illuminates continuously: no flat tyres or loss of tyre inflation pressure can be detected.

- ▷ Fault due to systems or devices with the same radio frequency: the system is automatically reactivated upon leaving the field of interference.
- ▷ In the case of tyres with special approval: the Tyre Pressure Monitor was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- ▷ A wheel without wheel electronics is mounted: if necessary have it checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

▷ Malfunction: have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For further information:

Tyre Pressure Monitor, see page 379.

Steering system

The steering system may be faulty.

Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Engine warning light

Engine malfunction.

Have the vehicle checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For further information:

Socket for on-board diagnosis, see page 404.

Rear fog light

Rear fog light is switched on.

For further information:

Rear fog light, see page 205.

Acoustic protection for pedestrians inactive

Acoustic protection for pedestrians faulty.

Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Green lights

Seat belt reminder for rear seats

Seat belt on the corresponding rear seat is fastened.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment and country specifications.

Turn indicator

The turn indicator is switched on.

If the indicator bulb flashes more rapidly than usual, a turn indicator has failed.

For further information:

Turn indicators, see page 161.

Side lights

The side lights are switched on.

For further information:

Side lights/low-beam headlights, see page 200.

Low-beam headlights

Low-beam headlights are switched on.

For further information:

Side lights/low-beam headlights, see page 200.

Lane Departure Warning

If the indicator lamp is illuminated: the system is switched on. At least one lane marking has been detected and warnings can be issued on at least one side of the vehicle.

For further information:

Lane Departure Warning, see page 225.

Front fog lights

Front fog lights are switched on.

For further information:

Front fog lights, see page 205.

High-beam assistance

High-beam assistance is switched on.

The high-beam headlights are switched on and off automatically according to traffic conditions.

For further information:

High-beam assistance, see page 203.

Automatic Hold

AUTO H

Automatic Hold is activated. The vehicle is held automatically when at a standstill.

For further information:

Automatic Hold, see page 159.

Manual Speed Limiter

LIM

If the indicator lamp is illuminated: the system is switched on.

If the indicator lamp is flashing: set speed limit is exceeded.

For further information:

Manual Speed Limiter, see page 251.

Cruise Control

Indicator lamp is illuminated: the system is active.

For further information:

Cruise Control, see page 253.

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function

If the indicator lamp is illuminated: the system is switched on.

For further information:

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, see page 255.

Speed Limit Assist

ASSIST

Depending on the equipment, indicator lamp illuminates together with the symbol for a cruise control system: Speed Limit Assist is active and detected speed limits can be adopted manually for the displayed system.

SET

Indicator lamp illuminates: the detected speed limit can be adopted with the SET button. As soon as the speed limit has been adopted, a green tick is displayed.

For further information:

Speed Limit Assist, see page 264.

Steering and lane control assistant

Indicator lamp illuminates: the system is helping the driver keep the vehicle in the driving lane.

For further information:

Steering and lane control assistant, see page 268.

Lane change assistant

Grey line for lane marking on the appropriate side: the system has detected the lane change request. Lane change not currently possible.

Green arrow symbol for lane-changing: the system carries out a lane change.

Grey arrow symbol for lane-changing: lane change not possible; operating requirements not met.

For further information:

Lane change assistant, see page 273.

Assisted Driving Plus

Indicator lamp illuminates: the system is active.

For further information:

Assisted Driving Plus, see page 272.

Blue lights

High-beam headlights

The high-beam headlights are switched on.

For further information:

High-beam headlights, see page 161.

Grey lights

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function

Indicator lamp illuminates: the system is interrupted.

Indicator lamp flashes: the prerequisites for operation of the system are no longer being met or the system has been deactivated.

For further information:

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, see page 255.

Steering and lane control assistant

Indicator lamp illuminates: the system is ready.

For further information:

Steering and lane control assistant, see page 268.

Assisted Driving Plus

Indicator lamp illuminates: the system is interrupted.

For further information:

Assisted Driving Plus, see page 272.

White lights

Assisted Driving Plus

Indicator lamp illuminates: the system is ready.

For further information:

Assisted Driving Plus, see page 272.

Fuel gauge

Principle

The current fill level of the fuel tank is displayed.

General

The angle of the vehicle may cause the display to fluctuate.

For further information:

Refuelling, see page 365.

Display

Full Black Panel Display:

An arrow next to the petrol pump symbol indicates on which side of the vehicle the fuel tank filler flap is located.

The current total range is displayed as a number.

Instrument cluster without extended functionality:

An arrow next to the petrol pump symbol indicates on which side of the vehicle the fuel tank filler flap is located.

Revolution counter

General

It is vital to avoid engine speeds in the red warning zone. In this zone, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

The revolution counter is available in SPORT driving mode or in the M/S sport program.

Performance display

Principle

The display shows the available drive power as a percentage of the overall power.

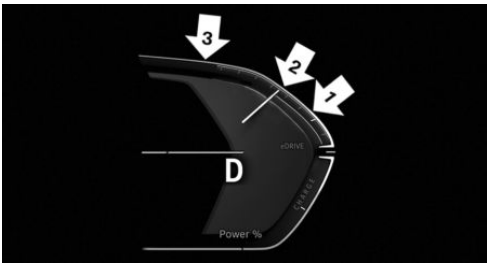
General

The available power may be reduced due to certain factors.

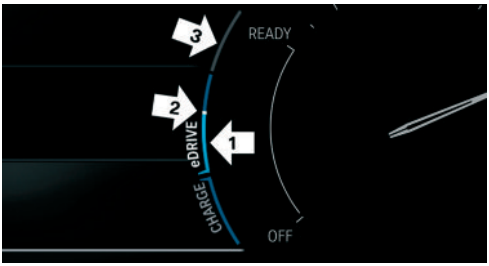
The following functions of the hybrid system are shown:

- ▷ Electric driving: ePOWER.
- ▷ Energy recuperation: CHARGE.
- ▷ Acceleration support: eBOOST.

ePOWER



Full Black Panel Display.



Instrument cluster without extended functionality.

The range for ePOWER electric driving is shown in blue, arrow 1. The area coloured in blue may vary depending on the driving situation and hybrid mode.

A scale shows the power output by the hybrid drive as a mark, arrow 2.

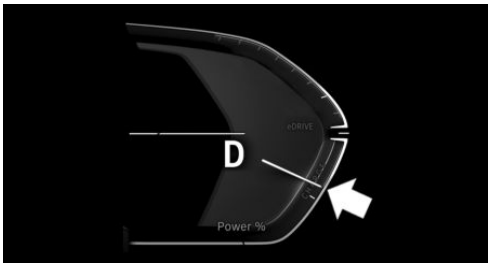
If the mark is outside the range coloured in blue, the combustion engine is switched on, arrow 3.

Full Black Panel Display: in SPORT driving mode, the combustion engine speed is shown instead of the power of the hybrid drive.

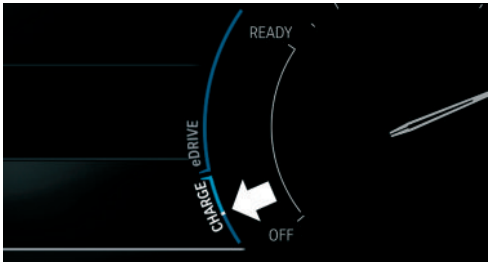
For further information:

BMW eDRIVE, see page 149.

CHARGE



Full Black Panel Display.



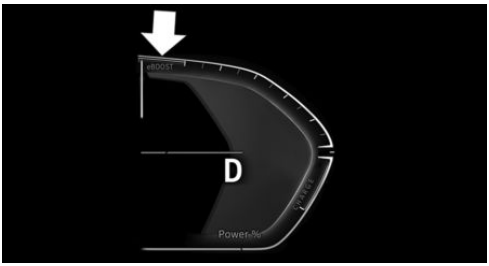
Instrument cluster without extended functionality.

The energy recuperation when rolling and braking is displayed depending on the drive mode by the CHARGE display in the instrument cluster, see arrow. The high-voltage battery is charged. No energy can be recovered if high-voltage battery is fully charged.

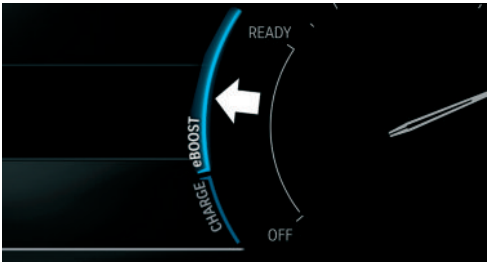
For further information:

BMW eDRIVE, see page 149.

eBOOST



Full Black Panel Display.



Instrument cluster without extended functionality.

If the electric motor supports the internal combustion engine, for example in the case of heavy acceleration, eBOOST will be displayed. The level of eBOOST provided depends on the available charge state of the high-voltage battery. eBOOST might not be available at all if the charge state of the-voltage battery is low.

For further information:

BMW eDRIVE, see page 149.

Outside temperature

General

If the display drops to +3 °C/+37 °F or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is shown.

There is an increased risk of black ice.

Safety note

WARNING

Even at temperatures above +3 °C/+37 °F there may be an increased risk of black ice, for example on bridges or on shaded sections of road. There is a risk of accident. At low temperatures, adjust driving style to the weather conditions.

Range

Principle

The range shows what distance can still be covered with the content of the fuel tank as well as energy in the high-voltage battery.

General

The range can be displayed as the range for electric driving or as the total range. The total range takes account of the content of the fuel tank as well as the electrical energy in the high-voltage battery. If the preconditions for electric driving are not met, the total range only considers the content in the fuel tank.

Various factors, for example automatic air conditioning settings, are taken into account when calculating the electric range. The electric range value is adapted dynamically.

The following factors are taken into account when calculating the range:

- ▷ Settings of the automatic air conditioning.
- ▷ Driving style.
- ▷ Climate conditions.

A Check Control message is displayed briefly if the remaining total range is low. If a sporty driving style is adopted, for example fast cornering, engine function cannot be ensured at all times.

If the range drops below approximately 50 km, 30 miles the Check Control message is displayed continuously.

As soon as a low tank fill level has been reached, ELECTRIC is activated automatically to protect the internal combustion engine, if the requirements for electric driving are met. The sport program of Steptronic is not available.

It is possible to continue driving with reduced drive power and exclusively using the electric motor.

Safety note

NOTE

If the range drops below 50 km, 30 miles, the engine may no longer be supplied with sufficient fuel. Engine function is no longer ensured. There is a risk of material damage. Refuel in good time.

Electric motor range display

Full Black Panel Display:

The electric range is permanently displayed under the charge state indicator of the high-voltage battery.

Instrument cluster without extended functionality:

The electric range can be shown in the fuel consumption display.

Additional information: widgets, see page 174.

The display indicates that the high-voltage battery is almost fully discharged or the electric drive is not available at the present time.

Total range display

Full Black Panel Display:

The total range is permanently displayed next to the fuel level indicator.

Instrument cluster without extended functionality:

The total range is displayed between the speedometer and the revolution counter.

For further information:

Fuel level indicator, see page 185.

Service requirements

Principle

The function shows the current service requirements and related maintenance jobs.

General

The distance or time remaining until the next service is displayed briefly in the instrument cluster after drive-ready state is switched on.

The current service requirements can be read out from the vehicle key by a service advisor.

Display

Detailed information on service requirements

More detailed information on the maintenance work required can be displayed on the Control Display.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service requirements"

   Maintenance routines and any statutory inspections required are displayed.
4. Select an entry to display more detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
OK	No servicing is currently needed.
△	Maintenance or a statutory inspection is due soon.
!	Service interval has been exceeded.

Entering deadlines

Enter deadlines for statutory vehicle inspections.

Ensure that the date and time are set correctly in the vehicle.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service requirements"
4. "Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Select the desired setting.

Service history

Principle

Maintenance that has been performed can be displayed on the Control Display. The function is available as soon as a maintenance visit has been logged in the vehicle data.

General

Have maintenance work performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. The maintenance work carried out is entered in the vehicle data.

Displays

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service requirements"

   Essential maintenance routines and any statutory inspections required are displayed.
4. "Service history"
5. Select an entry to display more detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
OK	Green: maintenance has been carried out on time.
OK	Yellow: maintenance has been carried out later than scheduled.
!	Maintenance has not been carried out.

Optimum shift indicator

Principle

The system recommends the most efficient gear for the current driving situation.

General

Depending on the design and the national-market version, the shift point indicator is active in M manual operation of the Steptronic transmission.

Steptronic transmission: displays

Information on up or down shifting are displayed in the instrument cluster.

For vehicles without optimum shift indicator, the gear engaged is shown.

Example	Description
M3	Most efficient gear is engaged.
2▸3	Shift to a more efficient gear.

Speed Limit Info with no-overtaking indicator

Speed Limit Info

Principle

Speed Limit Info shows the currently applicable speed limit in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, the Head-Up Display, as well as additional signs where necessary; for example, in wet conditions.

General

The camera located near the interior mirror detects road signs at the edge of the road as well as variable overhead signs.

Road signs with additional instructions, for example restrictions applicable in wet conditions, are taken into account and compared with internal vehicle data, for example the windscreen wiper signal. The road sign and associated additional instructions are then displayed in the instrument cluster and the Head-Up Display, if applicable, or ignored, depending on the situation. Some additional signs are taken into account in the speed limit evaluation, but are not displayed in the instrument cluster.

If a navigation system is installed, the system takes the information saved in the navigation data into account where applicable and also displays the speed limits for sections of road with no road signs.

If a navigation system is not installed, the system has certain technical limitations. Only road signs

with speed limits are detected and displayed. Speed limits when driving into and leaving built-up areas and motorway signs, for example, are not displayed. Speed limits with textual supplementary signs are always shown.

Speed limits for towing a trailer are displayed when the trailer socket is in use or when towing a trailer mode has been activated via iDrive.

No-overtaking indicator

Principle

Overtaking restriction signs and end of restriction signs which have been detected by the camera are indicated by corresponding symbols in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, the Head-Up Display.

General

The system considers overtaking restrictions and ends of restrictions that are indicated by means of signs.

Nothing will be displayed in the following situations:

- ▷ In countries where overtaking restrictions are primarily shown by road markings.
- ▷ On routes without road signs.
- ▷ In the case of railway crossings, lane markings and other situations which indicate an overtaking restriction but which are not signposted to this effect.

Overtaking restrictions for towing a trailer are not shown.

Depending on the equipment version, an additional symbol with distance information may also be displayed to indicate the end of the no-overtaking indicator.

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- ▷ Cameras behind the windscreen.

For further information:

Sensors of the vehicle, see page 47.

Displaying Speed Limit Info

General

Depending on the equipment, Speed Limit Info is displayed permanently in the instrument cluster or via iDrive.

Activating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Speed Assistant"
6. "Speed limits"
7. "Show current limit"

Display

General

Depending on the national equipment, additional signs and overtaking restrictions are displayed together with Speed Limit Info.

Speed Limit Info

Present speed limit.

If no navigation system is installed, the traffic sign is greyed out after turning off or on longer sections of road.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, Speed Limit Info may not be available.

The display flashes if the detected speed limit has been exceeded.

No-overtaking indicator

No overtaking.

End of overtaking restriction.

Additional signs

Symbols	Description
	Speed limit with time limit.
	Speed limit only applies in wet conditions.
	Speed limit only applies in snowy conditions.
	Speed limit only applies in foggy conditions.
←	Speed limit applies to exit on left.
→	Speed limit applies to exit on right.
	Speed limit only applies when towing a trailer.
!	Speed limit with undetected supplementary sign.

Speed Limit Info with preview

Depending on the equipment version, an additional symbol with distance information may also be displayed to indicate that a change in speed limit is ahead. Depending on the equipment, temporary speed limits may also be displayed; for example, speed limits at roadworks or traffic management systems.

Temporary speed limits can only be displayed if the following services are selected in the data protection menu for the navigation system:

▷ "Learning map"

▷ "Map update"

For further information:

Data protection, see page 79.

Settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"

3. "Driver assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Speed Assistant"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Warning when speeding": activate or deactivate the flashing of the Speed Limit Info display in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, the Head-Up Display when the currently applicable speed limit is exceeded. The warning that is issued when a speed limit is exceeded may depend on the Speed Limit Assist settings.
   - ▷ "Show speeding": the speed limit detected by the Speed Limit Info is indicated by a mark in the speedometer in the instrument cluster.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

▷ Cameras, see page 47.

Functional limitations

Functionality may be limited or incorrect information may be displayed in some situations such as:

- ▷ If road signs are fully or partially obscured by objects, stickers or paint.
- ▷ If the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead.
- ▷ In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- ▷ In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- ▷ If there are navigation discrepancies, for example due to changes in road layout.
- ▷ In the case of electronic road signs.
- ▷ When overtaking buses or trucks with road sign stickers.
- ▷ If traffic signs do not correspond to the standard.
- ▷ If road signs are detected that apply to a parallel road.
- ▷ If the signs or road layouts are specific to one country.

Selection lists

Principle

The instrument cluster or the Head-Up Display can show lists for certain functions and can be used for operation where applicable.

- ▷ Entertainment source.
- ▷ Current audio source.
- ▷ Recent calls list.

If applicable, the relevant menu is opened on the Control Display.

Display

Depending on the equipment, the list in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustration.

Displaying and using the list

Button	Function
	To change the entertainment source. Press the button again to close the list currently displayed.
	Display the last calls list.
	Turn the knurled wheel to select the desired setting. Press the knurled wheel to confirm the setting. The list that is currently selected can be displayed in the instrument cluster again by turning the knurled wheel.

Journey data

Principle

Values relating to the journey, such as the average consumption or the trip distance, are displayed.

General

The journey data can be shown on the Control Display and in the instrument cluster.

The values can be displayed and reset according to different intervals; for example, after refuelling.

Display on the control display

Overview

Depending on the equipment, the following information is shown as a function of the set interval and driving mode:

- ▷ Set interval for displaying the journey data.
- ▷ Average fuel consumption as a function of the set interval.
- ▷ Average speed.
- ▷ Odometer for driving without an internal combustion engine.
- ▷ Average consumption, electrical.
- ▷ Consumption history as a diagram.

Displays

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Journey data"

Consumption history

The consumption history shows the hybrid system usage in a diagram as a function of the route covered.

Display in the instrument cluster

Depending on the equipment, information on the distance travelled can be displayed as a widget in the instrument cluster.

The following information is displayed:

- ▷ Total distance driven
- ▷ Set interval for displaying the journey data.
- ▷ Route covered, depending on the set interval.
- ▷ Odometer for driving without an internal combustion engine.

Selecting and setting widgets in the instrument cluster.

For further information:

Full Black Panel Display:

Widgets, see page 173.

Instrument cluster without extended functionality:

Widgets, see page 174.

Configuring the journey data display

The intervals for displaying the journey data in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display can be configured.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Journey data"
4. "Values since"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Start of journey ( )": the values are reset automatically if the vehicle is at a standstill for approximately four hours.
   - ▷ "Refuel ( )": the values are reset automatically after refuelling with a significant amount of fuel.
   - ▷ "Charging ( )": the values are automatically reset after charging.
   - ▷ "Ex works": Average consumption since leaving the factory.

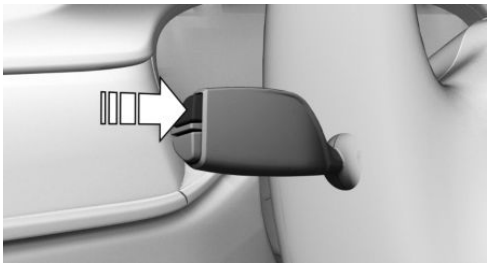
     The values since leaving the factory are displayed.
   - ▷ "Individual ( )": the values since the last manual reset are displayed. The values can be reset at any time.

Resetting average values manually

The following interval can be reset manually at any time: "Individual ( )".

Via the button on the turn indicator lever:

1. Press the button on the turn indicator lever repeatedly until the widget for the journey data is selected.



2. Press and hold the button on the turn indicator lever.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Journey data"
4. "Values since"
5. "Reset individual"

The average values and counters are reset. Once the average values and counters have been reset, the following interval is automatically set: "Individual ( )".

Sport displays

Principle

The sport displays primarily assist a sporty driving style.

Display on the control display

Overview

The following information is displayed:

- ▷ Charging pressure.
- ▷ Engine oil temperature.
- ▷ G meter.

▷ Torque.

▷ Power.

Displays

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Sport displays"

Full Black Panel Display: Display in the instrument cluster

The sport displays can be shown as widgets in the instrument cluster.

The following widgets can be selected:

▷ Widget for torque and performance.

▷ Widget for G meter.

For further information:

Widgets, see page 173.

Vehicle status

General

It is possible to show the status of some systems and perform actions on them.

Calling up the vehicle status

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"

Overview of information shown

Symbols	Description
(!)	"Flat Tyre Monitor": status of the runflat indicator RPA, see page 386.
(!)	"Tyre Pressure Monitor": status of the Tyre Pressure Monitor, see page 379.
	"Engine oil level": Electronic oil measurement, see page 397.
⚠	"Check Control messages": to display saved Check Control messages, see page 179.
	"Service requirements": to display service requirements, see page 189.

Head-Up Display

Principle

The system projects important information, for example the speed, into the driver's field of vision.

The driver can absorb this information without having to divert attention from the road.

General

Follow the instructions on cleaning the Head-Up Display.

Overview

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Head-up display"

Display

Overview

The following information is displayed in the Head-Up Display:

- ▷ Speed.
- ▷ Navigation instructions.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Selection list in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Driver Assistance Systems.
- ▷ Sport displays.

Some of this information is only shown briefly when needed.

Selecting displays in the Head-Up Display

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Adjusting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adapted to the ambient light.

The default setting can be adjusted manually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Brightness"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is obtained.
7. Press the Controller.

The brightness of the Head-Up Display can also be adjusted with the instrument lighting if the low-beam headlights are switched on.

Adjusting the height

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Height"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired height is obtained.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

The height of the Head-Up Display can also be saved with the memory function.

Adjusting the rotation

The Head-Up Display view can be rotated.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Rotation"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached.
7. Press the Controller.

Additional settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Speed Assistant": call up settings for speed assistance.
   - ▷ "Display infotainment lists in": set whether the selection lists are displayed in the instrument cluster or in the Head-Up Display.
   - ▷ "Sport displays": show revolution counter in the Head-Up Display.

- "Off": the sport displays are not shown in the Head-Up Display.
- "In SPORT mode": the sport displays are only shown in the SPORT driving mode.
- "Always": the sport displays are permanently shown in the Head-Up Display.

- "Reduced height": if some of the information is not in the driver's field of view, the information can be displayed in the lower part of the Head-Up Display.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the information shown on the Head-Up Display can be affected by the following:

- Seat position.
- Objects placed on the Head-Up Display cover.
- Sunglasses with certain polarisation filters.
- Wet roads.
- Adverse lighting conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the default settings checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Special windscreen

The windscreen is an integral part of the system.

The shape of the windscreen enables a sharp image to be projected.

A film in the windscreen prevents the projection of double images.

Therefore if the special windscreen needs to be replaced, it is strongly recommended that this be carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Lights

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Light and lighting

Switches in the vehicle

The light switch panel is located next to the steering wheel.

Symbol	Function
	Rear fog light.
	Front fog lights.
OFF	Lights off. Daytime running lights.
	Side lights.
AUTO	Automatic driving lights control. Adaptive light functions.
	Low-beam headlights.
	Instrument lighting.
P	Parking light, right.
P	Parking light, left.

Automatic driving lights control

Principle

Depending on ambient light conditions, the system switches the low-beam headlights on or off automatically, for example in a tunnel, at twilight and in rain or snow.

General

The headlights may also come on when the sun is low against a blue sky.

If the low-beam headlights are switched on manually, the automatic driving lights control is deactivated.

Activating

AUTO Press the button on the light switch element.

The LED in the button illuminates.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

System limits

The automatic driving lights control is no substitute for using your own judgement to assess the light conditions.

The sensors are unable to recognise fog or hazy weather, for example. In such situations, switch on the lights manually.

Side lights, low-beam headlights and parking light

General

If the driver's door is opened when drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lights are switched off automatically after a given time.

Side lights

General

The side lights can only be switched on in the low speed range.

Switching on

Press the button on the light switch element.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

The vehicle is illuminated all round.

Do not leave the side lights on for extended periods of time, since the vehicle battery could discharge and it may no longer be possible to switch on drive-ready state.

Switching off

OFF Press the button on the light switch element or switch on the drive-ready state.

After switching on the drive-ready state, the automatic driving lights control is activated.

Low-beam headlights

Switching on

Press the button on the light switch element.

The low-beam headlights illuminate if drive-ready state is switched on.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

To switch on the low-beam headlights as soon as the standby state is switched on, press the button again.

Switching off

Depending on the country specifications, the low-beam headlights may be switched off in the low speed range.

OFF Press the button on the light switch element.

Parking lights

When parking the vehicle, it is possible to switch on a parking light on one side.

Button	Function
P	Parking lights, right on.
P	Parking lights, left on.

Switch off parking lights:

OFF Press the button on the light switch element or switch on the drive-ready state.

Welcome lights

General

The exterior lights are switched on automatically when the vehicle is approached or unlocked. Depending on the equipment version, the exterior lights of the vehicle can be individually adjusted.

Activating/deactivating

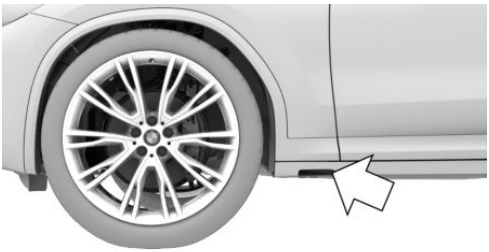
1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Welcome and goodbye"

     When the vehicle is unlocked, individual light functions are switched on for a limited time.
   - ▷ "Door handle lights"

     The door handles and the ground in front of the doors are illuminated for a limited time.
   - ▷ "Welcome Light Carpet"

     The area adjacent to the vehicle is illuminated for a limited time.

Welcome Light Carpet



The light source is located in the position indicated.

Keep the light source clean and unobstructed.

Home lights

General

The exterior lights can be switched on for a certain period of time to illuminate the surroundings after exiting the vehicle.

Activating

Push the turn indicator lever forwards briefly after switching off the drive-ready state.

Setting the duration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Home lights"
5. Select the desired setting.
6. "OK"

Daytime running lights

General

The daytime running lights illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the rear daytime running lights are switched on.

Activating/deactivating

In some countries, daytime running lights are compulsory, in which case the daytime running lights cannot be deactivated.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. Depending on national-market version: "Daytime driving lights" or "Daytime driving lights rear"

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Dynamic ECO light function

General

The brightness of the low-beam headlights is reduced, depending on the speed and distance from the vehicle in front.

Activating

Press the button on the light switch element.

The LED in the button illuminates.

Activate HYBRID ECO PRO or ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL driving mode.

For further information:

- ▷ HYBRID ECO PRO, see page 156.
- ▷ ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL, see page 157.

Adaptive light functions

Principle

Adaptive light functions makes it possible to illuminate the road responsively.

General

The adaptive light functions consist of one system or multiple systems, depending on the equipment version:

- ▷ Adaptive Headlights.
- ▷ Variable light distribution.
- ▷ Cornering light.
- ▷ Roundabout light.

Activating

Press the button on the light switch element.

The LED in the button illuminates.

The adaptive light functions are active when drive-ready state is switched on.

Adaptive Headlights

General

The headlight beams follow the road ahead in response to the steering angle and other parameters.

To prevent dazzling oncoming vehicles, the Adaptive Headlights do not swivel to the opposite side of the road at standstill.

If the headlights are converted, the Adaptive Headlights may only function to a limited extent.

For further information:

Left-hand/right-hand traffic, see page 205.

Anticipatory headlights for bends

The beams are adapted to the direction of the road ahead even before entering or leaving a bend.

Headlights for S-bends

The beams are kept as straight as possible when driving around S-bends.

Headlights for hairpin bends

The cornering light is also switched on before entering hairpin bends.

Variable light distribution

Principle

Variable light distribution illuminates the road even more effectively.

General

The light distribution is automatically adapted to the speed.

If equipment includes a navigation system, the light distribution is automatically adapted depending on the navigation data and speed.

City light

The light beam from the low-beam headlights is extended at the sides.

Motorway beam pattern

The range of the low-beam headlights is increased.

Cornering light

In sharp turns up to a specified speed, for example in hairpin bends or when turning off, a cornering light is added to illuminate the inside area of the bend.

The cornering light is activated automatically depending on the steering angle or, where appropriate, use of the turn indicators.

When reversing, the cornering light is activated automatically as appropriate, irrespective of the steering angle.

Roundabout light

Shortly before driving onto a roundabout, the cornering light on both sides is switched on. The edge of the road is illuminated more effectively. Shortly before leaving a roundabout, the cornering light on both sides is switched off again.

Adaptive headlight beam throw adjustment

Adaptive headlight beam throw adjustment compensates for acceleration and braking manoeuvres and vehicle load conditions to prevent oncoming vehicles from being dazzled. Illumination of the road is optimised.

High-beam assistance

Principle

High-beam assistance detects other road users in good time and activates or deactivates the high beam depending on the traffic situation.

General

High-beam assistance ensures that the high-beam headlights are switched on when the traffic situation allows. The system does not switch on the high-beam headlights at low speeds.

The system responds to the lights from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to ambient lighting, for example in built-up areas.

The high-beam headlights can be switched on and off manually at any time.

If the no-dazzle high beam assistant is installed, the high-beam headlights are not switched off for oncoming vehicles or vehicles driving ahead of you. The system only masks those areas of the beam which would otherwise dazzle oncoming traffic or traffic driving ahead. In this case, the blue indicator lamp continues to illuminate.

If the headlights are converted, high-beam assistance may only function to a limited extent.

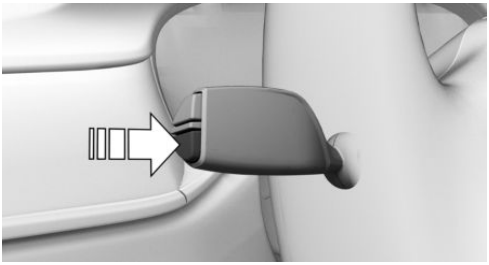
For further information:

Left-hand/right-hand traffic, see page 205.

Activating

1. AUTO Press the button on the light switch element.

   The LED in the button illuminates.
2. Press the button on the turn indicator lever.



The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

The system will switch automatically between low-beam and high-beam headlights.

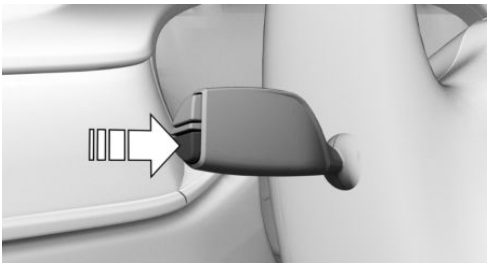
The blue indicator lamp in the instrument cluster illuminates if the high beam is switched on by the system.

If a journey is interrupted with high-beam assistance activated: when the journey is resumed, high-beam assistance remains activated.

The high beam assistant is deactivated by switching the high beams on and off manually.

To reactivate high-beam assistance, press the button on the turn indicator lever.

Deactivating



Press the button on the turn indicator lever.

System limits

High-beam assistance cannot replace the driver's own judgement as to when to use the high-beam headlights. Therefore activate the dipped headlights manually if the situation requires it.

In the following situations, the system will not operate or its operation will be impaired and your intervention may be required:

- ▷ In extremely adverse weather conditions such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- ▷ When detecting poorly lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists or horse riders or carriages and when trains or ships are close to the road, or when animals are crossing the road.
- ▷ On tight bends, on steep brows or hollows of hills, when there is crossing traffic or if the view of oncoming vehicles on a motorway is obstructed.
- ▷ In poorly lit towns or where there are highly reflective signs.
- ▷ If the area of windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is covered with condensation, dirt, stickers, labels, etc.

Laser high-beam headlights

Principle

The beam throw of the high-beam headlights is increased for even better illumination of the road surface.

General

When high-beam headlights are switched on, laser high-beam headlight is switched on automatically in addition to LED high-beam headlight from a speed of approximately 60 km/h, 37 mph.

Depending on the national-market version, the laser warning label on the headlight may contain additional information.

Fog lights

Front fog lights

Principle

The fog lights work alongside the low-beam headlights to illuminate a wider area of the roadway.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Low-beam headlights are switched on.
- ▷ Depending on national-market version: the side lights are switched on.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The green indicator lamp in the instrument cluster illuminates if the fog lights are switched on.

If automatic driving lights control has been activated, the low-beam headlights illuminate automatically when the front fog lights are switched on.

Rear fog light

Operating requirements

Before the rear fog light is switched on, the low-beam headlights or the fog lights must be switched on.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The yellow indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the rear fog light is switched on.

If automatic driving lights control has been activated, the low-beam headlights switch on automatically when the rear fog light is switched on.

Guiding fog lights

Principle

The light distribution of the low-beam headlights may be adapted to the foggy conditions according to the speed.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Automatic driving lights control is active.
- ▷ Rear fog lights or front fog lights are switched on.

Left-hand/right-hand traffic

General

When driving in countries where vehicles drive on the opposite side of the road to your vehicle's country of registration, you will need to prevent your headlights from dazzling oncoming vehicles.

Converting the headlights

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Right/left-hand traffic"
5. Select the desired setting.

System limits

High-beam assistance may only function to a limited extent.

The availability of the adaptive light functions might be restricted.

Instrument lighting

Operating requirements

The brightness can only be adjusted when the side lights or the low-beam headlights are switched on.

Adjusting

The brightness can be adjusted using the knurled wheel.

Interior light

General

Depending on the equipment, the interior light, the footwell lights, door entry lighting, ambient lighting and loudspeaker lighting are controlled automatically.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Interior light

Reading lights

Switching the interior light on/off

Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press and hold the button for approximately 3 seconds.

The interior light in the rear can be switched on and off independently. The button is located on the headliner in the rear.

Switching the reading lights on/off

Press the button.

Depending on the equipment version, there are reading lights located at the front and in the rear beside the interior light.

Ambient lighting

General

Depending on the equipment, the lighting for some of the interior lights can be adjusted.

Switching on/off

The ambient lighting is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

If the ambient light was deactivated using iDrive, it is not switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Ambient light"

The selected setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Selecting the colour scheme

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Colour"
5. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the brightness

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Brightness"
5. Select the desired setting.

Dynamic light

Individual actions, for example incoming calls or open doors, are indicated by light effects.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Dynamic light"
5. Select the desired setting.

Dimmed during the journey

The lighting in the interior is dimmed for certain lights during journeys in the dark.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Dimmed for night driving"

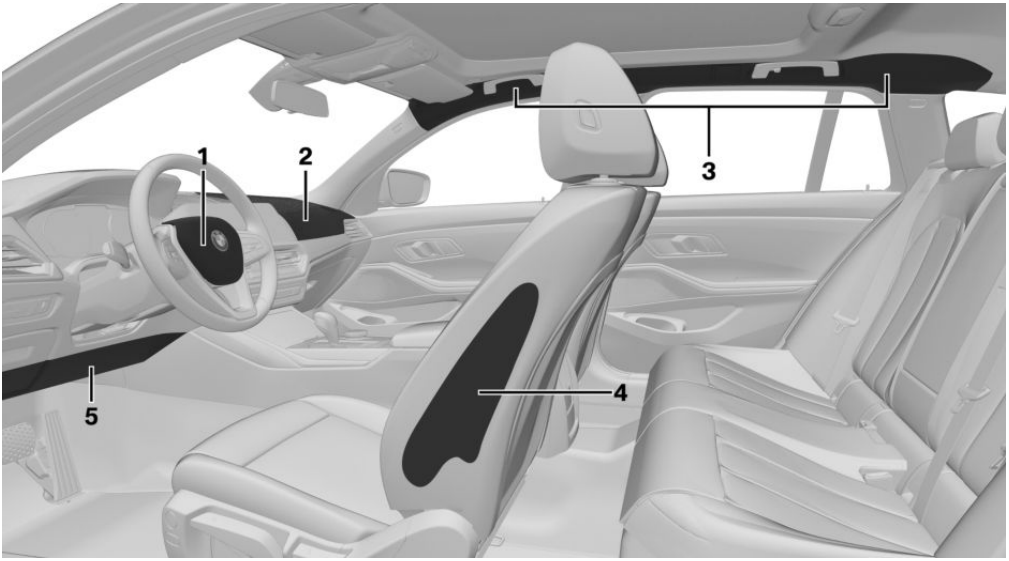
The selected setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Safety

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Head airbag
4 Side airbag
5 Knee airbag

Front airbags

Front airbags protect the driver and front passenger in the event of a head-on collision where the protection of the seat belts alone would no longer be sufficient.

Side airbag

In a side-on crash, the side airbag protects the side of the body in the chest and pelvic area.

Head airbag

The head airbag protects the head in the event of a side-on crash.

Knee airbag

Depending on the equipment version:

The knee airbag protects the legs in the event of a head-on crash.

Protective function

General

Airbags are not activated in every collision, for example, in minor accidents.

Information for optimum airbag effectiveness

WARNING

If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbag is restricted, the airbag system cannot provide the intended level of protection or may cause additional injuries when it deploys. There is a risk of injury or even death. Observe the following to achieve optimum protective function.

- Keep a distance from the airbags.
- Always grip the steering wheel at the steering wheel rim. Place your hands in the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions to minimise the risk of injury to hands or arms when the airbag deploys.
- Adjust the seat and steering wheel so the driver can reach over the steering wheel diagonally. Select the settings so that, when reaching over, the shoulders stay in contact with the backrest and the upper body stays as far away from the steering wheel as possible.
- Make sure that the front-seat passenger is sitting correctly, i.e. with their feet and legs in the footwell, not resting on the dashboard.
- Make sure that vehicle occupants keep their head away from the side airbag.
- Do not place any other persons, pets or objects between the airbags and occupants.
- Keep the dashboard and windscreen area on the passenger side clear, for example do not attach adhesive foil or covers and do not fit brackets for navigation devices or mobile telephones, for example.
- Do not glue the airbag covers and do not cover or modify them in any way.
- Do not use the front airbag cover on the front passenger's side as a tray.
- Do not install seat covers, cushions or other objects on the front seats if they are not specifically designed for use on seats with integral side airbags.
- Do not hang items of clothing for example coats or jackets over the backrests.
- Do not modify individual components of the system or its wiring. This also applies to the covers of the steering wheel, the dashboard and seats.
- Do not dismantle the airbag system.

Even if all this information is observed, injuries resulting from contact with the airbag cannot be entirely ruled out depending on the situation.

The noise caused by the deployment of an airbag may lead to temporary hearing loss in vehicle occupants sensitive to noise.

Operational readiness of the airbag system

Safety notes

WARNING

Individual components of the airbag system may be hot after airbag deployment. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.

WARNING

Work carried out incorrectly can lead to a failure, malfunction or accidental deployment of the airbag system. If there is a malfunction, the airbag system might not deploy as intended in an accident, even if the impact is of the appropriate severity. There is a risk of injury or even death. Have the airbag system tested, repaired or removed and disposed of by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Display in the instrument cluster

When drive-ready state is switched on, the warning lamp in the instrument cluster illuminates briefly to indicate that the entire airbag system and the belt tensioners are operational.

Malfunction

- ▷ The warning lamp does not illuminate after drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▷ The warning lamp is permanently illuminated.

Have the system checked.

Key switch for front passenger airbags

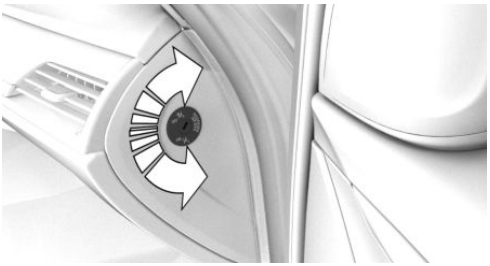
Principle

When a child restraint system is used on the front passenger seat, the front and side airbags on the front passenger side can be deactivated using the key switch for front passenger airbags.

General

The front and side airbags for the front passenger can be deactivated and reactivated using the integrated key from the vehicle key.

Overview



The key switch for front passenger airbags is located on the outside of the dashboard.

Deactivating the front passenger airbags

1. Insert the key and press inwards where necessary.
2. While the key is pressed inwards, turn it to the OFF position as far as it will go. Once the stop position has been reached, remove the key.
3. Make sure that the key switch is in the end position so that the airbags are deactivated.

The front passenger airbags are deactivated. The driver's airbags remain active.

If a child restraint system is no longer fitted in the front passenger seat, reactivate the front passenger airbags so that they are triggered as intended in the event of an accident.

The airbag status is displayed by the indicator lamp on the headliner.

Activating the front passenger airbags

1. Insert the key and press inwards where necessary.
2. While the key is pressed inwards, turn it to the ON position as far as it will go. Once the stop position has been reached, remove the key.
3. Make sure that the key switch is in the end position so that the airbags are activated.

The front passenger airbags are reactivated and can deploy correctly if the need arises.

Indicator lamp for front passenger airbags

The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags in the headliner shows the operating status of the front passenger airbags.

After switching on the drive-ready state, the light illuminates briefly and then shows whether the airbags are activated or deactivated.

Display	Function
PASSENGER ON AIR BAG	If the front passenger airbag is activated, the indicator lamp illuminates for a short period and then extinguishes.
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF	When front passenger airbags are deactivated, the indicator lamp remains illuminated.

Active pedestrian protection

Principle

The active pedestrian protection system raises the front flap if the front of the vehicle collides with a pedestrian. Sensors underneath the bumper are used for detection.

General

When triggered, the pedestrian protection system creates deformation space underneath the front flap in readiness for the subsequent head impact.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system may trigger inadvertently if contact is made with individual components of the hinges and front flap locks. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Do not touch individual components of the hinges and front flap locks.

WARNING

Modifications to the pedestrian protection system can lead to a failure, a malfunction or accidental triggering of the pedestrian protection system. There is a risk of injury or even death. Do not modify the pedestrian protection system, its individual components or its wiring. Do not dismantle the system.

WARNING

Work carried out incorrectly can lead to a failure, malfunction or accidental triggering of the system. If there is a malfunction, the system might not trigger as intended in an accident, even if the impact is of the appropriate severity. There is a risk of injury or even death. Have the

system tested, repaired or removed and disposed of by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

WARNING

If the system has been deployed or is damaged, its functionality will be limited or it may no longer work at all. There is a risk of injury or even death.

If the system has been triggered or is damaged, have it checked and renewed at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

NOTE

Opening the front flap when the pedestrian protection system has triggered may damage the front flap or the pedestrian protection system. There is a risk of material damage. Do not open the front flap after the Check Control message is displayed. Have checks performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

System limits

The active pedestrian protection system is only triggered at speeds between approximately 30 km/h, 18 mph and 55 km/h, 34 mph.

For safety reasons, the system may also trigger in rare instances where impact with a pedestrian cannot be excluded beyond all doubt, for example in the following situations:

- ▷ Collision with objects such as a skip or a boundary post.
- ▷ Collision with animals.
- ▷ Stone impact.
- ▷ Driving into a snow drift.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is shown.

The system has been triggered or is faulty.

Immediately drive at moderate speed to a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop to have the system checked and repaired.

Intelligent Safety

Principle

Intelligent Safety enables the Driver Assistance Systems to be operated centrally.

General

Depending on the equipment, Intelligent Safety consists of one or more systems which can help to avoid the risk of a collision.

- ▷ Front-end collision warning with braking function.
- ▷ Avoidance assistant.
- ▷ Junction warning with City braking function.
- ▷ Person warning with light braking function.
- ▷ Lane Departure Warning.
- ▷ Lane Change Warning.
- ▷ Side collision warning.
- ▷ Road priority warning.
- ▷ Wrong-way driving warning.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the

traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Due to system limitations, individual functions may not work properly when tow-starting/towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems. There is a risk of accident. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Switching on/off

Some Intelligent Safety Systems are automatically active at the start of each journey. Some Intelligent Safety Systems are activated depending on their last setting.

Button	Status
	Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.
	Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.
	Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly. The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions, for example the setting for warning time.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

Press and hold the button.

All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Collision warning with braking function

Principle

The system can help avoid accidents. If an accident cannot be avoided, the system helps to reduce the collision speed.

The system warns of the possible risk of collision and brakes automatically, as necessary.

General

Sensors record the traffic situation.

From speeds of approximately 5 km/h, 3 mph, the system provides a two-stage warning of any possible risk of collision with vehicles. The timing of these warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.

When deliberately moving closer to a vehicle, the front-end collision warning and braking intervention are activated later to avoid unwarranted system responses.

Depending on the equipment, the Driver Attention Camera detects the driver's view behaviour in the instrument cluster. The system also checks whether there are any visual impairments present. The view behaviour and visibility conditions also affect the point at which the warnings are issued.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Due to system limitations, individual functions may not work properly when tow-starting/towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems. There is a risk of accident. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- ▷ Cameras behind the windscreen.
- ▷ With radar sensor: front radar sensor.

For further information:

Sensors of the vehicle, see page 47.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

Switching off manually

Press and hold the button.

All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.
	Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.
	Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Front-collision warning"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.

The selected time is saved for the current driver profile.

Warning with braking function

Display

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning symbol is shown in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-Up Display.

Symbol	Action
	Symbol illuminates red: advance warning. Brake and increase the distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and perform an evasive manoeuvre if necessary.

Advance warning

An advance warning is given for example if there is an impending risk of collision or the distance from the vehicle ahead is too short.

The driver must intervene personally when an advance warning is given.

Acute warning with braking function

An acute warning is given when the vehicle is approaching another object at a high differential speed and there is an immediate risk of a collision.

The driver must intervene personally when an acute warning is given. Depending on the driving situation and the vehicle's equipment, the acute warning may be supported by a brief jolt in the brakes.

If the warning time setting is "Late", the jolt does not occur.

If necessary, the system can also assist by braking the vehicle automatically if there is a risk of a collision.

An acute warning can be triggered even without a previous advance warning.

Brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to take action. When the brake is operated during a warning, the maximum necessary brake force is applied. Braking assistance requires that the brake pedal is depressed sufficiently quickly and firmly beforehand.

The system can also assist by braking the vehicle automatically if there is a risk of a collision.

At low speeds, the vehicle can be braked to a stop.

City braking function: brake intervention takes place at up to approx. 80 km/h, 50 mph.

With radar sensor: brake intervention takes place at up to approx. 250 km/h, 155 mph.

At speeds above approx. 210 km/h, 130 mph, brake intervention takes the form of a brief jolt. There is no automatic deceleration.

Braking can be discontinued either by pressing the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection may be limited. Take into account the detection range limits and the functional limitations.

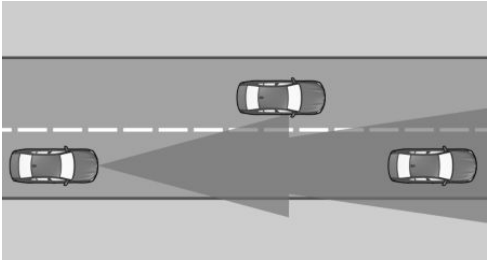
System limits

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Detection range



The detection ability of the system is limited.

Only objects detected by the system are taken into account.

For this reason, the system may fail to respond or only respond after a delay.

For example it is possible that the following may not be detected:

- ▷ Slow-moving vehicle when approaching it at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles suddenly cutting in or braking heavily.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.

- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead.

Upper speed limit

The system is temporarily disabled at speeds over approx. 250 km/h, 155 mph. Once the speed drops back below this threshold, the system becomes responsive again according to its settings.

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

- Cameras, see page 47.
- Radar sensors, see page 48.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- On sharp bends.
- When Driving Stability Control Systems are limited or deactivated, for example DSC OFF.
- Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the Start/Stop button.

Sensitivity of the warnings

The higher the sensitivity of the warning settings, for example warning time, the more warnings are displayed. As a result, there may also be an increased number of premature or unjustified warnings and responses.

Avoidance assistant

Principle

The system supports the driver in certain situations when there is a need to avoid something, for example people or obstacles that appear suddenly.

General

The system issues warnings and intervenes to provide support if there is a possibility to perform an evasive manoeuvre to the side. Sensors monitor and detect the space around the vehicle. The system then utilises the detected free space to perform the evasive manoeuvre by steering the vehicle safely and precisely in the direction specified by the driver.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windscreen.
- Front radar sensor.
- Side radar sensors, front.
- Side radar sensors, rear.

For further information:

Sensors of the vehicle, see page 47.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Pedestrian warning with braking function is switched on.

  Person warning with light braking function, see page 222.
- ▷ Collision warning with braking function is switched on.

  Collision warning with braking function, see page 214.
- ▷ The sensors detect adequate space around the vehicle.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

Warning with avoidance assistance

Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle or person, a warning symbol is shown in the instrument cluster and in the Head-Up Display.

Symbol	Action
	Symbol illuminates red: advance warning. Brake and increase the distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning for obstacles. Brake and perform an evasive manoeuvre if necessary.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning for people. Brake and perform an evasive manoeuvre if necessary.

Acute warning with avoidance assistance

An acute warning is given when the vehicle is approaching another object at a high differential speed and there is an immediate risk of a collision.

The driver must intervene personally when an acute warning is given. The system provides support for the driver's evasive manoeuvres if there is a risk of collision.

An acute warning can be triggered even without a previous advance warning.

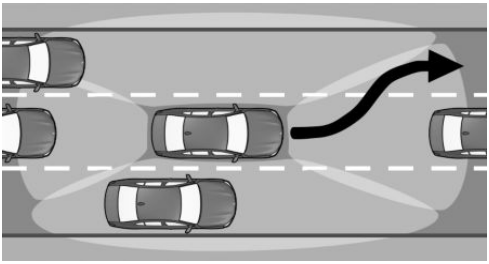
System limits

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Detection range



The detection ability of the system is limited.

Only objects detected by the system are taken into account.

For this reason, the system may fail to respond or only respond after a delay.

For example it is possible that the following may not be detected:

- ▷ Slow-moving vehicle when approaching it at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles suddenly cutting in or braking heavily.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead.

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

- ▷ Cameras, see page 47.
- ▷ Radar sensors, see page 48.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ On sharp bends.
- ▷ When Driving Stability Control Systems are limited or deactivated, for example DSC OFF.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the Start/Stop button.

Junction warning with City braking function

Principle

The system can help to avoid accidents with crossing traffic at junctions and crossroads. If an accident cannot be avoided, the system helps to reduce the collision speed.

The system warns of the possible risk of collision in the urban speed range and brakes automatically, as necessary.

General

Sensors record the traffic situation.

Vehicles that cross the vehicle's direction of travel can be detected by the system as soon as these vehicles enter the detection range of the system.

A warning is given at junctions and crossroads if there is a risk of collision with crossing traffic.

From speeds of approximately 10 km/h, 6 mph, the system provides a two-stage warning of any possible risk of collision with vehicles. The timing of these warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster detects the driver's view behaviour. The system also checks whether there are any visual impairments present. The view behaviour and visibility conditions also affect the point at which the warnings are issued.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

⚠ WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

⚠ WARNING

Due to system limitations, individual functions may not work properly when tow-starting/towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems. There is a risk of accident. Switch off all

Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- ▷ Cameras behind the windscreen.
- ▷ Front radar sensor.
- ▷ Side radar sensors, front.

For further information:

Sensors of the vehicle, see page 47.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

Switching off manually

Press and hold the button.

All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.
	Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.
	Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Front-collision warning"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.

The selected time is saved for the current driver profile.

Warning with braking function

Display

General

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning symbol is shown in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-Up Display.

Symbol	Meaning
	Risk of collision with crossing vehicle from right.
	Risk of collision with crossing vehicle from left.
	Risk of collision with vehicle with unidentifiable direction of travel.

Display for advance warning

The relevant symbol illuminates red: advance warning in the case of vehicles crossing your own direction of travel.

The driver must intervene personally, for example by braking.

Display for acute warning

The relevant symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning in the case of vehicles crossing your own direction of travel.

Brake and take evasive action if necessary.

Advance warning

An advance warning is displayed, for example if there is an impending risk of a collision with a crossing vehicle.

The driver must intervene personally when an advance warning is given.

Acute warning with braking function

An acute warning is displayed if there is an imminent risk of a collision with a crossing vehicle.

The driver must intervene personally when an acute warning is given. Where required, the system can assist by braking the vehicle automatically if there is a risk of a collision.

An acute warning can be triggered even without a previous advance warning.

Brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to take action.

The system can also assist by braking the vehicle automatically if there is a risk of a collision.

The vehicle can be braked to a stop.

Braking can be discontinued either by pressing the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection may be limited. Take into account the detection range limits and the functional limitations.

System limits

Safety note

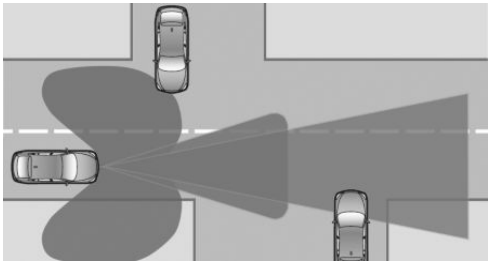
WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Upper speed limit

The system reacts to crossing vehicles if your own speed is below approx. 80 km/h, 50 mph.

Detection range



The detection ability of the system is limited.

For this reason, the system may fail to respond or only respond after a delay.

For example it is possible that the following may not be detected:

- ▷ Crossing vehicles concealed by buildings, for example.
- ▷ Vehicles suddenly cutting in or braking heavily.
- ▷ Crossing two-wheeled vehicles.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual side appearance.

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

- ▷ Cameras, see page 47.
- ▷ Radar sensors, see page 48.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ On sharp bends.
- ▷ When Driving Stability Control Systems are limited or deactivated, for example DSC OFF.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the Start/Stop button.

Sensitivity of the warnings

The higher the sensitivity of the warning settings, for example warning time, the more warnings are displayed. As a result, there may also be an increased number of premature or unjustified warnings and responses.

Person warning with light braking function

Principle

The system can help to avoid accidents with pedestrians and cyclists. If an accident cannot be avoided, the system helps to reduce the collision speed.

The system warns of the possible risk of collision in the urban speed range and brakes automatically, as necessary.

General

Sensors record the traffic situation.

At speeds above approx. 5 km/h, 3 mph, the system warns of the possible risk of collision with pedestrians and cyclists.

Pedestrians and cyclists are taken into account if they are located within the detection range of the system.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

⚠ WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of acci-

dent. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Due to system limitations, individual functions may not work properly when tow-starting/towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems. There is a risk of accident. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

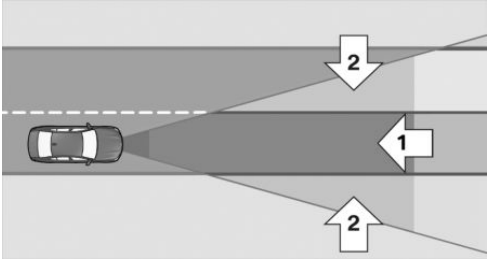
The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- ▷ Cameras behind the windscreen.
- ▷ With radar sensor: front radar sensor.

For further information:

Sensors of the vehicle, see page 47.

Detection range



The detection zone in front of the vehicle consists of two parts:

- ▷ Central zone, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- ▷ Extended zone, arrows 2, to the right and left of the central area.

There is a risk of collision if persons are in the central zone. A warning is only given of persons in the extended zone if they are moving towards the central zone.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

Switching off manually

Press and hold the button.

All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.
	Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.
	Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Warning with braking function

Display

If there is a risk of collision with a detected pedestrian or a cyclist, a warning symbol is shown in the instrument cluster and, where applicable, in the Head-Up Display.

A red symbol is displayed and an acoustic warning sounds.

Alternatively, depending on the equipment, a red warning triangle illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Take action yourself immediately by braking or swerving.

Brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to take action. If the brake is operated during a warning, maximum braking force will be applied. Braking force assistance requires that the brake pedal is depressed sufficiently quickly and firmly beforehand.

In addition, the system can assist with a brake intervention if there is the risk of a collision.

At low speeds, the vehicle can be braked to a stop.

Braking can be discontinued either by pressing the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection may be limited. Take into account the detection range limits and the functional limitations.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Upper speed limit

The system reacts to pedestrians and cyclists if your own speed is below approx. 80 km/h, 50 mph.

Detection range

The detection ability of the system is limited.

As a result, the system may fail to give warnings or may give warnings late.

For example it is possible that the following may not be detected:

▷ Partially concealed pedestrians.

- Pedestrians who are not detected as such due to the viewing angle or outline.
- Pedestrians outside the detection range.
- Pedestrians less than approximately 80 cm, 32 in tall.

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

- Cameras, see page 47.
- Radar sensors, see page 48.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality or may not be available at all in the following situations, for example:

- If vehicle stability control systems are deactivated, for example DSC OFF.
- Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.

Lane Departure Warning

Principle

The Lane Departure Warning issues a warning if the vehicle leaves the road or its lane.

General

This camera-based system warns once a minimum speed has been reached.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems.

Warnings are issued in the form of steering wheel vibrations. The strength of the steering wheel vibration can be adjusted.

The system does not issue a warning if the driver indicates in the corresponding direction before leaving the driving lane.

Depending on the equipment, if a lane marking is crossed in the speed range up to 210 km/h, approx. 130 mph, the system may intervene not only by vibrating but also with a brief active steering intervention. The system thereby helps to keep the vehicle in lane.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the layout of the road and the traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it. In the event of a warning, do not move the steering wheel unnecessarily abruptly.

⚠ WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Operating requirements

The lane marking must be detected by the camera in order for the Lane Departure Warning to be active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

▷ Cameras behind the windscreen.

For further information:

Sensors of the vehicle, see page 47.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

Lane Departure Warning is activated automatically at the start of a journey if the function was switched on the last time the engine was stopped.

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically activated at the start of each journey. The basic setting is activated.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

Switching off manually

Press and hold the button.

All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.
	Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.
	Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Lane departure warning"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Reduced": depending on the situation, some warnings are suppressed, for exam-

ple during overtaking manoeuvres without using turn indicators or when deliberately crossing lane markings on bends.

▷ "Off": no warnings are given.

The selected setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Adjusting the strength of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Feedback via steering wheel"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is accepted for all Intelligent Safety Systems and saved for the current driver profile.

Switching steering intervention on/off

Steering intervention can be separately switched on and off for Lane Change Warning or Lane Departure Warning.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Lane departure warning"
6. "Steering intervention"

The selected setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Display in the instrument cluster

The symbol is illuminated green: a lane marking has been detected on at least one side of the vehicle and warnings can be issued.

Warning function

When leaving the lane

If the vehicle leaves the lane and the lane marking is detected, the steering wheel vibrates depending on the steering wheel vibration setting.

If the turn indicator is switched on in the corresponding direction before changing lanes, no warning is issued.

Steering intervention

Depending on the equipment, if a lane marking is crossed in the speed range up to 210 km/h, approx. 130 mph, the system may intervene not only by vibrating but also with a brief active steering intervention. The steering intervention helps to keep the vehicle in lane. Steering intervention can be felt at the steering wheel, and can be overridden manually at any time. With active steering intervention, the display flashes in the instrument cluster.

Warning signal

Depending on the equipment, if the system executes an active steering intervention multiple times within 3 minutes without the driver touching the steering wheel, an acoustic warning is emitted. A short warning signal sounds on the second steering intervention. A longer warning signal sounds from the third steering intervention onwards.

A Check Control message is also displayed.

The warning signal and Check Control message tell the driver to pay more attention to the lane.

When towing a trailer

There is no steering intervention when the trailer socket is in use, for example when operating with a trailer or bicycle carrier.

Cancellation of the warning

For example, the warning is cancelled in the following situations:

- ▷ Automatically after a few seconds.
- ▷ On returning to the correct lane.
- ▷ If the vehicle is braking heavily.
- ▷ On indicating.
- ▷ If Dynamic Stability Control DSC intervenes.

System limits

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

- ▷ Cameras, see page 47.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ When there are missing, worn, poorly visible, merging/separating or ambiguous lane markings; for example, in areas where there are roadworks.
- ▷ If lane markings are covered by snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▷ On sharp bends or narrow roads.
- ▷ If lane markings are not white.
- ▷ If lane markings are obscured by objects.
- ▷ If the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the Start/Stop button.

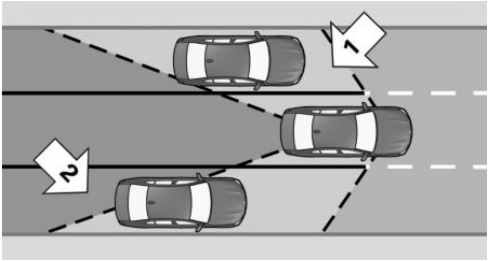
A Check Control message may be displayed in the event of limited functionality.

Lane Change Warning

Principle

Lane Change Warning detects vehicles in the blind spot, or if vehicles are approaching from behind in the adjacent lane. Different levels of warning are given in these situations.

General



Operational from a minimum speed, radar sensors monitor the area behind and adjacent to the vehicle.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems.

The system indicates when vehicles are in the blind spot, arrow 1, or are approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane, arrow 2.

The light in the exterior mirror illuminates at a dimmed level.

Before changing lanes with the turn indicator switched on, the system issues a warning in the above situations.

The light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

Vehicles with side collision warning: at speeds of up to 210 km/h, 130 mph, the system can respond with a brief active steering intervention and thus help to return the vehicle to its lane. The steering intervention is carried out above a minimum speed. This minimum speed is shown on the Control Display in the steering intervention menu.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

⚠ WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

▷ Side radar sensors, rear.

For further information:

Sensors of the vehicle, see page 47.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The Lane Change Warning is reactivated automatically at the start of a journey if the function was switched on the last time the engine was stopped.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

Switching off manually

Press and hold the button.

All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.
	Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.
	Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Lane change warning"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Late"
   - ▷ "Off": no warning is output for this setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Adjusting the strength of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Feedback via steering wheel"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is accepted for all Intelligent Safety Systems and saved for the current driver profile.

Vehicles with side collision warning: steering intervention on/off

Steering intervention can be separately switched on and off for Lane Change Warning or Lane Departure Warning.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Lane change warning"
6. "Steering intervention"

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror

Advance warning

The dimmed light in the exterior mirror indicates when vehicles are in the blind spot or are approaching from the rear.

Acute warning

If the turn indicator is activated while a vehicle is in the critical area, the steering wheel vibrates briefly and the light in the exterior mirror flashes brightly.

The warning is terminated when the other vehicle has left the critical area or the turn signal has been deactivated.

Vehicles with side collision warning

If there is no response to the steering wheel vibrating and a lane marking is crossed at speeds of up to 210 km/h, 130 mph, the system responds if necessary with a brief active steering intervention. The steering intervention helps to return the vehicle to its lane. Steering intervention can be felt at the steering wheel, and can be overridden manually at any time.

Flashing of light

A flashing light when the vehicle is unlocked indicates that the system is performing a self-test.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Upper speed limit

The system is temporarily disabled at speeds over approx. 250 km/h, 155 mph.

At speeds below approx. 250 km/h, 155 mph, the system once again responds according to the setting.

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

- ▷ Radar sensors, see page 48.
- ▷ For vehicles with side-collision warning: cameras, see page 47.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ If the speed of the approaching vehicle is significantly higher than the driver's own speed.
- ▷ On sharp bends or narrow roads.
- ▷ If the bumper is dirty, iced up or covered, for example by stickers.

In vehicles with side collision warning, the steering intervention may be limited in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ When there are missing, worn, poorly visible, merging/separating or ambiguous lane markings; for example, in areas where there are roadworks.
- ▷ If lane markings are covered by snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▷ If lane markings are not white.
- ▷ If lane markings are obscured by objects.
- ▷ If the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead.
- ▷ If the camera is impaired.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the Start/Stop button.

A Check Control message is displayed in the event of limited functionality.

The system cannot be switched on when the trailer socket is in use, for example when operating with a trailer or bicycle carrier. A Check Control message is shown.

Warning displays

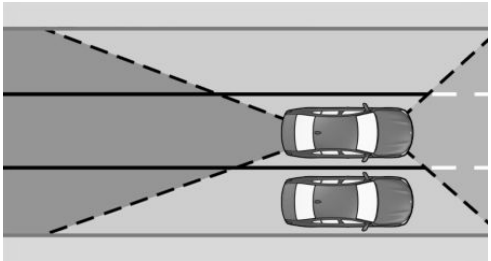
Depending on the selected setting for warnings, for example the warning time, it is possible that more or fewer warnings will be displayed. As a result, there may also be an increased number of premature warnings about critical situations.

Side collision warning

Principle

The system helps to avoid potential side collisions.

General



Radar sensors monitor the area adjacent to the vehicle from a minimum speed up to approximately 210 km/h, 130 mph.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems.

A front camera detects the position of the lane markings.

If another vehicle is detected adjacent to the vehicle – for example, with the potential of a side collision – the system helps the driver to avoid a collision. For this purpose, the system issues a warning in the form of the LED on the exterior mirror flashing and the steering wheel vibrating. The system may execute an active steering intervention.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Operating requirements

The lane markings must be detected by the camera in order for the side collision warning with steering intervention to be active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- ▷ Cameras behind the windscreen.
- ▷ Side radar sensors, front.
- ▷ Side radar sensors, rear.

For further information:

Sensors of the vehicle, see page 47.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The side collision warning is activated automatically at the start of a journey if the function was switched on the last time the engine was stopped.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

Switching off manually

Press and hold the button.

All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.
	Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.
	Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Adjusting the strength of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Feedback via steering wheel"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is accepted for all Intelligent Safety Systems and saved for the current driver profile.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror

Acute warning

In the event of imminent collision danger, the light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel starts vibrating.

A Check Control message is displayed at the same time.

An active steering intervention may be executed to avoid the collision and to keep the vehicle safely within its lane.

Steering intervention can be felt at the steering wheel, and can be overridden manually at any time.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

- ▷ Cameras, see page 47.
- ▷ Radar sensors, see page 48.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ If the speed of the approaching vehicle is significantly higher than the driver's own speed.
- ▷ On sharp bends or narrow roads.
- ▷ When there are missing, worn, poorly visible, merging/separating or ambiguous lane markings; for example, in areas where there are roadworks.
- ▷ If lane markings are covered by snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▷ If lane markings are not white.
- ▷ If lane markings are obscured by objects.
- ▷ If the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the Start/Stop button.

A Check Control message is displayed in the event of limited functionality.

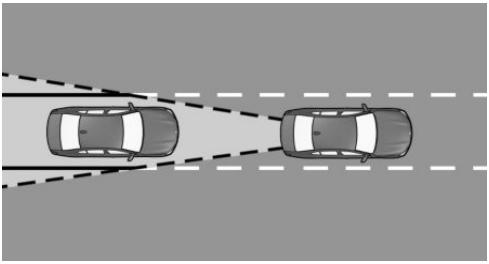
The system cannot be switched on when the trailer socket is in use, for example when operating with a trailer or bicycle carrier. A Check Control message is shown.

Rear collision prevention

Principle

The system responds to vehicles approaching from behind.

General



Radar sensors monitor the area behind the vehicle.

If a vehicle is approaching from behind at a relevant speed, the system responds as follows:

- ▷ The hazard warning lights are switched on to warn the traffic behind if there is a risk of a rear collision.
- ▷ Active Protection: if a collision appears unavoidable, PreCrash functions are triggered.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- Side radar sensors, rear.

For further information:

Sensors of the vehicle, see page 47.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

The system is deactivated in the following situations:

- When reversing.
- If the trailer socket is occupied, for example when operating with a trailer or bicycle carrier.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

Radar sensors, see page 48.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations:

- If the speed of the approaching vehicle is significantly higher than the driver's own speed.
- If the approaching vehicle is travelling slowly.

Road priority warning

Principle

The system provides support in situations where signs or light signal systems indicate that the driver must give way.

General

The system uses a camera to evaluate the road signs and light signal systems.

The navigation system forwards information regarding the route to the system.

A warning is given if a right-of-way is about to be violated in the following traffic situations, for example:

- At a junction.
- At a T-junction.
- On a slip road.
- At a roundabout.
- In the event of a red traffic light.

Starting from a variable minimum speed, the system issues warnings up to approximately 75 km/h, approx. 47 mph.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of acci-

dent. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Operating requirements

The road priority situation must be unambiguously directed by road signs or light signal systems.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

▷ Cameras behind the windscreen.

For further information:

Sensors of the vehicle, see page 47.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The road priority warning is activated automatically at the start of a journey if the function was switched on the last time the engine was stopped.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

Switching off manually

Press and hold the button.

All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.
	Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.
	Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"

4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Give way warning"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.
   - ▷ "Off": no warnings are displayed.

The selected setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Warning function

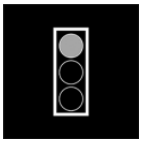
General

The system warns in two stages:

- ▷ Advance warning: visually by means of a warning symbol in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Acute warning: visually by means of a warning symbol in the instrument cluster and with an additional acoustic signal.

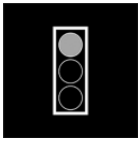
The timing of the warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation and the set warning time.

The following road signs are taken into account for the road priority warning:

Signs	Meaning
	Give way signs: These signs trigger an advance warning.
	Stop signs. These signs trigger an advance warning and an acute warning.
	An advance warning and an acute warning are triggered by red traffic lights.

Advance warning

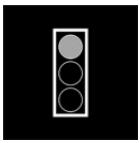
If there is a risk that road priority is about to be ignored, one of the following symbols appears in the instrument cluster:

Symbol	Meaning
	Give way.
	Stop.
	Red traffic light.

When a prior warning is issued, intervene as appropriate for the situation; for example, by braking.

Acute warning

If there is a serious risk that road priority is about to be ignored, a signal sounds and one of the following symbols appears in the instrument cluster:

Symbol	Meaning
	Stop.
	Red traffic light.

When an acute warning is issued, immediately intervene as appropriate for the situation; for example, by braking.

Display in the Head-Up Display

Depending on the equipment version, the warning is displayed in the Head-Up Display at the same time as in the instrument cluster.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

No Warning

The system provides no warning in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ In road priority situations without “Give Way” signs, “Stop” signs or red light signal systems.
- ▷ At crossings with light signal systems that illuminate yellow or green.

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

- ▷ Cameras, see page 47.

Function restriction

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ If signs or light signal systems are unclear.
- ▷ If road signs or light signal systems are fully or partially concealed or soiled.
- ▷ If road signs or light signal systems are difficult to read or rotated.
- ▷ If road signs or light signal systems are too small or too large.
- ▷ If traffic signs do not correspond to the standard.
- ▷ If road signs are detected that apply to a junction or parallel road.
- ▷ If the signs or road layouts are specific to one country.
- ▷ At crossings with flashing light signal systems.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- ▷ The system may not be available or may only be available to a limited extent is some countries.

Wrong-way driving warning

Principle

The system issues a warning if you are about to drive the wrong way, for example on motorways, roundabouts and one-way streets.

A warning is shown in the instrument cluster and, where applicable, in the Head-Up Display and an acoustic signal sounds as soon as a road is entered in the wrong direction of travel.

General

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the system will check the traffic situation based on navigation data and road signs.

The system will take into account road signs such as the following:

- ▷ No entry.
- ▷ Roundabout.
- ▷ Direction arrows: keep right/left signs.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Operating requirements

The road layout ahead must be unambiguously indicated by road signs.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

▷ Cameras behind the windscreen.

For further information:

Sensors of the vehicle, see page 47.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The wrong-way driving warning is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

Switching off manually

If all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off together via the button, the wrong-way driving warning is also switched off.

Press and hold the button.

The wrong-way driving warning and all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.
	Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.
	Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Warning function

A warning is shown in the instrument cluster and, where applicable, in the Head-Up Display and an acoustic signal sounds as soon as a motorway, roundabout or one-way street is entered in the wrong direction of travel.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

No Warning

The system provides no warning if the road layout is not indicated by road signs, for example.

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

- ▷ Cameras, see page 47.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality, or give no warnings at all, in situations such as the following:

- ▷ If the road signs are ambiguous.
- ▷ If the road signs are fully or partially covered or soiled.
- ▷ If the road signs are poorly visible or twisted.
- ▷ If the road signs are too small or too large.
- ▷ If traffic signs do not correspond to the standard.
- ▷ If road signs are detected that apply to a junction or parallel road.
- ▷ If the signs or road layouts are specific to one country.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- ▷ It may not be possible to use the system in all countries.

If your vehicle is equipped with the Emergency Stop Assistant

Principle

If the driver is no longer capable of driving, the system helps to bring the vehicle safely to a standstill.

General

The emergency stop function is not triggered automatically. The emergency stop function can only be triggered manually by the vehicle occupants.

If the system is activated, the vehicle is brought to a standstill within its own lane by means of tracking.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment and national-market version, the system may have a lane change function.

With lane change function: on motorways or similar roads, the system steers the vehicle to the hard shoulder if possible. On other roads or in heavy traffic, the vehicle is brought to a standstill in the lane it is currently in.

Overview

Parking brake

Operating requirements

- ▷ The function can be activated at speeds of. 10 km/h, approx. 6 mph to approx. 250 km/h, approx. 155 mph.
- ▷ Lane changes to other driving lanes are carried out at speeds from approximately 70 km/h, 43 mph to approximately 100 km/h, 62 mph.
- ▷ Lane changes to the hard shoulder are carried out at speeds from approximately 35 km/h, 22 mph to approximately 40 km/h, 25 mph.

Activating the emergency stop function

Briefly press the switch for the parking brake to activate the emergency stop function.

- ▷ With lane change function: when the switch is released, an automatic lane change is triggered if necessary.
- ▷ The system takes over vehicle control for a maximum of 2 minutes.
- ▷ The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- ▷ An emergency call is triggered.

Cancelling the emergency stop function

At any time during the process, the driver can cancel the emergency stop function by actively taking control of the vehicle.

For example, the emergency stop function can be cancelled in the following situations:

- ▷ When steering.
- ▷ On indicating.
- ▷ When accelerating.
- ▷ When the hazard warning lights are switched off.
- ▷ When the emergency call is cancelled.
- ▷ When the selector lever position is changed while at a standstill.
- ▷ When the driver's foot is still on the accelerator pedal when the function is triggered.
- ▷ When the parking brake switch is pressed.

When the vehicle is at a standstill

As soon as the vehicle is at a standstill, the system configures the following settings:

- ▷ Selector lever position P is engaged.
- ▷ Parking brake is applied.
- ▷ Interior light is switched on.
- ▷ Central locking system is unlocked.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Status
	Emergency stop function active.

Without lane change function:

Symbol	Status
	Steering wheel symbol green: If lane boundaries are detected, the system keeps the vehicle in the lane.
	Steering wheel symbol grey: Lane tracking interrupted briefly.
	Steering wheel symbol yellow: Lane marking driven over. If lane boundaries are detected, the system keeps the vehicle in the lane.
	Steering wheel symbol yellow: Hands are not around the steering wheel. System remains active.

Symbol	Status
	Red steering wheel symbol, acoustic signal: Hands are not around the steering wheel. Interruption of lane tracking is imminent.
	Red steering wheel symbol, acoustic signal: Lane tracking is switched off.

System limits

Only use the system if the driver is no longer to operate the vehicle.

The system cannot replace the kind of performance that would be delivered by a driver who is capable of driving.

Dynamic brake lights

Principle

The brake lights flash to warn road users behind the vehicle that an emergency braking manoeuvre is being performed. This can reduce the risk of a rear-end collision.

General

- ▷ Normal braking: brake lights illuminate.
- ▷ Heavy braking: brake lights flash.

Shortly before the vehicle comes to a standstill, the hazard warning lights are activated.

To switch off the hazard warning lights:

- ▷ Accelerate.
- ▷ Press the hazard warning lights button.

BMW Drive Recorder

Principle

The system saves short video recordings of the vehicle environment in order to document traffic conditions, for example.

In addition, the following journey parameters are saved:

- ▷ Date.
- ▷ Time.
- ▷ Speed.
- ▷ GPS coordinates.

General

There are various ways of saving video recordings.

- ▷ Automatic saving of recordings.

  The function makes it possible to document the circumstances of an accident.
- ▷ Manual saving of recordings.

  The function makes it possible to document traffic conditions.

The system records for up to 20 seconds before and after the save function is activated.

Cameras for assistance systems are used, for example Panorama View.

Data protection

The reliability of the recording and the use of video recordings depend on the legal regulations in the country where the system is to be used. The user is responsible for the use of the system and for complying with the provisions that apply in each case.

Before using for the first time, the vehicle manufacture recommends checking that there are no legal or official restrictions on using the system in

the state or country in question. Additionally, the legality of using the system should be checked at regular intervals, especially if the vehicle frequently crosses borders.

If anyone else drives the vehicle, he/she must be given information about the system. Information about the system must also be provided if the vehicle is passed on to anyone else.

Operating requirements

- ▷ BMW Drive Recorder is activated.
- ▷ Privacy Policy has been accepted.
- ▷ Recording type selected.
- ▷ Recording duration selected.

Activating/deactivating

The BMW Drive Recorder must be activated before using the recording function for the first time.

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. Accept Privacy Policy.
4. "Settings"
5. "Recording allowed"
6. Select the desired setting.

Recording functions

Automatic recording

The recording is saved automatically when the vehicle sensors detect an accident.

Manual recording

Using the button

Press and hold the button.

Via iDrive

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. "Start recording"

To cancel the recording: "Cancel".

The recording can also be started using the widget on the control display.

Playing and managing recordings

Saved video recordings can be played, exported and deleted.

For your own safety, the video recording is only shown on the control display if the speed is below approximately 3 km/h, approx. 2 mph. In the case of some national-market versions, the video recording is only shown with the parking brake applied or with the selector lever in position P.

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. "Saved recordings"
4. Select the desired recording.
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Play"
   - ▷ "Pause"
   - ▷ "Previous"
   - ▷ "Next"
   - ▷ "Export"
   - ▷ "Delete"

If the cameras switched during the recording, it is possible to select various video sections.

Settings

General

Various settings can be made.

Recording type

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. "Settings"
4. "RECORDING TYPE"
5. Select the desired setting:

- ▷ "Manually"
- ▷ "Automatically"
- ▷ "Manually" and "Automatically"

Recording duration

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. "Settings"
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Before trigger"
     Recording duration before an event.
   - ▷ "After trigger"
     Recording duration after an event.

Cameras

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. "Settings"
4. "Camera selection"
5. Select the desired camera.

In the event of an accident, the system switches to "All" cameras automatically.

If driver assistance systems are active, their camera views are selected automatically.

System limits

In the event of a serious accident, recordings may not be saved if, for example, the damage to the vehicle is too extensive or the power supply was interrupted.

Active Protection

Principle

In critical driving or collision situations, Active Protection prepares the vehicle occupants and the vehicle for a potential imminent accident.

General

Active Protection consists of different PreCrash functions which may vary depending on the equipment installed.

The system detects critical driving situations which could potentially lead to an accident. Such situations include:

- ▷ Full braking.
- ▷ Severe understeer.
- ▷ Severe oversteer.

Certain functions of some systems installed in the vehicle can – within the system's limits – cause Active Protection to trigger:

- ▷ Collision warning with braking function: automatic brake application.
- ▷ Front-end collision warning with light braking function: braking force assistance.
- ▷ Rear collision prevention: detection of potential rear collisions.

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations may mean that critical situations are not detected reliably or in good time. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Function

If fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belts are automatically tensioned when driving off.

In critical accident situations, the following individual functions become active as required:

- ▷ Automatic pre-tensioning of the front seat belts.

- ▷ Automatic closing of the windows, leaving just a small gap.
- ▷ Automatic closing of the panorama glass sunroof, including the sun guard.
- ▷ With comfort seat in the front: automatic positioning of the backrest of the front passenger seat.

If the critical driving situation passes without an accident occurring, the tension in the front seat belts is slackened again.

If the belt tension does not slacken automatically, stop the vehicle and unfasten the seat belt by pressing the red button on the buckle. Fasten the seat belt again before continuing your journey.

All other systems can be restored to the desired setting.

PostCrash – iBrake

Principle

The system can automatically bring the vehicle to a standstill in certain accident situations without the involvement of the driver. The risk of a further collision and its consequences can thereby be reduced.

At a standstill

Once the vehicle has come to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

Harder vehicle braking

In certain situations, it may be necessary to bring the vehicle to a standstill more quickly than is possible with automatic braking.

To do so, brake quickly and firmly. For a brief period, the braking pressure will be higher than that achieved with the automatic braking function. Automatic braking is interrupted.

Cancelling automatic braking

In certain situations, it may be necessary to cancel automatic braking, for example for an evasive manoeuvre.

Cancel automatic braking:

- ▷ By depressing the brake pedal.
- ▷ By depressing the accelerator pedal.

Attentiveness assistant

General

The system can detect decreasing attentiveness or the onset of fatigue in the driver on long monotonous journeys, for example on motorways. In such situations, the system recommends taking a break.

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess your physical condition correctly. Increasing inattention or fatigue might not be detected, or may not be detected in good time. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that you, as the driver, are rested and alert. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions.

Function

The system is switched on every time drive-ready state is switched on.

After commencement of the journey, the system adapts to the driver so that any decrease in attention or fatigue can be detected.

This process considers the following criteria:

- ▷ Personal driving style, for example steering.
- ▷ Driving conditions, for example time of day, duration of journey.

- Depending on the vehicle equipment: attentiveness of the driver through the Driver Attention Camera.

The system is active from approx. 70 km/h, 43 mph and can also display a recommendation to take a break.

Break recommendations

Adjusting

The attentiveness assistant is automatically active every time drive-ready state is switched on and can thus display break recommendations.

Break recommendations can also be switched on or off and adjusted via iDrive.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Attentiveness Assistant"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Standard": the break recommendation is given with a defined value.
   - "Sensitive": the break recommendation is given earlier.
   - "Off": no break recommendation is given.

Display

If the driver shows signs of decreasing attentiveness or of fatigue, a message is shown on the Control Display with the recommendation to take a break.

The following settings can be selected during the display.

After a break, another break recommendation cannot be displayed until after approximately 45 minutes at the earliest.

System limits

The system may have limited functionality in situations such as the following and an incorrect warning, or no warning at all, may be given:

- If the time is set incorrectly.
- When the speed is predominantly below approx. 70 km/h, 43 mph.
- If a sporty driving style is adopted, for example sharp acceleration or fast cornering.
- In active driving situations, for example frequent lane changes.
- In poor road conditions.
- In strong crosswinds.

The system is reset approximately 45 minutes after the vehicle is stopped, for example when taking a break during a long motorway journey.

Driving Stability Control Systems

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Anti-lock Brake System ABS

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when the brakes are applied.

Steering control is retained even during full braking, which enhances active road safety.

ABS is operational each time the engine is started.

Brake assist

When the brake pedal is depressed quickly, the system automatically applies maximum braking power. This keeps the stopping distance as short as possible in full braking situations. The advantages offered by the Anti-lock Brake System ABS can also be utilised to the full.

The pressure on the brake should be maintained for the duration of the full-braking process.

Adaptive brake assist

In conjunction with Active Cruise Control ACC, this system ensures that the brakes respond even more quickly when braking in critical situations.

Drive-off assistant

Principle

The system provides support when driving off on upward gradients.

Driving off

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approximately 2 seconds.

Depending on the vehicle's load or when towing a trailer, the vehicle may roll backwards a little.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC

Principle

The system reduces drive power and applies the brakes on individual wheels, thereby helping, within the limits imposed by physics, to keep the vehicle safely on course.

General

DSC detects the following unstable driving conditions, for example:

- ▷ Loss of traction at the rear which can lead to oversteer.
- ▷ Loss of grip at the front wheels which can lead to understeer.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

When driving with a roof load, for example with a roof rack, the higher centre of gravity can mean that driving safety is no longer guaranteed in critical driving situations. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Do not deactivate Dynamic Stability Control DSC when driving with a roof load.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

DSC OFF

Deactivate/activate DSC

General

Driving stability during acceleration and cornering is restricted if DSC is deactivated.

To assist driving stability, re-activate DSC as soon as possible.

Deactivating DSC

Hold the button down until DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.

Activating DSC

Press the button.

DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator lamps are extinguished.

Display

In the instrument cluster

DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster when DSC is deactivated.

Indicator and warning lamps

If the indicator lamp is illuminated: DSC is deactivated.

If the indicator lamp is flashing: DSC is regulating the acceleration and braking forces.

If the indicator lamp is illuminated: DSC has failed.

Dynamic Traction Control DTC

Principle

DTC is a variant of Dynamic Stability Control DSC and is optimised for forward momentum.

In special road conditions, for example on uncleared, snow-covered roads or on loose surfaces, the system ensures maximum forward momentum, but with restricted driving stability.

General

Activating DTC provides maximum traction. Driving stability assistance during acceleration and cornering is limited.

Activating DTC briefly may be useful in the following situations:

- When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- When starting in deep snow or on a loose surface.
- When driving with snow chains.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

DSC OFF

Activate/deactivate DTC

Activating DTC

Press the button.

TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.

Deactivating DTC

Press the button again.

TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator light are extinguished.

Display

Display in the instrument cluster

When DTC is activated, TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Indicator and warning lamps

The indicator lamp is illuminated: DTC has been activated.

Automatic program change

In certain situations, Dynamic Stability Control DSC is activated automatically:

- If Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC is activated.
- When the Intelligent Safety Systems are braking the vehicle.
- In the event of a flat tyre.

xDrive

Principle

xDrive is the all-wheel system of the vehicle. The interaction between xDrive and other drive control systems, such as Dynamic Stability Control DSC, further optimises traction and driving dynamics. xDrive distributes the drive forces variably between the front and rear axles according to the driving situation and road surface conditions.

The Driving Experience Control makes it possible to change the four-wheel drive distribution from traction-based to sport-based.

Efficient4x4 reduces consumption by using the all-wheel drive according to requirements.

Variable sport steering

The variable sport steering facilitates a direct and agile driving style with little steering effort. The variable sport steering works independently of

the current speed, varying the steering ratio in line which the steering angle.

Driver Assistance Systems

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Manual Speed Limiter

Principle

The system can be used to set a speed limit so that speed restrictions are not exceeded.

General

The system enables speeds from a value of 30 km/h/20 mph and above to be set as a speed limit. Below the set speed limit, the vehicle can be driven without restriction.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
LIM	System on/off.
SET	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assist: adopt the suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Change the speed limit.

Operation

Switching on

LIM Press the button on the steering wheel.

The current speed is adopted as the speed limit.

When switching on at a standstill or driving at low speed, 30 km/h/20 mph is set as the speed limit.

The speedometer marker is set to the current speed.

When the speed limit is activated, Dynamic Stability Control may be switched on and the driving mode may be changed.

Switching off

LIM Press the button on the steering wheel.

The system switches off automatically in the following situations, for example:

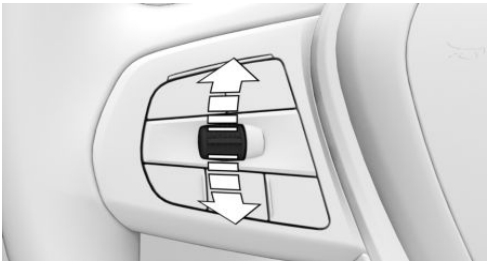
- ▷ When switching the engine off.
- ▷ When switching on Cruise Control.
- ▷ When activating some programs using the Driving Experience Control.

The displays turn off.

Interrupting

The system is interrupted in reverse or when rolling backwards at idle speed.

Change speed limit



Press the rocker switch repeatedly up or down until the desired speed is set.

- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the speed limit is increased or decreased by 1 km/h, 1 mph.
- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed beyond the resistance point, the speed limit changes to the next multiple of 10 km/h on the km/h display or the next multiple of 5 mph on the mph display in the speedometer.

If the set speed limit has been reached or unintentionally exceeded, for example when driving downhill, there is no active brake intervention.

If you set a speed during the journey which is below the current speed, the vehicle rolls to the set speed limit.

The current speed can also be stored by pressing the button:

Press the button on the steering wheel.

Exceeding the speed limit

The system gives a warning if the travelling speed exceeds the set speed limit.

You can intentionally exceed the speed limit. There is no warning in such a case.

To intentionally exceed the set speed limit, press the accelerator pedal all the way down.

The limit automatically becomes active again as soon as the current speed falls below the set speed limit.

Warning when the speed limit is exceeded

Visual warning

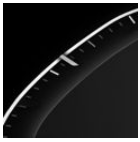
If the speed limit is exceeded: the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster flashes for as long as you exceed the set speed limit.

Acoustic warning

- ▷ A signal sounds if you inadvertently exceed the set speed limit.
- ▷ If the speed limit is reduced to below the driven speed during the journey, the warning sounds after a little time.
- ▷ If you intentionally exceed the speed limit by fully pressing the accelerator pedal, no warning sounds.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer



- ▷ Green marker: system is active.
- ▷ Grey mark: the system is interrupted.
- ▷ No marker: system is switched off.

Indicator lamp

- ▷ If the indicator lamp is illuminated: the system is switched on.
- ▷ If the indicator lamp is flashing: set speed limit is exceeded.
- ▷ Grey indicator lamp: the system is interrupted.

Cruise Control

Principle

This system allows a desired speed to be set using the buttons on the steering wheel. The desired speed is then maintained by the system. It does this by automatically accelerating and braking the vehicle as necessary.

General

The system can be activated from 30 km/h/20 mph.

Depending on the vehicle setting, the characteristics of Cruise Control may change in certain areas; for example, acceleration may change depending on the driving mode.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

The risk of an accident may increase if the system is used in certain situations, such as:

- ▷ On stretches of road with many corners and bends.
- ▷ In heavy traffic.
- ▷ If the road is icy, if there is fog or snow, in wet conditions or on a loose road surface.

There is a risk of accident or material damage. Only use the system if it is possible to drive at a constant speed.

WARNING

The desired speed may be set incorrectly by mistake or called up accidentally. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise Control on/off.
RESUME	To resume Cruise Control with last setting.
CANCEL	To interrupt Cruise Control.
SET	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assist: adopt the suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Set the speed.

Switching Cruise Control on/off

Switching on

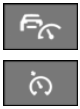
Depending on the equipment, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lamps are illuminated in the instrument cluster and the marker in the speedometer is positioned at the current speed.

Cruise Control is active. The driven speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off



Depending on the equipment, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.

The displays turn off. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting Cruise Control

Interrupting manually

Press the button while the system is activated.

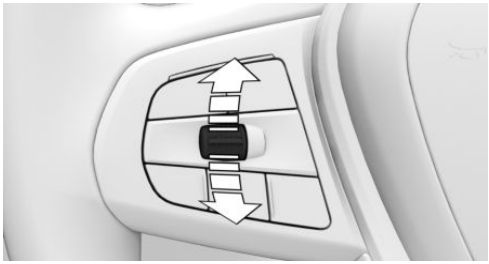
Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If the driver brakes.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: if the selector lever is moved out of selector lever position D.
- ▷ If Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated or Dynamic Stability Control DSC deactivated.
- ▷ If Dynamic Stability Control DSC intervenes.

Setting the speed

Maintaining and saving the speed



While the system is interrupted, press the rocker switch up or down once.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

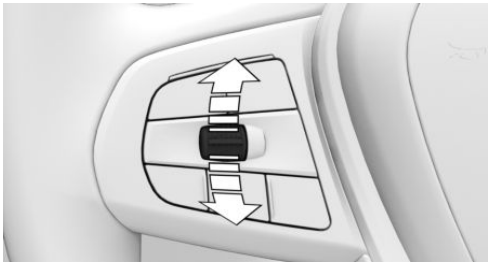
The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC is switched on, if necessary.

The speed can also be stored by pressing the button.

Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch repeatedly up or down until the desired speed is set.

If the system is active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle adjusts to the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed is increased or decreased by 1 km/h, 1 mph.
- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed beyond the resistance point, the desired speed changes to the next multiple of 10 km/h on the km/h display or the next multiple of 5 mph on the mph display in the speedometer.

  The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle and the set characteristics of the hybrid system.
- ▷ When the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point and then held there: the vehicle accelerates or decelerates without the need to press the accelerator pedal.

When the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains the final speed. Pressing beyond the resistance point accelerates the vehicle more rapidly.

Resuming Cruise Control

If Cruise Control is interrupted, it can be resumed by calling up the stored speed.

Before calling up the stored speed, make sure that the difference between the current speed and the stored speed is not too great. Otherwise, there may be unintentional braking or acceleration.

With the system interrupted, press the button.

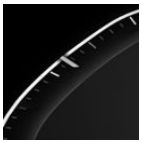
Cruise Control is resumed with the stored values.

In the following instances, the stored speed is deleted and therefore cannot be called up again:

- ▷ When the system is switched off.
- ▷ When drive-ready state is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer



- ▷ Green indicator: system is active, the indicator shows the desired speed.
- ▷ Grey mark: system is interrupted; the mark shows the stored speed.
- ▷ No marker: system is switched off.

Indicator lamp

- ▷ Green indicator lamp: the system is active.
- ▷ Grey indicator lamp: the system is interrupted.
- ▷ No indicator lamp: the system is switched off.

Displays in the Head-Up Display

Some information from the system can also be shown in the Head-Up Display.

The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed has been reached.

System limits

The desired speed is also maintained when driving downhill. The vehicle may drive slower than the desired speed on uphill gradients if there is not enough drive power.

Depending on the driving mode, it is possible that the vehicle will drive faster or slower than the desired speed setting in some situations; for example, on downward or upward gradients.

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC

Principle

This system allows you to set a desired speed and a desired distance from the vehicle in front, using the buttons on the steering wheel.

When the road ahead is clear, the system maintains the desired speed. The vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If there is a vehicle driving in front, the system adapts the speed of your vehicle in order to maintain the set distance from the vehicle ahead. The speed is adapted as far as the given situation allows.

General

Depending on the vehicle setting, the characteristics of Cruise Control may change in certain areas; for example, acceleration may change depending on the driving mode.

The distance can be set in several stages and for safety reasons is dependent on the respective speed.

If the vehicle ahead brakes to a standstill and sets off again shortly afterwards, the system is able to recognise this as far as the given conditions allow.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

⚠ WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example with a chock.

⚠ WARNING

The desired speed may be set incorrectly by mistake or called up accidentally. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of accident if the difference in speed relative to other vehicles is excessively high. This may occur, for example, in the following situations:

- ▷ When quickly approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- ▷ If another vehicle suddenly veers into the vehicle's own lane.
- ▷ When quickly approaching stationary vehicles.

There is a risk of injury or even death. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	With steering and lane control assistant: Cruise Control on/off.
MODE	With steering and lane control assistant: Select the function.
	Without steering and lane control assistant: Cruise Control on/off.
SET	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assist: adopt the suggested speed manually.
RES CANCEL	With steering and lane control assistant: To interrupt Cruise Control. To resume Cruise Control with last setting.

Button	Function
RESUME	Without steering and lane control assistant: To resume Cruise Control with last setting.
CANCEL	Without steering and lane control assistant: To interrupt Cruise Control.
	Increase the distance. Switch distance control on/off.
	Reduce the distance. Switch distance control on/off.
	Rocker switch: Set the speed.

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- ▷ Cameras behind the windscreen.
- ▷ Front radar sensor.

For further information:

Sensors of the vehicle, see page 47.

Use

The system can be used to optimum effect on well-constructed roads.

The minimum speed that can be set is 30 km/h/20 mph.

The maximum speed which can be set is limited and depends on the vehicle and its equipment, for example.

After toggling the Cruise Control without distance control, even higher desired speeds can be selected when driving with the internal combustion engine.

The system can also be activated when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Switching Cruise Control on/off and interrupting

With steering and lane control assistant: Assisted Driving Mode

General

The button is used to switch the set function on and off.

The button is used to set the primary function.

Setting the function

When the system is active, press the button until the desired function is selected in the toolbar. The Assisted Driving Mode function bar is shown at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

Symbol	Function
	Cruise control with distance control.
	Depending on equipment, cruise control with distance control and steering and lane control assistant.

The selected function is shown in green.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Switching on

With steering and lane control assistant:

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2.

Set Cruise Control if necessary.

Without steering and lane control assistant:

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lamps are illuminated in the instrument cluster and the marker in the speedometer is positioned at the current speed.

Cruise Control is active. The driven speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

When switching off with the vehicle at a standstill, depress the brake pedal at the same time.

Press the button on the steering wheel:

With steering and lane control assistant.

Without steering and lane control assistant.

The displays turn off. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

With the system active, press the button on the steering wheel:

RES CANCEL With steering and lane control assistant.

CANCEL Without steering and lane control assistant.

If interrupting the system when the vehicle is at a standstill, depress the brake pedal at the same time.

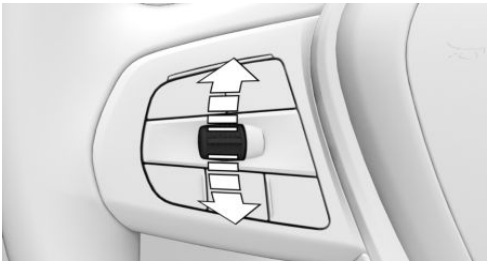
Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If the driver brakes.
- ▷ If the selector lever is moved out of position D.
- ▷ If Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated or Dynamic Stability Control DSC deactivated.
- ▷ If Dynamic Stability Control DSC intervenes.
- ▷ If the vehicle is stationary and the seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
- ▷ If the system has not detected any objects for an extended period of time, for example on roads with little traffic and without defined boundaries.
- ▷ If the detection zone of the radar is disrupted, for example due to contamination or heavy rainfall.
- ▷ After an extended stationary period, if the vehicle was decelerated to a standstill by the system.

Setting the speed

Maintaining and saving the speed



While the system is interrupted, press the rocker switch up or down once. The system is activated.

The current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

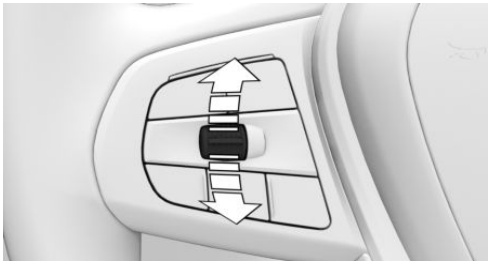
The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC is switched on, if necessary.

The speed can also be stored by pressing the button.

SET Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch repeatedly up or down until the desired speed is set.

If the system is active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle adjusts to the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed is increased or decreased by 1 km/h, 1 mph.
- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed beyond the resistance point, the desired speed changes to the next multiple of 10 km/h on the km/h display or the next multiple of 5 mph on the mph display in the speedometer.

To repeat an action, hold the rocker switch in the relevant position.

Adjusting the distance

General

The distance setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations may mean that braking is performed too late. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Pay close attention to the traffic conditions at all times. Adapt the distance to suit traffic and weather conditions and comply with the prescribed safe distance by braking if necessary.

Reducing the distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The selected distance is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Increasing the distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The selected distance is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Adapting distance automatically

Depending on the equipment and national-market version: the system can be configured so that the distance is adapted automatically within the set distance setting according to the traffic situation or environmental factors, for example poor visibility.

The adaptation of the distance is indicated in the instrument cluster display.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Speed Assistant"
6. "Adjust distance acc. to situation"

Resuming Cruise Control

If Cruise Control is interrupted, it can be resumed by calling up the stored speed.

Before calling up the stored speed, make sure that the difference between the current speed and the stored speed is not too great. Otherwise, there may be unintentional braking or acceleration.

With the system interrupted, press the button on the steering wheel:

With steering and lane control assistant.

Without steering and lane control assistant.

Cruise Control is resumed with the stored values.

In the following instances, the stored speed is deleted and therefore cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When drive-ready state is switched off.

Switching between Cruise Control with/without distance control

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not respond to traffic travelling in front of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions and brake if necessary.

Switching the Cruise Control mode

Switch Cruise Control without distance control on and off:

- Press and hold the button.
- Press and hold the button.

With steering and lane control assistant: switch on distance control:

Press the button.

Without steering and lane control assistant: switch on distance control:

- Press the button.
- Press the button.

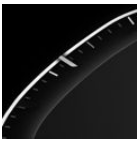
A Check Control message is then displayed.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary.

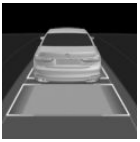
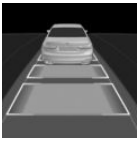
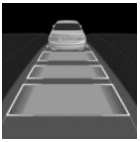
Display in the speedometer

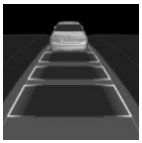


- Green indicator: system is active, the indicator shows the desired speed.
- Grey mark: system is interrupted; the mark shows the stored speed.
- No marker: system is switched off.

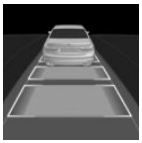
Vehicle distance

The selected distance to the vehicle ahead is displayed.

Symbol	Description
	Distance 1.
	Distance 2.
	Distance 3. Corresponds to approximately half of the value of the speedometer reading, expressed in metres. Selected when the system is switched on for the first time.

Symbol	Description
	Distance 4.
	No display of distance control because the accelerator pedal is being pressed.

Detected vehicle

Symbol	Description
	Green symbol: Vehicle ahead detected.

When the distance to the detected vehicle increases, the vehicle symbol in the distance display moves away.

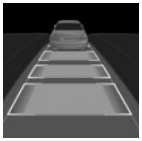
If necessary, drive off yourself, for example by pressing the accelerator pedal or rocker switch.

Indicator and warning lamps

Symbol	Description
	White vehicle symbol: No display of distance control because the accelerator pedal is being pressed.
	Green symbol: Vehicle ahead detected. The vehicle symbol goes out if no vehicle in front is detected. Vehicle symbol flashes green: Preceding vehicle has driven off.
	Grey symbol: System interrupted.
	Symbol flashes grey: The requirements for system operation are no longer being met. The system has been deactivated but will continue to brake until you actively take over by depressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
	Vehicle symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: Brake and take evasive action if necessary.

Alternative displays

Symbol	Description
	Green indicator lamp: the system is active. No indicator lamp: the system is switched off.
	Vehicle symbol flashes: The requirements for system operation are no longer being met. The system has been deactivated but will continue to brake until you actively take over by depressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

Symbol	Description
	Vehicle symbol and distance bar flash red and an acoustic signal sounds: Brake and take evasive action if necessary.
	System interrupted.

Displays in the Head-Up Display

Desired speed

Some information from the system can also be shown in the Head-Up Display.

The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed has been reached.

Distance information

The symbol is shown if the distance from the vehicle in front is too close.

The distance information is active under the following circumstances:

- ▷ Active Cruise Control switched off.
- ▷ Display in the Head-Up Display selected.

  Head-Up Display, see page 196.
- ▷ Distance too close.
- ▷ Speed above approximately 70 km/h, 40 mph.

Preventing overtaking

This function helps to prevent inadvertent overtaking on motorways.

Depending on the equipment and the national-market version, the system can be configured to prevent overtaking in the slower driving lane.

The setting applies to speeds over 80 km/h/50 mph.

If the set speed is significantly higher than the speed in the adjacent lane, it may be possible to pass or overtake other vehicles even if the function is switched on.

At speeds below 80 km/h/50 mph, vehicles on motorways are only overtaken with an adapted differential speed.

The driver can overtake or accelerate at any time by pressing the accelerator pedal.

Switching the function on/off:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Speed Assistant"
6. ▷ "Avoid overtaking at the left side"
   ▷ "Avoid overtaking on the right"

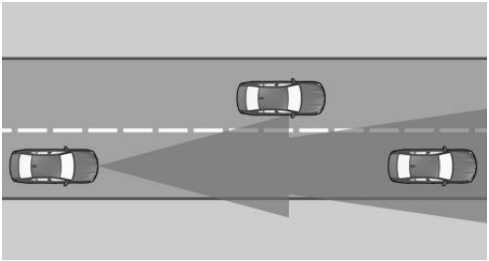
System limits

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

- ▷ Cameras, see page 47.
- ▷ Radar sensors, see page 48.

Detection range



The system's detection capability and automatic braking capacity are limited.

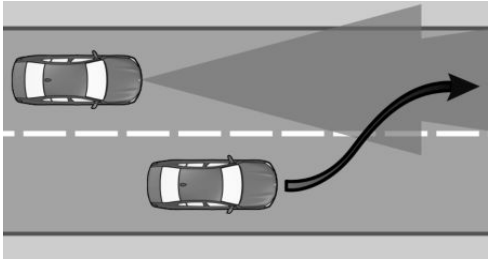
For example two-wheeled vehicles may not be detected.

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:

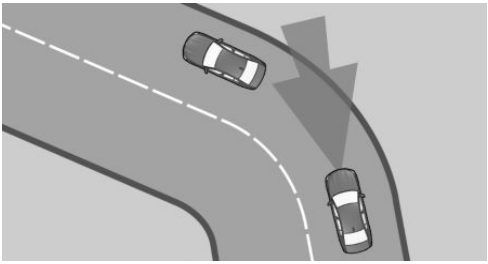
- ▷ For pedestrians or similarly slow road users.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment, at red traffic lights.
- ▷ For crossing traffic.
- ▷ For oncoming vehicles.

Vehicles cutting in



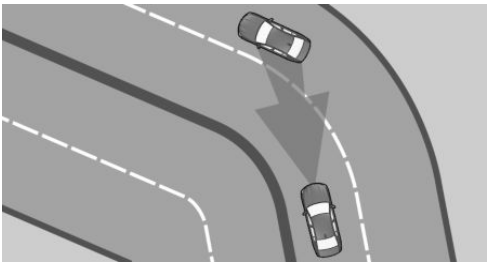
If another vehicle suddenly cuts in front of you, the system might not be able to restore the selected distance automatically. In some circumstances, it may also not be possible to restore the selected distance if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles in front, for example when rapidly approaching a lorry. If a vehicle is clearly detected in front of you, the system prompts you to intervene by braking, and if necessary by taking evasive action.

Cornering



If the desired speed is too high for cornering, it will be reduced slightly in the bend. However, the system may not detect bends in advance, so moderate your speed when cornering.

The system has a limited detection range. Situations can arise on tight bends where a vehicle driving in front will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When your vehicle is approaching a bend, the angle of the bend may cause the system to respond temporarily to vehicles in the other lane. If the system responds by decelerating the vehicle, you may compensate for this by accelerating briefly. When the accelerator pedal is released again, the system will resume control of the vehicle's speed.

Driving off

The vehicle cannot drive off automatically in some situations, for example:

- ▷ On steep upward gradients.
- ▷ Before bumps or rises in the road.
- ▷ When towing a heavy trailer.

In such cases, press the accelerator pedal.

Weather

The following restrictions may apply if the weather or lighting conditions are unfavourable:

- ▷ Impaired detection of vehicles.
- ▷ Brief interruptions when vehicles have already been detected.

Pay attention when driving and respond to the prevailing traffic conditions. If necessary, intervene actively, for example by braking, steering or taking evasive action.

Drive power

The desired speed is also maintained when driving downhill. The vehicle may drive slower than the desired speed on uphill gradients if there is not enough drive power.

Depending on the driving mode, it is possible that the vehicle will drive faster or slower than the desired speed setting in some situations; for example, on downward or upward gradients.

Speed Limit Assist

Principle

When the systems in the vehicle, for example Speed Limit Info, detect a change in the speed limit, it is possible to adopt this new speed limit value for the following systems:

- ▷ Manual Speed Limiter.
- ▷ Cruise Control.
- ▷ Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC.

The speed value is proposed as a new desired speed for adopting. The relevant system must be activated for the speed value to be adopted.

Depending on the equipment, the destination system and the national-market version, it may be possible for the value to be adopted automatically.

Traffic light detection: Speed Limit Assist controls the speed when the vehicle approaches red traffic lights.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

⚠ WARNING

The desired speed may be set incorrectly by mistake or called up accidentally. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
SET	Adopt the suggested speed manually. Traffic light detection: accept the detected traffic lights manually.
	Rocker switch: Set the speed; see Cruise Control.

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"

5. "Speed Assistant"
6. "Speed limits"
7. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Adjust automatically": the detected speed limit is adopted automatically.

     Traffic light detection: detected traffic lights are accepted automatically if possible.
   - ▷ "Adjust manually": the detected speed limit can be adopted manually.

     Traffic light detection: detected traffic lights can be accepted manually.
   - ▷ "Show anticipation": detected speed limits are displayed in the instrument cluster without being adopted.
   - ▷ "Off": Speed Limit Assist is switched off.

     Other proactive comfort functions – the route-ahead assistant, for example – may be switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

A message is displayed in the instrument cluster if the system and Cruise Control are switched on.

Symbol	Function
ASSIST	Depending on the vehicle equipment, the indicator lamp illuminates green, together with the symbol for a cruise control system: Speed Limit Assist is active and detected speed limits can be adopted manually for the displayed system.
60	Detected change in speed limit detected with immediate effect. Distance information shown alongside the symbol indicates there might be a change in the speed limit up ahead.
SET	Indicator lamp is illuminated green: the detected speed limit can be adopted with the SET button. Traffic light detection: the detected traffic lights can be accepted with the SET button. A green tick is displayed once it has been adopted.

Automatic adoption

In automatic mode, a detected speed limit is automatically adopted for Cruise Control.

SET Press the button to switch back to the last value set.

Traffic light detection: detected traffic lights are accepted automatically if possible.

Manual adoption

A detected speed limit can be applied to Cruise Control manually.

Traffic light detection: detected traffic lights can be accepted manually.

SET When the SET symbol is illuminated, press the button.

Speed adjustment

Principle

It is possible to set whether the speed limit will be accepted exactly, or with a tolerance.

General

It is possible to set a speed adjustment for all speeds and an additional speed adjustment for speeds up to 60 km/h/40 mph.

The additional speed adjustment for speeds up to 60 km/h/40 mph can be activated or deactivated.

Adjusting

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Speed Assistant"
6. Perform the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Adjust speed limits": set tolerance for speed adjustment with an effect on all speeds.
   - ▷ "2nd adjustment up to": activate or deactivate additional speed adjustment.
   - ▷ "Adjust speed limits": if additional speed adjustment is activated, set a tolerance for speeds up to 60 km/h/40 mph.

Adapting to the route

Principle

The system can be set so that it adapts the speed automatically to the route.

For example, the speed is reduced in the following situations if necessary:

- ▷ Before turning off.
- ▷ Before a roundabout.
- ▷ Before a bend.

Adjusting

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Speed Assistant"
6. "Adjust to route"

Traffic light detection

Principle

Speed Limit Assist controls the speed when the vehicle approaches red traffic lights.

General

The camera near the interior mirror is used to detect red traffic lights.

If necessary, the system also takes into account information that has been saved in the navigation system.

Detected red traffic lights are displayed in the instrument cluster and, depending on the setting, can be taken into account by Speed Limit Assist either manually or automatically during the journey.

Overview

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- ▷ Cameras behind the windscreen.

For further information:

Sensors of the vehicle, see page 47.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC is activated.
- ▷ Speed up to approx. 80 km/h, approx. 50 mph.

▷ The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is being driven.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Driving"
5. "Speed Assistant"
6. Select the desired setting:
   ▷ "Consider traffic lights"

Additional settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Driving"
5. "Traffic light recognition"
6. Select the desired settings:
   ▷ "Display traffic light phases": when the vehicle is stopped at traffic lights, the detected phase of the lights can be displayed in the instrument cluster.
   ▷ "Drive off reminder": when the drive off reminder is activated, a visual and, where applicable, an acoustic indication is provided as soon as the traffic light turns to green and it is possible to continue driving.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Meaning
	Red traffic light detected. As soon as it has been adopted and a green tick is displayed, the vehicle brakes to a standstill.
	Green traffic light detected.
	Green traffic light: the system is interrupted. If the grey traffic light is displayed with a red cross, this cannot be offered as an option for adopting.

System limits

Speed Limit Assist based on the Speed Limit Info system.

Take into account the Speed Limit Info system limits.

Depending on the country, information on speed limits ahead may not be available for acceptance or may only be available to a limited extent, for example with speed information from the navigation system.

Cruise Control without distance control: depending on the system, it may not be possible to adopt speed limits automatically.

Speed limits that are ahead may only be adopted for Active Cruise Control ACC.

The system may not respond properly to the route if the position of the vehicle cannot be clearly determined by the navigation system.

The traffic light detection system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

▷ If traffic lights are concealed, for example by other vehicles.

- At a road junction with multiple lanes where there are several sets of traffic lights.

For further information:

- Limits of the Speed Limit Information system, see page 193.
- System limits of the sensors, see page 47.

Steering and lane control assistant

Principle

The system helps the driver keep the vehicle in lane. To do this, the system assists by performing steering movements, for example when cornering.

General

Depending on the speed, the system orientates itself using the lane markings and vehicles driving in front.

Sensors on the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Steering and lane control assistant including traffic jam assistant on/off.
MODE	Set the function.

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windscreen.
- Front radar sensor.
- Side radar sensors, front.
- Side radar sensors, rear.

For further information:

Sensors of the vehicle, see page 47.

Operating requirements

- Speed under 210 km/h/130 mph.
- The driving path is sufficiently wide.
- Above 70 km/h, 43 mph: lane demarcations are detected on both sides.
- Below 70 km/h, 43 mph: lane markings on both sides or a vehicle driving in front is/are detected.
- Hands on the steering wheel.
- Sufficient corner radius.
- Driving in the centre of the lane.
- Turn indicator switched off.
- The sensor system calibration process is complete.
- Cruise Control with distance control active.
- Seat belt on the driver's side fastened.
- Collision warning active.
- Pedestrian warning active.
- Side collision warning active.

Switching on/off

Assisted Driving Mode

General

The button is used to switch the set function on and off.

The button is used to set the primary function.

Setting the function

When the system is active, press the button until the desired function is selected in the toolbar. The Assisted Driving Mode function bar is shown at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

Symbol	Function
	Cruise control with distance control.
	Depending on equipment, cruise control with distance control and steering and lane control assistant.

The selected function is shown in green.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Switching on

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2.

Adjust the steering and lane control assistant if necessary.

Steering wheel symbol illuminates grey.

System is on standby and does not make any steering movements.

The system activates automatically when all operating requirements are met.

Steering wheel symbol illuminates green.

The system is active.

When the system switched on, the person warning with light braking function and the side collision warning are active.

Switching off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The display is no longer illuminated.

The system does not execute any supporting steering movements.

Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ At a speed above 210 km/h/130 mph.
- ▷ When the steering wheel is released.
- ▷ If the driver brakes.
- ▷ When the steering wheel is turned sharply.
- ▷ When leaving your own lane.
- ▷ With the turn indicator switched on.
- ▷ When the lane is too narrow.
- ▷ If no lane marking has been detected for a certain time and there is no vehicle driving in front.
- ▷ If Active Cruise Control ACC is interrupted.
- ▷ If the seat belt on the driver's side is unfastened.

Steering wheel symbol illuminates grey.

System is on standby and does not make any steering movements.

The system activates automatically when all operating requirements are met.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Steering wheel symbol grey: System on standby.
	Steering wheel symbol green: System is activated. The system is helping the driver keep the vehicle in lane.
	Yellow flashing steering wheel symbol: Lane marking driven over. The steering wheel vibrates where applicable.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol and an acoustic signal, if applicable: System interruption is imminent.
	Steering wheel symbol flashes red, signal sounds: System is switching off.
	Steering wheel symbol yellow: Hands are not around the steering wheel. System remains active.
	Red steering wheel symbol, acoustic signal: Hands are not around the steering wheel. System interruption is imminent. The system reduces the speed to a standstill if applicable. It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements.

Alternative displays

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary and are indicated as follows:

Symbol	Description
	Steering wheel symbol grey: System on standby.
	Steering wheel symbol green: System is activated.
	Depending on the equipment, steering wheel symbol flashes yellow: Lane marking driven over. The steering wheel vibrates where applicable.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol and an acoustic signal, if applicable: System interruption is imminent.
	Depending on the equipment, steering wheel symbol flashes red, signal sounds: System is switching off.
	Green steering wheel symbol and lane marking symbol: The system is helping the driver keep the vehicle in lane.

Symbol	Description
	Steering wheel symbol yellow: Hands are not around the steering wheel. System remains active.
	Red steering wheel symbol, acoustic signal: Hands are not around the steering wheel. System interruption is imminent. It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements. With Active Cruise Control the system will reduce the speed if applicable.

Displays on the steering wheel

The two LEDs above the button fields are illuminated in the same way as the displays in the instrument cluster:

- ▷ Yellow: system interruption is imminent.
- ▷ Red: system is deactivated.

The steering wheel displays can be switched on/off if required.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Feedback via steering wheel"
5. "Lighting elements"

Displays in the Head-Up Display

All the system information can also be displayed in the Head-Up Display.

System limits

General

The system cannot be activated or used sensibly in certain situations.

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

- ▷ Cameras, see page 47.
- ▷ Radar sensors, see page 48.

Hands on the steering wheel

In the following situations, contact between the driver's hands and the steering wheel is not detected by the sensors:

- ▷ Driving when wearing gloves.
- ▷ Covers on the steering wheel.

Narrow lanes

The system cannot be activated or used sensibly when driving in narrow lanes, for example in the following situations:

- ▷ At road works.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment, where there are emergency lanes.
- ▷ In built-up areas.

Weather

The following restrictions may apply if the weather or lighting conditions are unfavourable:

- ▷ Impaired detection of vehicles and lane markings.
- ▷ Brief interruptions when vehicles have already been detected.

Pay attention when driving and respond to the prevailing traffic conditions. If necessary, intervene actively, for example by braking, steering or taking evasive action.

Driver Attention Camera

Pay attention to the traffic conditions at all times.

The Driver Attention Camera detects that the driver is looking at the traffic.

The Driver Attention Camera may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ If the Driver Attention Camera is covered by the steering wheel rim.
- ▷ If the driver is wearing sunglasses that block infrared light.

Assisted Driving Plus

Principle

Assisted Driving Plus helps the driver to control the vehicle in traffic queues.

Steering assistance takes place without the driver actively steering.

General

The system uses the sensors of the steering and lane control assistant.

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic conditions, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

The information for the steering and lane control assistant also applies.

For further information:

Steering and lane control assistant, see page 268.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Operating requirements of the steering and lane control assistant are met.

  Operating requirements, see page 268.
- ▷ The steering and lane control assistant is active.
- ▷ The function is only available on certain road types, for example motorways.
- ▷ Driving on a road without pedestrians or cyclists.
- ▷ The driving path is sufficiently wide.
- ▷ Lane markings and a vehicle ahead are detected.
- ▷ Speed under approximately 60 km/h/approx. 40 mph.
- ▷ The Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster detects that the driver is looking at the traffic.
- ▷ During journeys in countries outside the vehicle's country of origin, Assisted Driving Plus must be available in the country in question.

Switching on

ASSIST PLUS

As soon as all of the operating requirements have been met, Assisted Driving Plus is displayed as an additional symbol in the function bar. The function bar is shown at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

Select Assisted Driving Plus with the button on the steering wheel.

The symbol for Assisted Driving Plus is shown in green.

Two green LEDs are illuminated on the steering wheel.

The indicator lamp is shown in green in the instrument cluster.

The system starts to help the driver to control the vehicle.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
ASSIST PLUS	Green indicator lamp: the system is active.
ASSIST PLUS READY	White indicator lamp: the system is ready.
ASSIST PLUS	Grey indicator lamp: the system is interrupted.

Alternative displays

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary and are indicated as follows:

Indicator lamp	Description
	Green indicator lamp: the system is active.

Displays on the steering wheel

The two LEDs above the button fields are illuminated in the same way as the displays in the instrument cluster:

- ▷ Green: the system is active.
- ▷ Yellow: the system has been interrupted.
- ▷ Red: the system is deactivated.

System limits

The system limits for the steering and lane control assistant apply.

Depending on the equipment version: lane change assistant

Principle

The system provides the driver with additional support when changing lanes on multi-lane roads.

General

The system uses the sensors of the steering and lane control assistant.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

The information for the steering and lane control assistant also applies.

For further information:

Steering and lane control assistant, see page 268.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Operating requirements of the steering and lane control assistant are met.

  Operating requirements, see page 268.
- ▷ Driving on a road without pedestrians or cyclists and with physical barriers to oncoming vehicles, for example crash barriers.
- ▷ Lane marking detected.
- ▷ Maximum speed 180 km/h, 110 mph.
- ▷ The minimum speed is country-specific.

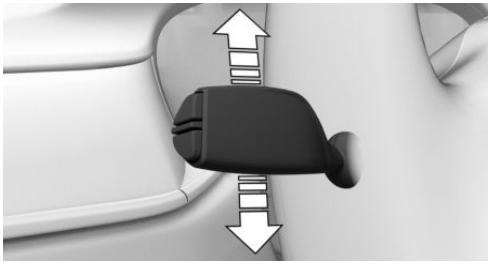
Switching lane change assistance on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Steering Assistant"
6. "Lane Change Assistant"

Changing lanes

1. Ensure that the traffic situation permits a lane change.
2. Push the turn indicator lever in the desired direction as far as the resistance point to indicate briefly.

   After a short period, steering assistance in the desired direction is noticeable.



After the lane change, the system helps the driver keep the vehicle in lane.

Cancelling a lane change

The lane change can be cancelled by steering in the opposite direction.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Green steering wheel symbol. Green arrow symbol for lane-changing. The system carries out a lane change.
	Green steering wheel symbol. Grey line for lane marking on the appropriate side. The system detected the lane change request. Lane change not currently possible.
	Depending on country specifications: Green steering wheel symbol. Grey arrow symbol for lane-changing. Lane change not possible; operating requirements not met.

Alternative displays

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary and are indicated as follows:

Symbol	Description
	Green steering wheel symbol. Grey line for lane marking on the appropriate side. Green arrow symbol for lane-changing. The system carries out a lane change.
	Green steering wheel symbol. Grey line for lane marking on the appropriate side. No arrow symbol for lane-changing on the display. The system detected the lane change request. Lane change not currently possible.
	Depending on country specifications: Green steering wheel symbol. Grey line for lane marking on the appropriate side. Grey arrow symbol for lane-changing. Lane change not possible; operating requirements not met.

System limits

The system limits for the steering and lane control assistant apply.

Depending on the equipment version: automatic formation of emergency lane

Principle

The system can help the driver to form an emergency lane in the event of traffic queues on motorways or similar roads.

As soon as the system detects a traffic queue, a Check Control message appears on the control display. Depending on the situation, the vehicle will be steered to the right or left within the current driving lane in order to form an emergency lane.

General

The system uses the sensors of the steering and lane control assistant.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

The information for the steering and lane control assistant also applies.

For further information:

Steering and lane control assistant, see page 268.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Steering and lane control assistant is activated.
- ▷ Traffic queue detected.
- ▷ Driving on a motorway or a similar road.
- ▷ Lane boundary detected.
- ▷ The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is being driven.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Driving"
5. "Steering Assistant"
6. "Emergency Corridor Assistant"

Displays in the instrument cluster

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the situations for the automatic formation of emergency lanes are displayed in the Assisted Driving View in the instrument cluster.

For further information:

Assisted Driving View, see page 172.

System limits

The system limits for the steering and lane control assistant apply.

Depending on the equipment version: lane change with active route guidance

Principle

The system supports the driver when it is necessary to change lanes in order to reach a destination.

General

The system uses the sensors of the steering and lane control assistant.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

The information for the Active Cruise Control and the steering and lane control assistant also applies.

For further information:

- ▷ Active Cruise Control, see page 255.
- ▷ Steering and lane control assistant, see page 268.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Active Cruise Control is activated.
- ▷ Driving on a motorway or a similar road.
- ▷ Lane boundary detected on the side of the desired lane change.
- ▷ Navigation system: route guidance is activated.
- ▷ Adaptation to the route details is switched on.
- ▷ The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is being driven.

Changing lanes

1. One or more lane changes are required in order to reach a destination.

   The system prepares for this lane change. To do this, the system identifies a suitable gap in the flow of traffic in the adjacent lane.
2. When a gap has been found, the speed is adapted so the vehicle stays level with the gap.
3. A lane change suggestion is displayed with a Check Control message.
4. If the traffic situation permits a lane change, the driver can steer the vehicle into the adjacent lane.

   If the vehicle is equipped with the lane change assistant: once the Check Control message has been displayed, a lane change can be initiated by operating the turn indicator.

   Depending on the national-market version and the traffic situation, the system will carry out the subsequent lane changes.

Display in the instrument cluster

The suggestion for the lane change is displayed and a green tick indicates that the function is active.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the traffic situation is displayed in the Assisted Driving View in the instrument cluster.

For further information:

Assisted Driving View, see page 172.

Switching on adaptation to route details

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Speed Assistant"
6. "Adjust to route"

System limits

The system limits for the Active Cruise Control and the steering and lane control assistant apply.

Park assistance systems

Principle

The park assistance systems support the driver when parking and manoeuvring.

General

The parking assistance systems include the following individual systems.

For further information:

- ▷ Park Distance Control, PDC, see page 278.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment version: emergency braking function, Active PDC, see page 281.
- ▷ Lateral parking aid, see page 282.
- ▷ Without Surround View: Reversing Assist camera, see page 283.
- ▷ Park Assistant, see page 286.
- ▷ Park Assist, leaving a parking space, see page 290.
- ▷ Reversing assistant, see page 291.
- ▷ Surround View with Reversing Assist camera, see page 293.
- ▷ Panorama View, see page 298.
- ▷ Remote 3D View, see page 300.
- ▷ Crossing traffic warning, see page 301.

Park Distance Control PDC

Principle

PDC provides assistance when parking the vehicle. Objects in front of or behind the vehicle as it slowly approaches are indicated by means of acoustic signals and a display on the Control Display.

Depending on the equipment: obstacles at the side of the vehicle that are detected by the side ultrasonic sensors may also be reported by the lateral parking aid function.

General

The range of the system is approximately 2 m, 6 ft, depending on the obstacle and environmental factors.

An acoustic warning is given when the vehicle is approx. 70 cm, 27 in away from an object and a collision is imminent.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is given sooner, at a distance of approx. 1.50 m, 5 ft.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle is travelling at high speed when Park Distance Control PDC is activated, the warning may be delayed due to the physical conditions. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Avoid approaching an object at speed. Avoid moving off at speed while Park Distance Control PDC is not yet active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park Assistant button

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment: side ultrasonic sensors.

For further information:

Sensors of the vehicle, see page 47.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If selector lever position R is engaged while the engine is running.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment version: when approaching detected obstacles, if the speed is below approximately 4 km/h, 2.5 mph. The distance from the obstacle at which the system activates depends on the individual situation.

Automatic activation on detection of obstacles can be enabled and disabled.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Parking and manoeuvring"
5. If necessary, "Automatic PDC activation"
6. "Automatic PDC activation"

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Depending on the equipment version, a respective camera view is switched on additionally.

Automatic deactivation when moving forwards

The system switches off once a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

Switching on/off manually

Press the Park Assistant button.

- ▷ On: the LED is illuminated.
- ▷ Off: the LED is extinguished.

The image from the rear-view camera is shown when reverse gear is engaged and the Park Assistant button is pressed.

Depending on the equipment, the system cannot be switched off manually when reverse gear is engaged.

Warning

Acoustic signals

General

An intermittent sound indicates that the vehicle is approaching an object. For instance, if an object is identified to the rear left of the vehicle, the acoustic signal is emitted from the rear left loudspeaker.

The shorter the distance to an object, the shorter the intervals become.

A continuous tone sounds if the distance to a detected object is less than approximately 20 cm, 8 in.

If there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle at the same time, and they are at a distance of less than approximately 20 cm, 8 in, an alternating continuous tone sounds.

Steptronic transmission: the intermittent tone and the continuous tone are switched off when selector lever position P is engaged.

The intermittent sound switches off a short while after the vehicle comes to a standstill.

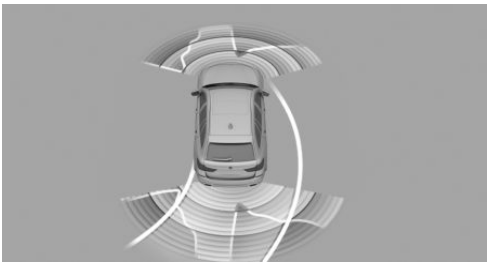
Volume control

The PDC acoustic signal volume can be adjusted.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Parking and manoeuvring"
5. "Volume PDC signal"
6. Set the desired value.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Visual warning



The vehicle's approach to an object is shown on the Control Display. Objects that are further away are already displayed before an acoustic signal is given.

The display appears as soon as PDC is activated.

The recording range of the sensors is shown in green, yellow and red if obstacles are detected within the range.

Driving path lines are displayed for better estimation of the space required.

If the rear-view camera image is shown, it is possible to change over to PDC or, if required, to another view with obstacle markings:

1. If necessary, push the Controller to the left.
2. For example "Parking sensors"

Crossing traffic warning: depending on the equipment, the PDC display also warns of vehicles approaching from the sides at the front and rear.

For further information:

Crossing traffic warning, see page 301.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Towing a trailer

The rear PDC functions are switched off when the trailer socket is in use or when towing a trailer.

A white symbol is shown.

Depending on the equipment, the detection range of the sensors is shown dark on the Control Display.

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

▷ Ultrasonic sensors, see page 49.

Limits of the ultrasound measurement

Certain conditions and objects may push ultrasound measurement to its physical limits, including the following:

- ▷ Obstacles and people at the edge of the lane.
- ▷ Low objects already indicated, for example kerbs, may enter the sensors' blind areas before or after a continuous tone is given.

False alarms

If the system is approaching its limits, false alarms may occur.

To reduce false alarms, for example in car washes, switch off automatic activation of Park Distance Control PDC when obstacles are detected if necessary.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is shown.

A white symbol is shown and the monitoring range of the sensors is shown in dark colour on the control display.

Park Distance Control PDC has failed. Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Depending on the equipment version: emergency braking function, Active PDC

Principle

The emergency brake function of PDC initiates emergency braking if there is an imminent risk of a collision.

General

Due to the system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

The function is available at speeds below walking speed when driving or rolling in reverse.

Pressing the accelerator pedal interrupts the brake intervention.

After emergency braking to a stop, it is possible to continue a slow approach to the obstacle. To approach, lightly depress the accelerator pedal and release it again.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed for longer, the vehicle pulls away. Manual braking is possible at any time.

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of Park Distance Control PDC and Park Assist.

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Additionally, look directly to check the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle and intervene actively where appropriate.

The Safety Information for the Park Distance Control PDC and Park Assist also applies.

For further information:

- ▷ Park Distance Control, PDC, see page 278.
- ▷ Park Assistant, see page 286.

Temporary switch-off

The emergency braking function can be switched off temporarily:

Confirm the message on the control display.

If the journey is continued in these environmental conditions, no further emergency braking is performed.

Settings

It is possible to set which areas of the vehicle are protected by the system.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Parking and manoeuvring"
5. "Active PDC emergency interv."
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

System limits

The system limits of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Park Assist apply.

The system cannot be used in the following situations, for example:

▷ When driving with a trailer.

If necessary, deactivate the system via iDrive where applicable.

With Parking Assistant: lateral parking aid

Principle

The system warns about obstacles at the side of the vehicle.

General

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of Park Distance Control PDC and Park Assist.

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Additionally, look directly to check the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle and intervene actively where appropriate.

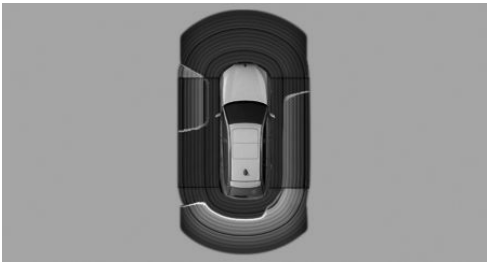
The Safety Information for the Park Distance Control PDC and Park Assist also applies.

For further information:

▷ Park Distance Control, PDC, see page 278.

▷ Park Assistant, see page 286.

Display



Obstacle markings are displayed at the sides of the vehicle to protect the vehicle's flanks.

▷ Coloured markings: warning that obstacles have been detected.

▷ Grey markings, hatched surface: no obstacles have been detected.

▷ No markings, black surface: the area adjacent to the vehicle has not yet been detected.

Lateral parking aid limits

The system only shows stationary obstacles that were previously detected by the sensors when driving past.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle subsequently moves. The markings are shown in black after a certain time when the vehicle is stationary. The area next to the vehicle needs to be scanned again.

The lateral parking aid is not available when the trailer socket is in use or when trailer operation is activated.

The system limits of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Park Assist also apply.

Without Surround View: rear-view camera

Principle

The rear-view camera provides assistance when reverse parking or manoeuvring. It does this by showing an image of the area behind the vehicle on the Control Display.

Assistance functions, for example auxiliary lines, can also be shown on the display.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Additionally, look directly to check the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle and intervene actively where appropriate.

Overview

Depending on the equipment: button in the vehicle

Park Assistant button

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

▷ Rear-view camera.

For further information:

Sensors of the vehicle, see page 47.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The system automatically switches on when selector lever position R is engaged while the engine is running.

Automatic deactivation when moving forwards

The system switches off once a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

Depending on the equipment: switching on/off manually

Press the Park Assistant button.

▷ On: the LED is illuminated.

▷ Off: the LED is extinguished.

The parking assistance functions are shown on the Control Display.

Switching the view via iDrive

If the rear-view camera view is not displayed, change the view via iDrive:

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the side.
2. "Rear view camera"

The image from the rear-view camera is shown.

Operating requirements

▷ The tailgate is completely closed.

▷ Keep the detection range of the camera clear. Projecting loads, carrier systems or trailers can restrict the detection range of the camera.

Display on the control display

Toolbars

Assistance functions can be activated manually using the function bars on the sides of the Control Display.

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the right.
2. With the corresponding equipment: "Camera picture"
3. ▷ "Parking guide lines".

   Driving path lines and turning circle lines are shown.

   ▷ "Obstacle mark.".

   Depending on the equipment, the obstacles detected by Park Distance Control PDC are displayed by markings.

Zoom to the trailer tow hitch:

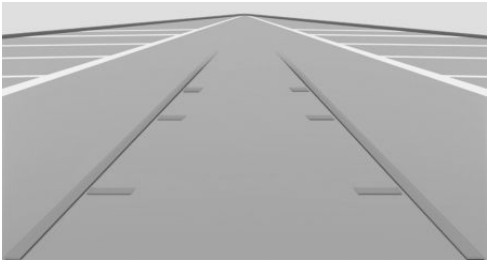
1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the left.
2. "Tow hitch".

   A zoomed-in image of the trailer tow hitch is displayed.

A number of assistance functions can be active simultaneously.

Parking guidance lines

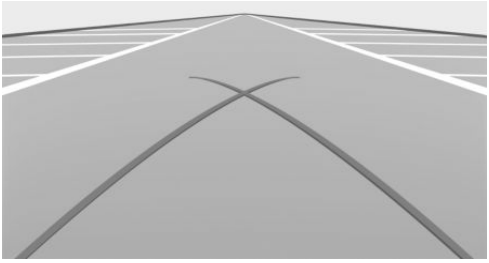
Driving path lines



The driving path lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and manoeuvring on a level road surface.

The driving path lines are dependent on the steering angle and continuously adapt to steering wheel movements.

Turning circle lines



The turning circle lines can only be shown in the camera image together with driving path lines.

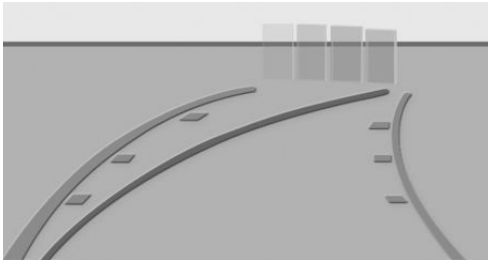
The turning circle lines show the trajectory of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road surface.

Once the steering wheel has been turned beyond a certain angle, only one turning circle line is displayed.

Parking with the help of driving path and turning circle lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning circle line is within the boundaries of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel so that the green driving path line covers the corresponding turning circle line.

Obstacle marker



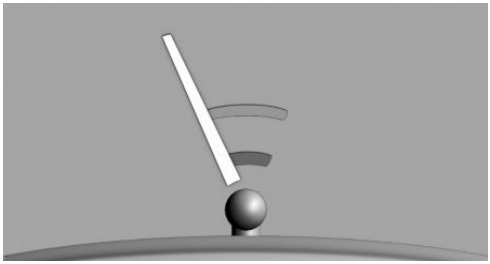
Depending on the equipment, obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the Park Distance Control PDC sensors.

Obstacle markers can be shown in the image from the rear-view camera.

The colour grading of the obstacle markings is the same as the Park Distance Control PDC markings.

Zoom to trailer tow hitch

To assist with connecting up a trailer, it is possible to zoom in on the area around the trailer tow hitch.



Two static circle segments show the distance between the trailer and the trailer tow hitch.

A docking line dependent on the steering angle assists you in lining up the trailer tow hitch with the trailer.

When zooming in, remember that the view might no longer show certain obstacles.

Adjusting brightness and contrast via iDrive

With rear-view camera switched on:

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the right.
2. "Camera picture"
3. Perform the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Brightness"
   - ▷ "Contrast"

System limits

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

▷ Cameras, see page 47.

Deactivated camera

If the camera is deactivated, for example when the tailgate is opened, the camera image is displayed as grey hatching.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles and higher, protruding objects such as ledges cannot be detected by the system.

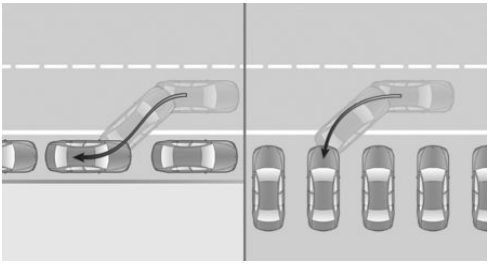
Depending on the equipment, some assistance functions also take account of Park Distance Control PDC data.

Observe the notes in the chapter on Park Distance Control PDC.

The objects shown in the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to objects based on the display.

With Parking Assistant: Park Assist

Principle



The system supports the driver in the following situations:

- ▷ When parking sideways parallel to the road: parallel parking.
- ▷ When reverse parking perpendicular to the road: perpendicular parking. The system lines up with the middle of the parking space when parking perpendicular to the road.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment version: when leaving parallel parking spaces

General

Operation

Operation of Park Assistant is divided into three steps:

- ▷ Switching on and activating.
- ▷ Parking space search.
- ▷ Parking.

The status of the system and the actions required are shown on the control display.

Ultrasonic sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

Steptronic transmission

Park Assist calculates the ideal parking line and takes over the following functions during a parking operation:

- ▷ Steering.
- ▷ Accelerating and braking.
- ▷ Changing gear.

The parking operation takes place automatically.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

⚠ WARNING

When the trailer tow hitch is in use, the driver assistance system could cause damage if its sensors are obstructed. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Do not use the driver assistance system during trailer operation or when using the trailer tow hitch, for example with a bicycle carrier.

⚠ NOTE

Park Assistant may steer across or up onto kerbs. There is a risk of material damage. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

In addition, the safety notes apply for Park Distance Control PDC.

For further information:

Park Distance Control, PDC, see page 278.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park Assistant button

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- ▷ Side ultrasonic sensors.

For further information:

Sensors of the vehicle, see page 47.

Operating requirements

For measuring parking spaces

- ▷ The vehicle must be driving forwards in a straight line at speeds up to approximately 35 km/h, 22 mph.
- ▷ Maximum distance from the row of parked vehicles: 1.5 m, 5 ft.

Suitable parking space

General:

- ▷ Gap behind an object that is at least 0.5 m, 1.7 ft long.
- ▷ Gap between two objects, each at least 0.5 m, 1.7 ft long.

Parking parallel to the road:

- ▷ Minimum length of gap between two objects: own vehicle length plus approximately 0.8 m, 2.6 ft.
- ▷ Minimum depth: approximately 1.5 m, 5 ft.

Perpendicular parking:

- ▷ Minimum length of gap: own vehicle width plus approximately 0.7 m, 2.3 ft.
- ▷ Minimum depth: own vehicle length.

  Drivers must estimate the depth of perpendicular parking spaces themselves. Due to technical limits, the system is only able to gauge the depth of perpendicular parking spaces approximately.

For parking

- ▷ Doors and tailgate are closed.

Steptronic transmission:

- ▷ Driver's seat belt is fastened.

Switching on with the button

Press the Park Assistant button.

The LED is illuminated.

It is possible to display the current status of the parking space search on the Control Display.

Park Assistant is automatically activated.

Switching on with reverse gear

1. Engage reverse gear.

   It is possible to display the current status of the parking space search on the Control Display.
2. Activate if necessary: "Park Assist"

Switching on via iDrive

Rear-view camera display or PDC view must be active.

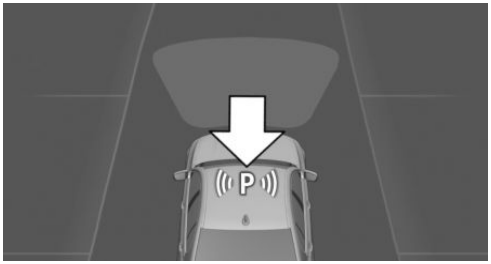
1. Tilt the Controller to the right.
2. Activate the Park Assistant on the Control Display: "Park Assist"

Display on the control display

System is activated/deactivated

Symbol	Meaning
	Grey: system is not available. White: system is available but not activated.
	System is activated.
	Parking space search is active.
	Parking operation is active. The system takes over the steering.

Parking space search and system status



- ▷ The Park Assistant is activated and parking space search is active.
- ▷ Suitable parking spaces are shown on the control display along the edge of the road next to the vehicle symbol. When Park Assist is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted and an acoustic signal sounds.
- ▷ When perpendicular or parallel parking spaces are clearly detected, the system automatically selects the appropriate parking method. A selection menu is displayed for parking spaces that are large enough for both parallel and perpendicular parking. In this case, select the desired parking method manually.
- ▷ Parking operation active. The system takes over the steering.
- ▷ The parking space search is active whenever the vehicle is driving forwards at low speed, even if the system is deactivated. If the system is deactivated, the displays on the Control Display may be shown in grey.

Switching the acoustic signal for suitable parking spaces on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Parking and manoeuvring"
5. "Park Assist"
6. "Alert if parking space detected"

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Park Distance Control PDC acoustic signals

During an automatic parking manoeuvre, Park Distance Control PDC does not emit an intermittent tone.

A continuous tone sounds if the distance to a detected object is less than approximately 20 cm, 8 in.

Parking with Park Assistant

Driving into a parking space

1. Switch on and activate Park Assistant.

   For this, engage reverse gear or press the Park Assist button and activate the system on the control display if necessary.

   Park Assist is activated.
2. Drive forwards past the line of parked vehicles at a speed up to approximately 35 km/h, 22 mph and at a distance of maximum 1.5 m, 5 ft.

The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are shown on the control display.

3. Confirm the suggested parking space for the parking process: select the parking space on the Control Display.

   The system takes control of the steering.

4. Follow the instructions on the control display.

   Steptronic transmission:

   When parking is complete, selector lever position P is engaged.

   Completion of parking is indicated on the Control Display.

5. Adjust the parking position yourself if necessary.

Cancelling manually

You can cancel Park Assistant at any time:

▷ Press the Park Assistant button.

▷ "Park Assist": select the symbol on the Control Display.

Cancelling automatically

The system automatically cancels in the following situations:

▷ If the driver grips the steering wheel or steers the vehicle.

▷ On snow-covered or slippery road surfaces, if necessary.

▷ If it encounters objects that are difficult to negotiate, for example kerbs.

▷ If objects appear suddenly.

▷ If Park Distance Control PDC shows gaps that are too small.

▷ When a maximum number of parking attempts or the parking time is exceeded.

▷ If other functions are selected on the Control Display.

Steptronic transmission:

▷ With the tailgate open.

▷ When doors are open.

▷ If the parking brake is applied.

▷ When accelerating.

▷ If the brake pedal remains pressed for a relatively long period when the vehicle is stationary.

▷ When the driver's seat belt is unfastened.

A Check Control message is shown.

Resuming

You can continue a cancelled parking operation if applicable.

To do this, reactivate the Park Assistant and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Switching off

The system can be switched off manually:

Press the Park Assistant button.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

No parking assistance

Park Assistant does not provide assistance in the following situations:

▷ On sharp bends.

▷ When towing a trailer.

▷ In angled parking spaces.

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

- ▷ Ultrasonic sensors, see page 49.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ On uneven road surfaces, for example gravel roads.
- ▷ On slippery surfaces.
- ▷ On steep upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ If leaves have collected or snow has drifted or been piled up in the parking space.
- ▷ If there is a change in a measured parking space.
- ▷ If there are ditches or sudden drops, for example a quayside.
- ▷ In some cases, parking spaces may be detected that are not suitable or suitable parking spaces may not be detected.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is shown.

Park Assistant has failed. Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Depending on the equipment version: leaving a parking space with Park Assist

Principle

The system makes it easier to leave parallel parking spaces.

General

Steptronic transmission

Park Assist calculates the optimum line to take when driving out of the space and takes over the following functions during the manoeuvre:

- ▷ Steering.
- ▷ Accelerating and braking.
- ▷ Changing gear.

The vehicle manoeuvres automatically until it is in a position where the driver can drive out of the space without any further steering movements.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

⚠ WARNING

When the trailer tow hitch is in use, the driver assistance system could cause damage if its sensors are obstructed. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Do not use the driver assistance system during trailer operation or when using the trailer tow hitch, for example with a bicycle carrier.

The Safety Information for the Park Distance Control PDC and Park Assist also applies.

For further information:

- ▷ Park Distance Control, PDC, see page 278.
- ▷ Park Assistant, see page 286.

Operating requirements

- ▷ The vehicle has been parked manually and objects are detected in front of and behind the vehicle. The distance to a detected kerb is at least 15 cm, approx. 6 in.
- ▷ The vehicle has been parked using the Park Assistant and an object is detected in front of the vehicle.
- ▷ The parking space is at least 0.8 m, 2.6 ft longer than the vehicle.
- ▷ The vehicle has been reverse-bay parked.

Leaving a parking space

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Steptronic transmission:

   When the vehicle is stationary, press the Park Assist button or engage reverse gear to switch on Park Assist.
3. Tilt the Controller to the right as applicable and activate the Park Assistant on the Control Display: "Park Assist"
4. On the Control Display, confirm the required direction for leaving the parking space.
5. Steptronic transmission:

   The system takes over the manoeuvre. A message is displayed at the end of the manoeuvre.
6. Make sure that it is safe to leave the parking space in the current traffic situation and drive off as usual.

   The Park Assistant is switched off automatically.

System limits

The system limits of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Park Assist apply.

With Parking Assistant: reversing assistant

Principle

The system supports the driver when reversing, for example when driving out of tight or blind parking spaces or narrow roads.

The vehicle saves the driving movements for the last stretch of road. The vehicle can reverse along this saved stretch with automated steering.

General

The system takes over the steering when reversing along the saved stretch.

The driver is responsible for operating the accelerator pedal and the brake.

The reversing assistant uses the control functions and the sensors of the Park Distance Control PDC and Park Assist.

For further information:

- ▷ Park Distance Control, PDC, see page 278.
- ▷ Park Assistant, see page 286.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

When the trailer tow hitch is in use, the driver assistance system could cause damage if its sensors are obstructed. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Do not use the driver

assistance system during trailer operation or when using the trailer tow hitch, for example with a bicycle carrier.

The Safety Information for the Park Distance Control PDC and Park Assist also applies.

For further information:

- ▷ Park Distance Control, PDC, see page 278.
- ▷ Park Assistant, see page 286.

Operating requirements

- ▷ To save the stretch of road, drive forwards without interruption.
- ▷ A maximum of 50 metres/ 55 yards can be saved.
- ▷ To save the stretch of road, do not drive faster than 36 km/h/ 22 mph.
- ▷ Dynamic Stability Control DSC is activated.

Reversing with automated steering

1. When the vehicle is stationary and the drive-ready state is switched on, engage reverse gear or press the Park Assistant button.
2. Tilt the Controller to the right.
3. "Reversing Assistant"

   The system takes over the steering.
4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display as applicable.
5. Take your hands off the steering wheel and carefully drive off using the accelerator pedal and brake.

   When reversing, pay attention to the vehicle surroundings and, if you encounter an obstacle, stop immediately and take over control of the vehicle. Pay attention to the information on Park Distance Control PDC.
6. Stop when you reach normal road traffic at the latest and take over control of the vehicle, for example by engaging a forward gear.

   At the end of the saved stretch of road, a signal sounds and a message appears prompting you to take over control of the vehicle.

Cancelling the system

The system automatically cancels in situations such as the following:

- ▷ If the driver grips the steering wheel or steers the vehicle.
- ▷ When a forward gear is engaged.
- ▷ When drive control systems or Driver Assistance Systems are activated or intervening.
- ▷ If the vehicle is stationary for several minutes.
- ▷ If the vehicle leaves the stored lane during reversing; for example, at the maximum steering angle.
- ▷ When the display on the Control Display is hidden by messages, for example due to incoming calls.

System limits

- ▷ When you reach normal road traffic or if you encounter an obstacle, stop immediately and take over control of the vehicle.
- ▷ The maximum speed when reversing is limited to approximately 9 km/h/ 6 mph.

  If the maximum speed is exceeded, a warning is issued and the function may be cancelled.
- ▷ The system limits of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Park Assist also apply.

Various factors can result in sideways deviations when reversing along the saved stretch of road. These factors include, for example:

- ▷ Steering wheel movements when the vehicle is stationary during the process of saving the stretch.
- ▷ The speed is not adapted to the stretch of road in question.
- ▷ Road conditions, for example gradients or slopes.

With Parking Assistant Plus: Surround View

Principle

The system provides assistance with parking and manoeuvring. It does this by displaying an image of the area all around the vehicle on the Control Display.

General

Several cameras capture the area from various selectable perspectives.

The following camera perspectives can be displayed:

- ▷ Automatic camera perspective: the system automatically shows the appropriate camera perspective depending on the particular driving situation.
- ▷ Rear-view camera: for showing the areas behind the vehicle.
- ▷ Flank view right and left: for showing the areas to the side of the vehicle.
- ▷ Camera perspective freely movable using iDrive.
- ▷ Panorama View: for representing crossing traffic, for example at junctions and exits, depending on which gear is currently engaged.

Depending on the view, the vehicle's surroundings or a partial area are displayed.

Assistance functions, for example auxiliary lines, are also shown on the display.

A number of assistance functions can be active simultaneously.

Some assistance functions can be activated manually.

The following assistance functions are shown automatically:

- ▷ Lateral parking aid.
- ▷ Door opening angle.

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Additionally, look directly to check the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle and intervene actively where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Park Assistant button

Panorama View

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- ▷ Front camera.
- ▷ Top view cameras.
- ▷ Rear-view camera.

For further information:

Sensors of the vehicle, see page 47.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The system automatically switches on when selector lever position R is engaged while the engine is running.

The camera perspective appropriate for the current driving situation is shown.

For further information:

Park Distance Control, switching on/off, see page 279.

Switching on/off manually

Press the Park Assistant button.

- ▷ On: the LED is illuminated.
- ▷ Off: the LED is extinguished.

Depending on the equipment, the Reversing Assist camera cannot be switched off when reverse gear is engaged.

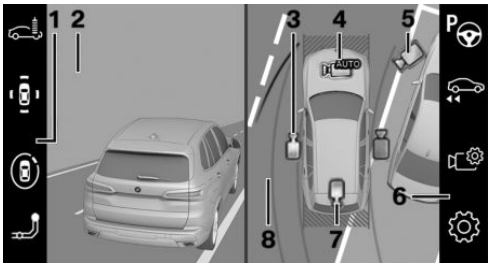
Automatic deactivation when moving forwards

The system switches off once a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

Display on the control display

Overview



1 Toolbar, left
2 Camera image
3 Flank view
4 Automatic camera perspective
5 Movable, free camera perspective
6 Toolbar, right
7 Rear-view camera
8 Selection window

Toolbar, left

It is possible to select various views directly using iDrive and the function bar on the left. To do this, tilt the Controller to the left if necessary.

- ▷ "Car wash".
- ▷ "Parking": around the vehicle.
- ▷ "3D view": free camera.
- ▷ "Tow hitch".

Flank view

Flank view can be selected for the right or left side of the vehicle.

This view displays the area at the side to assist with positioning the vehicle at the kerb or alongside any other obstacles.

Flank view looks from the rear to the front. If there is a hazard, it automatically focuses on possible obstacles.

Automatic camera perspective

The automatic camera perspective displays a steering angle-dependent view looking towards the vehicle's direction of travel.

This perspective adapts to the current driving situation.

As soon as obstacles are detected, the view switches to a fixed display of the area in front or behind the bumper or, if necessary, to a flank view.

Movable, free camera perspective

If the movable camera perspective is selected, a circular path is shown on the control display.

By turning the Controller or using the touch function, defined perspectives along the circular path can be selected.

The current perspective is identified by a camera symbol.

To exit the function, tilt the Controller to the side and select a different camera function.

Toolbar, right

Assistance functions can be activated and settings made using iDrive and the function bar on the right. To do this, tilt the Controller to the right if necessary.

- ▷ "Park Assist".
- ▷ "Reversing Assistant".
- ▷ "Camera picture":
  - ▷ "Brightness".
  - ▷ "Contrast".
  - ▷ "Parking guide lines".
  - ▷ "Obstacle mark.".
- ▷ "Settings": to perform settings, for example to use the activation points with Panorama View.

Rear-view camera

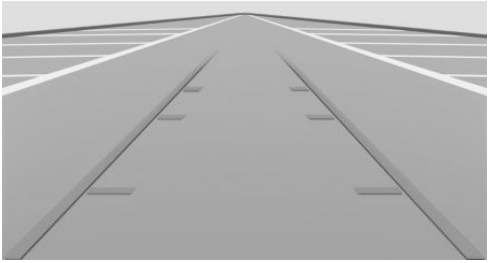
This view shows the image from the rear-view camera.

Selection window

In the selection window, the individual camera perspectives can be selected using iDrive.

Parking guidance lines

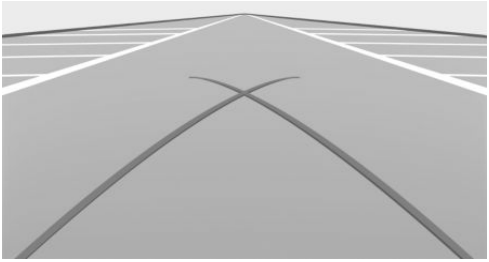
Driving path lines



The driving path lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and manoeuvring on a level road surface.

The driving path lines are dependent on the steering angle and continuously adapt to steering wheel movements.

Turning circle lines



The turning circle lines can only be shown in the camera image together with driving path lines.

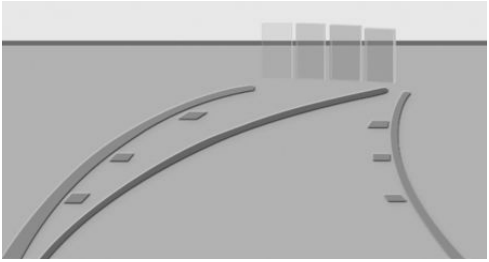
The turning circle lines show the trajectory of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road surface.

Once the steering wheel has been turned beyond a certain angle, only one turning circle line is displayed.

Parking with the help of driving path and turning circle lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning circle line is within the boundaries of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel so that the green driving path line covers the corresponding turning circle line.

Obstacle marker

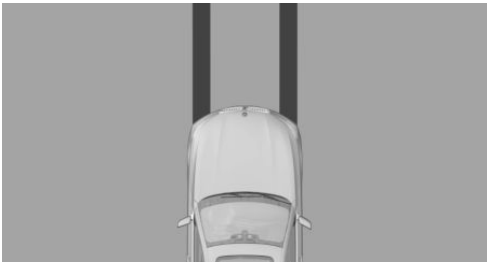


Obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the Park Distance Control PDC sensors.

Obstacle markings can be shown in the camera image.

The colour grading of the obstacle markings is the same as the Park Distance Control PDC markings.

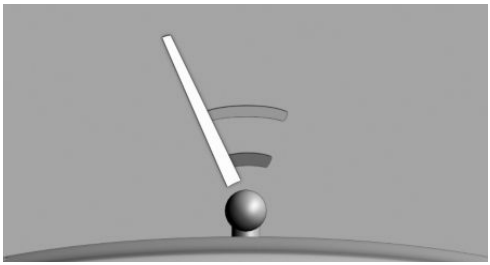
Washing bay view



The washing bay view provides assistance when driving into washing bays by displaying the vehicle's own tyre tracks.

Zoom to trailer tow hitch

To assist with connecting up a trailer, it is possible to zoom in on the area around the trailer tow hitch.



Two static circle segments show the distance between the trailer and the trailer tow hitch.

A docking line dependent on the steering angle assists you in lining up the trailer tow hitch with the trailer.

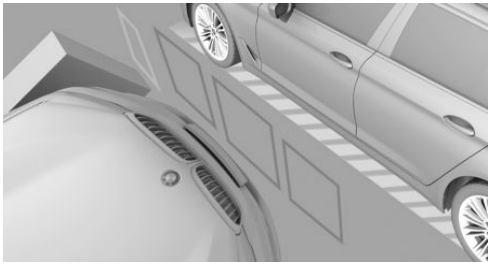
When zooming in, remember that the view might no longer show certain obstacles.

Lateral parking aid

Principle

The system warns about obstacles at the side of the vehicle.

Display



Obstacle markings are displayed at the sides of the vehicle to protect the vehicle's flanks.

▷ No markings: no obstacles have been detected.

▷ Coloured markings: warning that obstacles have been detected.

Lateral parking aid limits

The system only shows stationary obstacles that were previously detected by the sensors when driving past.

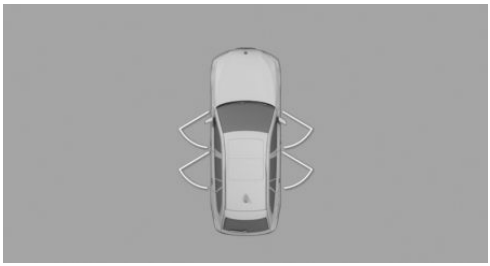
The system does not detect whether an obstacle subsequently moves. Consequently, the markings will no longer be shown on the display after the vehicle has been stationary for a while. The area next to the vehicle needs to be scanned again.

Door opening angle

Principle

If obstacle marking is activated, the system shows any fixed, stationary obstacles that are restricting the opening angle of the doors.

The system does not issue warnings about approaching road users.



Steptronic transmission: the maximum door opening angles are displayed when the selector lever is in position P. Once the vehicle moves off, the parking assistance lines are displayed instead of the opening angles.

Limits of the display

For technical reasons, the display of the area around the vehicle is distorted.

Even if the symbols for the door opening angles on the Control Display are not covering any other objects, bear in mind the following when parking beside other objects:

The perspective means that protruding objects located higher up may be closer than they appear on the Control Display.

Setting the brightness and contrast

When Surround View or Panorama View is switched on, it is possible to adjust the brightness and contrast.

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the right.
2. "Camera picture"
3. Perform the desired setting:
   ▷ "Brightness"
   ▷ "Contrast"

Functional limitations

The system can only be used to a limited extent in the following situations:

▷ In poor light conditions.
▷ If the cameras are dirty.
▷ With a door open.
▷ With the tailgate open.
▷ With the exterior mirrors folded in.

Grey hatched areas with a symbol, for example an open door, in the camera display identify areas that are not currently shown.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

▷ Cameras, see page 47.

Non-visible areas

Due to the angle of view, the area under the vehicle cannot be seen by the cameras.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles and higher, protruding objects such as ledges cannot be detected by the system.

Some assistance functions also take account of Park Distance Control PDC data.

Observe the notes in the chapter on Park Distance Control PDC.

The objects shown in the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to objects based on the display.

For further information:

Park Distance Control, PDC, see page 278.

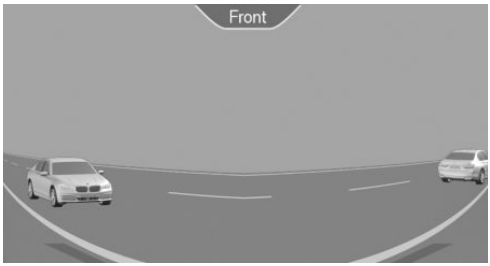
Malfunction

The failure of a camera is shown on the Control Display.

A yellow symbol is shown and the capture area of the failed camera is shown in black on the Control Display.

With Parking Assistant Plus: Panorama View

Principle



The system provides you with an advance view of crossing traffic at blind exits and junctions.

General

Road users hidden by obstacles at the side may not be seen from the driver's seat until very late.

To provide a better view, the front and rear cameras scan the areas to the side for traffic.

Yellow lines on the screen image indicate the front and rear ends of the vehicle.

The camera image is subject to varying levels of distortion in some areas and is thus not suitable for estimating distances.

Depending on the equipment, the function can only be used when a forward gear is engaged.

For further information:

Surround View, see page 293.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Additionally, look directly to check the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle and intervene actively where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Panorama View

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- ▷ Front camera.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment: Reversing Assist camera.

For further information:

Sensors of the vehicle, see page 47.

Display on the control display

Press the button with the engine running.

The image from the relevant camera is displayed, depending on the driving direction:

- ▷ "Front": image from the front camera.
- ▷ "Rear": image from the rear camera.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the crossing traffic warning can warn about approaching vehicles by means of radar sensors.

For further information:

Crossing traffic warning, see page 301.

With navigation system: activation points

Principle

Locations where Panorama View is to switch on automatically can be saved as activation points provided that a GPS signal is being received.

General

Up to ten activation points can be saved.

Activation points can be used for the front camera when driving forward.

Saving activation points

1. Drive to the location at which the system is to be switched on, and stop.
2. Press the button.
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Activation point"

   The current location is shown.
5. "Save activation point"

Where possible, activation points are saved with the town/city and street, otherwise with the GPS coordinates.

Using activation points

Use of activation points can be switched on and off.

1. Press the button.
2. Tilt the Controller to the right.
3. "Settings"
4. "Panorama View, GPS-based"
5. "Panorama View is displayed automatically when set activation points are reached."

Displaying activation points

1. Press the button.
2. Tilt the Controller to the right.
3. "Manage points"

   A list of all activation points is shown.

Renaming or deleting activation points

1. Press the button.
2. Tilt the Controller to the right.
3. "Manage points"

   A list of all activation points is shown.
4. Select an activation point if necessary.
5. Perform the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Rename"
   - ▷ "Delete activation point"
   - ▷ "Delete all activation points"

Functional limitations

The functional limitations of Surround View apply.

For further information:

Surround View, see page 293.

System limits

The system limits of Surround View apply.

For further information:

Surround View, see page 293.

With Parking Assistant Plus: Remote 3D View

Principle

With the corresponding equipment, the BMW Connected app and the images from the Surround View cameras enable the vehicle surroundings to be displayed on a mobile device.

The function shows a view of the current situation.

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- ▷ Front camera.
- ▷ Top view cameras.
- ▷ Rear-view camera.

For further information:

Sensors of the vehicle, see page 47.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Data transfer must be activated.

  Data protection, see page 79.
- ▷ The BMW Connected App must be installed on the mobile device.
- ▷ ConnectedDrive countries: a driver profile with an existing ConnectedDrive account must be activated.

  Driver profiles, see page 80.

Switching the function on/off

Switching on/off with other functions

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "All services incl. analysis"
   - ▷ "All vehicle services"

Switching on/off individually

Pre-adjustment

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Select services individually"
6. "Connected app and cust. portal"
7. "Remote 3D View"

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Individual selection"

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

- ▷ Cameras, see page 47.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality or may not be available at all in the following situations, for example:

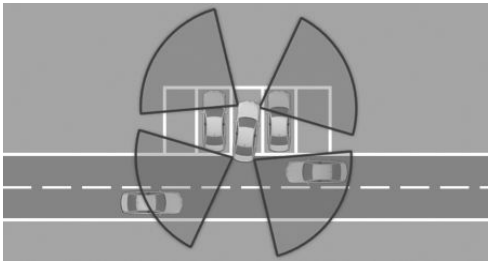
- With a door or the tailgate open. Dark areas in the display indicate areas that are not detected by the system.
- With the exterior mirrors folded in.
- When other camera functions are run in the vehicle.
- If the vehicle is moving faster than at walking speed.
- It may not be possible to use the function in all countries.
- For reasons related to data protection, the function can only be run three times in two hours.

Crossing traffic warning

Principle

At blind exits or when leaving bay parking spaces, the system detects other road users approaching from the side earlier than is possible from the driver's seat.

General



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

The system indicates when other road users are approaching.

Depending on the equipment, the area in front of the vehicle is also monitored. For this purpose, two further radar sensors are located in the front bumper.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park Assistant button

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- Side radar sensors, rear.
- Depending on the equipment: side radar sensors, front.

For further information:

Sensors of the vehicle, see page 47.

Switching on/off

Activating/deactivating the system

With the button

1. Press the Park Assistant button.
2. Tilt the Controller to the right.
3. "Settings"
4. "Cross-traffic alert"
5. "Activate function"

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Parking and manoeuvring"
5. "Cross-traffic alert"
6. "Activate function"

Automatic activation

If the system was activated on the Control Display, it is switched on automatically as soon as Park Distance Control PDC or Panorama View is active and a gear is engaged.

The system is switched on at the rear when reverse gear is engaged.

Depending on the equipment, the system is switched on at the front when a forward gear is engaged.

Switching off automatically

The system switches off automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If walking speed is exceeded.
- ▷ When a certain distance is exceeded.
- ▷ When Park Assistant is actively parking the vehicle.

Warning

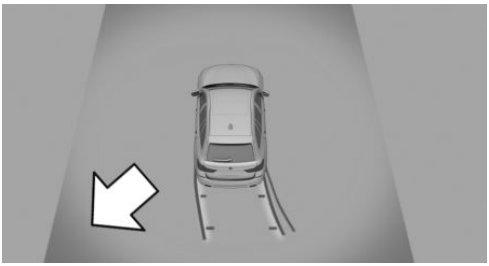
General

The Control Display shows the corresponding image, an acoustic signal sounds, if necessary, and the light in the exterior mirror flashes.

Light in the exterior mirror

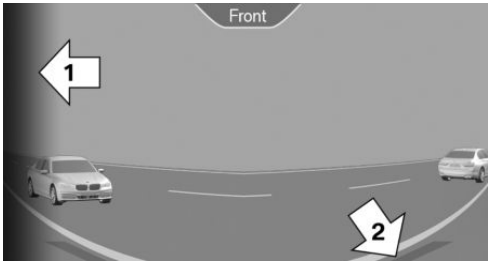
The light in the exterior mirror flashes if other vehicles are detected by the rear sensors when the vehicle is reversing.

Display in the Park Distance Control PDC view



In the Park Distance Control PDC view, the relevant boundary area flashes red if the sensors detect vehicles.

Display in the camera view



The relevant boundary area, arrow 1, in the camera view flashes red if the sensors detect vehicles.

Yellow lines, arrow 2, indicate the bumper of your vehicle.

Acoustic warning

In addition to the visual display, a warning signal sounds when your own vehicle is moving in the corresponding direction.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

▷ Radar sensors, see page 48.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

▷ On sharp bends.

▷ If crossing objects are moving very slowly or very quickly.

▷ If there are other objects in the field of view of the sensors that conceal the crossing traffic.

If the trailer socket is occupied, for example when operating with a trailer or a bicycle carrier, crossing traffic warning is not available for the area behind the vehicle.

Driving comfort

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Suspension components

The suspension components have been optimised for the vehicle and its area of use, thus ensuring the best possible driving experience.

Adaptive M suspension

Principle

The Adaptive M suspension is a controllable sports suspension.

The system reduces unwanted vehicle movements when a sporty driving style is used or when driving on uneven roads.

General

Depending on road conditions and driving style, driving dynamics and driving comfort are enhanced.

Configuration

The system offers various shock absorber settings, from comfortable travel to sporty driving.

The shock absorber settings are assigned to the different driving modes of the Driving Experience Control.

For further information:

Driving Experience Control, see page 155.

Performance Control

Performance Control increases the agility of the vehicle.

Individual wheels are braked to increase agility for a sporty driving style.

Engine sound

Depending on the equipment and the national-market version, it may be possible to configure the sound of the electric motor if necessary.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Engine sound"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Air conditioning

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Interior air quality

The air quality in the vehicle is improved by the following components:

- ▷ Emissions-tested interior.
- ▷ Microfilter.
- ▷ Air-conditioning system for regulating temperature, air flow and recirculated-air mode.

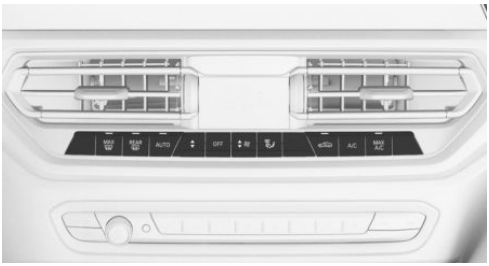
Depending on the equipment version:

- ▷ Microfilter/activated carbon filter.
- ▷ Automatic air recirculation control AUC.
- ▷ Independent ventilation.

Automatic air conditioning

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Climate functions

Button	Function
▲ ▼	Temperature.
A/C	Air-conditioning mode.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
AUTO	AUTO programme.
	Recirculated-air mode.
OFF	Switch off.
	Air distribution, manual.
MAX	Defrost the windscreen and remove condensation.
REAR	Rear window heating.

Button	Function
	Seat heating, see page 134.
	Air flow, manual.

Individual functions – for example, temperature – can also be operated using spoken commands.

Switching on/off

Switching on

Press any button, with the following exceptions:

- ▷ Switch off.
- ▷ Rear window heating.
- ▷ Lower side of air flow button.
- ▷ Seat heating.

Switching off

Complete system:

OFF Press the button until the control illuminates.

Temperature

Principle

The automatic air conditioning adjusts to the set temperature as quickly as possible, using maximum cooling or heating power if necessary. The temperature is then maintained.

Adjusting

Using the button:

Press the upper or lower side of the button to set the desired temperature.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Driver"
6. "Temperature:"
7. Set the desired temperature.

Avoid switching between different temperature settings in rapid succession. The automatic air conditioning may not have sufficient time to adjust to the set temperature.

Cooling function

Principle

Interior air is cooled and dried and then heated again depending on the temperature setting.

The interior can be cooled when the drive-ready or standby state is switched on.

Switching on/off

A/C Press the button.

Depending on the weather conditions, the windscreen and the side windows may mist over for a short time when the drive-ready state has been switched on.

The cooling function is switched on automatically in the AUTO programme.

When the automatic air conditioning is in operation, condensation develops and exits underneath the vehicle.

Maximum cooling effect

Principle

When the standby or drive-ready state is switched on, the system is set to lowest temperature, optimum amount of air and air recirculation function.

General

The function is available at an outside temperature above approximately 0 °C/32 °F and when drive-ready state is switched on.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the system is switched on.

The air flows from the side nozzles for the upper body area. Therefore open the side nozzles.

The air flow can be adapted when the programme is active.

AUTO programme

Principle

The AUTO program cools, ventilates or heats the interior automatically.

It does this by automatically regulating the air flow, air distribution and temperature depending on the interior temperature and the selected temperature setting.

Switching on/off

Using the button:

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the AUTO programme is switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Automatic"

Depending on the selected temperature and external influences, the air is directed towards the windscreen, the side windows the upper body and into the footwell.

The cooling function is switched on automatically in the AUTO programme.

Point the side nozzles at the side windows.

The AUTO programme is automatically switched off when the air distribution is set manually.

Recirculated-air mode

Principle

If the air outside the vehicle has an unpleasant odour or contains pollutants, the air supply to the interior of the vehicle can be shut off. The air inside the vehicle is then recirculated.

Operation

Using the button:

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when recirculated-air mode is switched on. The outside air supply is shut off.

When recirculated-air mode is switched off, fresh air is directed into the vehicle's interior.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Air quality"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Air recirculation"
   - ▷ "Automatic"
   - ▷ "Fresh air"

The recirculated-air mode automatically switches off after a given time depending on the ambient conditions, to avoid condensation.

Continuous use of recirculated-air mode worsens air quality inside the vehicle and increases condensation on the windows.

If there is condensation, shut down recirculated-air mode or remove the condensation.

Air flow, manual

Principle

The air flow for air conditioning can be set manually.

General

To be able to adjust the air flow manually, first switch off the AUTO programme.

Adjusting

Press upper or lower side of button: reduce or increase air flow.

Selected air flow is shown on the climate display.

In order to protect the battery the air flow rate is reduced, if necessary.

Adjusting the air distribution manually

Principle

The air distribution for air conditioning can be set manually.

Adjusting

Press the button repeatedly to select a programme:

- ▷ Windows, upper body area and footwell.
- ▷ Upper body area and footwell.
- ▷ Footwell.
- ▷ Windows and footwell.
- ▷ Windows.
- ▷ Windows and upper body.
- ▷ Upper body area.

Selected air distribution is shown on the climate display.

Defrosting the windscreen and removing condensation

Principle

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windscreen and the front side windows.

Switching on/off

MAX Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the system is switched on.

The air flow can be adjusted manually when the system is switched on.

AUTO If there is condensation on the window, press the button or switch on the cooling function. Ensure that air can flow towards the windscreen.

Rear window heating

REAR Press the button. The LED is illuminated.

The function is available when drive-ready state is switched on.

The rear window heating is switched off automatically after a while.

Microfilter

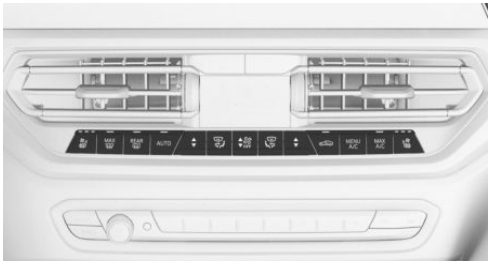
The microfilter traps dust and pollen in the incoming air.

Have this filter replaced during maintenance of the vehicle.

Automatic air conditioning with extended functionality

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Climate functions

Button	Function
▲ ▼	Temperature.
	Recirculated-air mode.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
AUTO	AUTO programme.
▲ ▼ OFF	Air flow, manual. Switch off. AUTO programme intensity.
	Air distribution, manual.
MAX	Defrost the windscreen and remove condensation.
REAR	Rear window heating.
	Seat heating, see page 134.
MENU A/C	Air-conditioning mode. Call up the air conditioning menu for the following settings, for example: upper body temperature adjustment, independent ventilation, cooling function.

Individual functions – for example, temperature – can also be operated using spoken commands.

Calling up the air conditioning menu

MENU A/C Press the button.

The air conditioning menu is displayed.

Air conditioning functions such as the following are available via the Climate menu:

- ▷ Air quality.
- ▷ Heating/ventilation.
- ▷ Independent ventilation/Auxiliary heating.
- ▷ Cooling function.

It is possible to make individual settings for some air conditioning functions; for example, switching on/off, setting the intensity.

Switching on/off

Switching on

Press any button, with the following exceptions:

- ▷ Menu/air conditioning mode.
- ▷ Rear window heating.
- ▷ Lower side of air flow button.
- ▷ Seat heating.

Switching off

Hold down the button until the control shuts down.

Temperature

Principle

The automatic air conditioning adjusts to the set temperature as quickly as possible, using maximum cooling or heating power if necessary. The temperature is then maintained.

Adjusting

Using the button:

Press the upper or lower side of the button to set the desired temperature.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Driver" or "Front passenger"
6. "Temperature:"
7. Set the desired temperature.
8. "OK"

Avoid switching between different temperature settings in rapid succession. The automatic air conditioning may not have sufficient time to adjust to the set temperature.

Ventilation temperature

General

The temperature of the ventilation in the upper body area can be adjusted.

The temperature is adjusted on an individual basis, for example towards the blue for colder and towards the red for warmer.

The ventilation air flow in the upper body area provides noticeable heating or cooling depending on the set temperature.

The set interior temperature for driver and front seat passenger is not changed by this.

Adjusting

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Temperature adjustment"
6. Set the desired temperature.

Cooling function

Principle

Interior air is cooled and dried and then heated again depending on the temperature setting.

The interior can be cooled when the drive-ready or standby state is switched on.

Switching on/off

Using the button:

MENU A/C Press the button.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Climate control (A/C)"

Depending on the weather conditions, the windscreen and the side windows may mist over for a short time when the drive-ready state has been switched on.

The cooling function is switched on automatically in the AUTO programme.

When the automatic air conditioning is in operation, condensation develops and exits underneath the vehicle.

Maximum cooling effect

Principle

When the standby or drive-ready state is switched on, the system is set to lowest temperature, optimum amount of air and air recirculation function.

General

The function is available at an outside temperature above approximately 0 °C/32 °F and when drive-ready state is switched on.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the system is switched on.

The air flows from the side nozzles for the upper body area. Therefore open the side nozzles.

The air flow can be adapted when the programme is active.

AUTO programme

Principle

The AUTO program cools, ventilates or heats the interior automatically.

The air flow, air distribution and temperature are regulated automatically depending on the interior temperature, the selected temperature setting and the selected intensity setting.

Switching on/off

Using the button:

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the AUTO programme is switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Driver"
6. "Automatic"

Depending on the selected settings and external influences, the air is directed towards the windscreen, the side windows, the upper body and into the footwell.

The cooling function is switched on automatically in the AUTO program.

Point the side nozzles at the side windows.

A condensation sensor also controls the programme so that window condensation is avoided as much as possible.

The AUTO programme is automatically switched off when the air distribution is set manually.

Intensity

With the AUTO programme switched on, the intensity can be adjusted. This changes the automatic control for the air flow.

Using the button:

Press top or bottom side of button: reduce or increase intensity.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Driver"
6. "Level"
7. Set the desired intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the climate display.

Automatic air recirculation control AUC

Principle

Automatic air recirculation control AUC detects pollutants in the outside air. The supply of outside air is shut off and the interior air is recirculated.

General

When the system is activated, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls shut-off automatically.

When the system is deactivated, outside air flows into the interior continuously.

Continuous use of recirculated-air mode worsens air quality inside the vehicle and increases condensation on the windows.

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Air quality"
5. "Automatic"

If there is condensation, shut down recirculated-air mode or remove the condensation.

Recirculated-air mode

Principle

If the air outside the vehicle has an unpleasant odour or contains pollutants, the air supply to the interior of the vehicle can be shut off. The air inside the vehicle is then recirculated.

Adjusting

Using the button:

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when recirculated-air mode is switched on. The outside air supply is shut off.

When recirculated-air mode is switched off, fresh air is directed into the vehicle's interior.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Air quality"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Air recirculation"
   - ▷ "Fresh air"

The recirculated-air mode automatically switches off after a given time depending on the ambient conditions, to avoid condensation.

Continuous use of recirculated-air mode worsens air quality inside the vehicle and increases condensation on the windows.

If there is condensation, shut down recirculated-air mode or remove the condensation.

Air flow, manual

Principle

The air flow for air conditioning can be set manually.

General

To be able to adjust the air flow manually, first switch off the AUTO programme.

Adjusting

Press upper or lower side of button: reduce or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the climate display.

In order to protect the battery the air flow rate is reduced, if necessary.

Adjusting the air distribution manually

Principle

The air distribution for air conditioning can be set manually.

Adjusting

Press the button repeatedly to select a programme:

- ▷ Windows, upper body area and footwell.
- ▷ Upper body area and footwell.
- ▷ Footwell.
- ▷ Windows and footwell.
- ▷ Windows.
- ▷ Windows and upper body.
- ▷ Upper body area.

The selected air distribution is shown on the climate display.

SYNC program

Principle

The following settings on the driver's side can be transferred to the front passenger's side:

- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Air flow.
- ▷ Air distribution.
- ▷ AUTO programme.

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Synchronise"

The program is automatically switched off if the settings are changed on the front passenger side.

Defrosting the windscreen and removing condensation

Principle

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windscreen and the front side windows.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the system is switched on.

The air flow can be adjusted manually when the system is switched on.

If there is condensation, press the button or switch on the cooling function to use the condensation sensor. Ensure that air can flow towards the windscreen.

Rear window heating

Press the button. The LED is illuminated.

The function is available when drive-ready state is switched on.

The rear window heating is switched off automatically after a while.

Microfilter/active carbon filter

The microfilter traps dust and pollen in the incoming air.

The activated carbon filter also removes gaseous pollutants from the outside air entering the vehicle.

Have this combined filter replaced during maintenance of the vehicle.

Ventilation

Principle

The direction of the various air flows can be set individually.

Setting the ventilation

General

The direction of the air flows can be set for direct or indirect ventilation.

Open the side nozzles and position them in a way that ensures effective climate control.

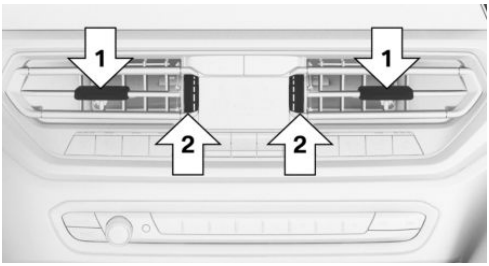
Direct ventilation

Align the air flow directly onto the vehicle occupants. The air flow provides noticeable heating or cooling depending on the set temperature.

Indirect ventilation

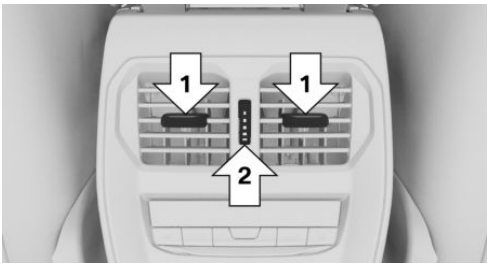
Do not align the air flow directly onto the vehicle occupants. The vehicle interior is cooled or heated indirectly depending on the set temperature.

Ventilation at front



- ▷ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrows 1.
- ▷ Knurled wheel for steplessly opening and closing the side nozzles, arrows 2.

Ventilation in the rear, centre



- ▷ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrows 1.
- ▷ Knurled wheel for steplessly opening and closing the side nozzles, arrow 2.

Rear automatic air conditioning

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Climate functions

Button	Function
▼ ▲	Temperature.
AUTO	AUTO programme.
	Air distribution, manual.

Button	Function
	Seat heating, see page 134.
OFF	Switch off.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Second row of seats"
6. "Activate heating/cooling"

The rear automatic air conditioning is not operational if the automatic air conditioning is switched off or the following function is active: defrost the windows and remove condensation.

Using the button: switch on

Press any button, with the following exceptions:

▷ Switch off.

▷ Seat heating.

Using the button: switch off

OFF Press the button.

Temperature

Principle

The automatic air conditioning adjusts to the set temperature as quickly as possible, using maximum cooling or heating power if necessary. The temperature is then maintained.

Adjusting

Using the button:

▼ ▲ Press the left or right side of the button to set the desired temperature.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Second row of seats"
6. "Temperature"
7. Set the desired temperature.

The selected temperature is shown on the climate display.

Avoid switching between different temperature settings in rapid succession. The automatic air conditioning may not have sufficient time to adjust to the set temperature.

AUTO programme

Principle

The air flow, air distribution and temperature are automatically regulated.

Switching on/off

Using the button:

AUTO Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the AUTO programme is switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Second row of seats"
6. "Automatic"

Depending on the selected temperature, the intensity of the AUTO programme and external in-

fluences, the air is directed towards the upper body and into the footwell.

Adjusting the air distribution manually

Principle

The air distribution for air conditioning can be set manually.

Adjusting

Press the button repeatedly to select a programme:

- ▷ Upper body area.
- ▷ Upper body area and footwell.
- ▷ Footwell.

Disabling control functions

Principle

The control functions for rear automatic air conditioning can be disabled.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Second row of seats"
6. "Disable controller"

Standing air conditioning

Principle

Standing air conditioning cools or warms the interior to a comfortable temperature before starting to drive.

In addition, the system cools, ventilates or heats automatically depending on the inside and outside temperature. Any snow and ice can be easier to remove.

General

The standing air conditioning can be switched on and off directly or for a preselected departure time.

The air automatically flows out of the air outlets to the windscreen, side windows, upper body area and the footwell.

The system is switched off automatically after a certain period of time.

If the standing air conditioning is used during charging, less air conditioning power will be required during the journey. This optimises the range.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Vehicle is in rest or standby state and not in drive-ready state.
- ▷ High-voltage battery is adequately charged or charging cable is connected.

  With a discharged high-voltage battery, it may take some time after connecting the charging cable before the standing air conditioning is ready to function.
- ▷ Direct operation or preselected departure time: depends on the inside, outside and set desired temperature.

  Ensure that the date and time are set correctly in the vehicle.
- ▷ To ensure the vehicle can be started, the standing air conditioning may be switched off automatically, for example after switching on several times or due to the high-voltage battery being insufficiently charged. Following switch-off due to insufficient charging, charge the high-voltage battery. The stationary air conditioning will be available again.
- ▷ Open the outlets to allow the air to enter the passenger compartment.

Switching on/off directly

Principle

The system can be switched on or off in various ways.

The system switches off automatically after approx. 30 minutes.

Using the button

General

If the vehicle is in standby state, the system can be switched on or off via the buttons of the automatic air conditioning.

Switching on

Press any button, except:

- ▷ Rear window heating.
- ▷ Lower side of air flow button.
- ▷ Seat heating.

Switching off

Press and hold the down button.

The system switches itself off when you leave the vehicle.

Via iDrive

The system can be switched on or off using iDrive.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Auxiliary climate control"
5. "Start now"

Via vehicle key

The system can be switched on using the vehicle key.

The stationary air conditioning function must be set for the button on the vehicle key.

Press the button on the vehicle key.

The system shuts down automatically after approximately 30 minutes or by activating the drive-ready state.

For further information:

For settings, see page 113.

Display

symbol on the automatic air conditioning signals that the system is switched on.

Air conditioning for departure time

Principle

To ensure a pleasant interior temperature in the vehicle at the start of the journey, it is possible to set different departure times.

The switch-on time is automatically determined from the temperature.

Departure time with day of the week: the time and day of the week can be set.

The system is switched on in good time before the set departure time on the required days of the week.

Switch-off takes place automatically a few minutes after the set departure time.

Preselection of departure time is done in two stages:

- ▷ Set the departure times.
- ▷ Activate the departure time.

At least 10 minutes should pass between adjusting/activating the departure time and the scheduled departure time, so the climate control has enough time to work.

Setting the departure time

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Auxiliary climate control"
5. "Departure schedule"
6. Select the required departure time.
7. Set the departure time.
8. Select the day of the week if necessary.

Activating the departure time

Operating requirements

If a departure time should influence activation of the standing air conditioning, the relevant departure time must be activated first.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Auxiliary climate control"
5. Activate "Preconditioning for departure".
6. "Departure schedule"
7. Select the required departure time.
8. Set the departure time.
9. Select the day of the week if necessary.
10. "Activate departure"

Display

Symbol on the automatic air conditioning system signals that a departure time has been activated.

symbol on the automatic air conditioning signals that the system is switched on.

Activating with the BMW Connected App

With a corresponding BMW app with remote function, the system can be switched on at a preselected departure time or directly.

Interior equipment

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Sun visor

Glare protection

Fold the sun visor downwards or upwards.

Protection from glare at the side

Folding out

1. Fold down the sun visor.
2. Unhook the sun visor from its holder and pivot it sideways to the side window.

Folding up

To close the sun visor, proceed in reverse order.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located behind a cover in the sun visor. The mirror light switches on when the cover is opened.

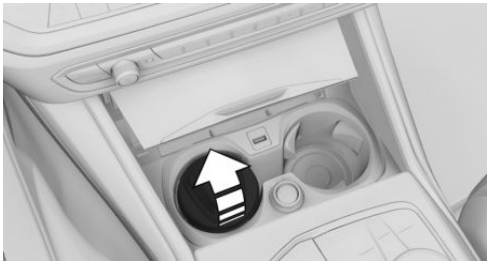
Ashtrays

Front centre console

Opening

1. Press the cover.

2. The ashtray is located in one of the cup holders. Fold the cover of the ashtray upwards.



Emptying

With the cover closed, pull the ashtray out of the cup holder.

Lighter

Safety notes

WARNING

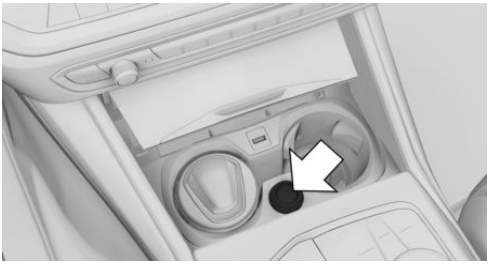
Contact with the hot heating element or the hot socket of the lighter can cause burns. Flammable materials can catch fire if the lighter is dropped or is held against objects. There is a risk of fire and injury. There is a risk of material damage. Take hold of the lighter by its handle. Ensure that children do not use the lighter.

NOTE

If metallic objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of material damage. After using the socket, re-fit the lighter or socket cover.

Front centre console

Press the cover.



The lighter is located between the cupholders.

Operation

Press in the lighter.

The lighter can be removed when it pops back out.

Sockets

Principle

The cigarette lighter attachment can be used as a socket for electrical devices when standby state or drive-ready state is switched on.

General

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

To avoid damage to the socket, do not insert an incompatible plug.

Safety notes

WARNING

Devices and cables, for example portable navigation devices, that are located in the deployment range of the airbags may impede airbag deployment or be thrown around the vehicle interior when the airbag is deployed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that devices and cables are not in the deployment range of the airbags.

NOTE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery may operate with high voltages and high currents which can overload or damage the 12-volt onboard network. There is a risk of material damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

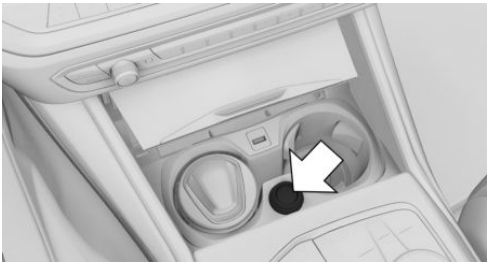
NOTE

If metallic objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of material damage. After using the socket, re-fit the lighter or socket cover.

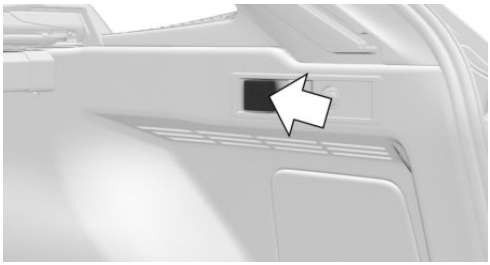
Front centre console

1. Press the cover.

2. The socket is located between the cupholders. Pull off the cover.



Inside the luggage compartment



There is a socket on the right side of the luggage compartment. Open the cap.

USB port

General

Please comply with the notes on connecting mobile devices to the USB port in the chapter on USB connections.

For further information:

USB connections, see page 91.

In the centre armrest

There is a USB port in the centre armrest.

Properties:

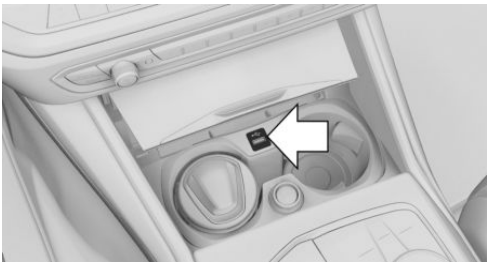
- ▷ USB port type C.
- ▷ For charging mobile devices.
- ▷ Charging current: max. 3 A.
- ▷ With navigation system: for data transfer.

In the front centre console

NOTE

Objects in the storage compartment, for example large USB connectors, can block or damage the cover on opening and closing. There is a risk of material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the cover is kept clear.

Press the cover.



There is a USB port in the centre console.

Properties:

- ▷ USB port type A.
- ▷ For charging mobile devices and transferring data.
- ▷ Charge current: maximum 1.5 A.

In the rear centre console

There are two USB ports in the rear centre console.

Properties:

- ▷ USB port type C.
- ▷ For charging mobile devices.
- ▷ Charge current: maximum 3 A per port.

Wireless charging dock

Principle

The wireless charging dock permits the following functions to be performed wirelessly:

- ▷ Charging of Qi-compatible mobile phones or other mobile devices which support the Qi standard.
- ▷ Connection of the mobile telephone to the external aerial.

  This ensures better network reception and a consistent reproduction quality, depending on the country.

General

When inserting the mobile telephone, make sure there are no objects between it and the wireless charging dock.

During charging, the surface of the dock and the mobile telephone can become hot. At higher temperatures, the charging current through the mobile telephone may be reduced; in exceptional cases, the charging process is temporarily interrupted. Observe the relevant information in the operating instructions for the mobile telephone.

The charge indicator shows on the Control Display whether a mobile telephone with Qi capability is being charged.

Safety notes

WARNING

When charging a Qi-compatible device in the wireless charging dock, any metal objects located between the device and the dock can become very hot. If storage media or electronic cards, for example smart cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for transmitting signals, are placed between the device and the

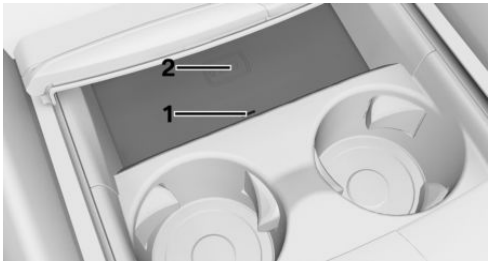
dock, this may impair card function. There is a risk of injury and material damage. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects between the device and the dock.

NOTE

The dock is designed for mobile telephones up to a certain size. Using excessive force when inserting the mobile telephone may damage the dock or the mobile telephone. There is a risk of material damage. Observe the maximum dimensions for the mobile telephone. Do not force the mobile telephone into the dock.

Overview

Tray in the centre console:



1 LED

2 Storage area

Operating requirements

- ▷ The mobile telephone must support and be compatible with the required Qi standard.

  If the mobile telephone does not support the Qi standard, the mobile telephone can be charged using a special Qi-compatible charging pad.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Note the maximum dimensions of the mobile telephone.
- ▷ Only use protective sleeves and covers up to a maximum thickness of 2 mm, 0.07 in, otherwise the charging function may be impaired.
- ▷ The mobile telephone to be charged is located in the middle of the dock.

Operation

Inserting the mobile telephone

TThe maximum size for the mobile phone is approximately 154.5 x 80 x 18 mm, 6.06 x 3.1 x 0.7 in.

1. Open the cover of the dock.
2. Place the mobile telephone in the centre of the dock with the display facing upwards.
3. Close the cover of the dock.

Removing the mobile telephone

1. Open the cover of the dock.
2. Remove the mobile telephone.

LED displays

Colour	Meaning
Blue	The mobile telephone is charging. The blue LED stays illuminated once the inserted Qi-compatible mobile telephone is fully charged.
Orange	The mobile telephone is not charging. The mobile phone may be exposed to excessively high temperatures or there may be foreign bodies in the charging dock.
Red	The mobile telephone is not charging. Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Forgotten phone warning

General

If the vehicle is equipped with the forgotten phone warning function, a warning can be output if a mobile telephone with Qi capability has been left in the wireless charging dock when exiting the vehicle.

The forgotten phone warning is shown in the instrument cluster.

Activating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Wireless charging tray"
5. Activate reminder.

System limits

If the mobile phone or the vehicle interior is exposed to excessively high temperatures, the charging functions of the mobile telephone might be restricted and functions might no longer work.

Storage compartments

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Storage facilities

General

The vehicle interior contains multiple storage compartments for stowing objects.

Safety notes

WARNING

Loose objects or devices connected by a cable to the vehicle, for example mobile telephones, may be thrown around the interior during the journey, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out an evasive manoeuvre. There is a risk of injury. Ensure that loose objects or devices connected by cable to the vehicle are secured in place in the interior.

NOTE

Anti-slip mats can damage the instrument panel. There is a risk of material damage. Do not use anti-slip mats.

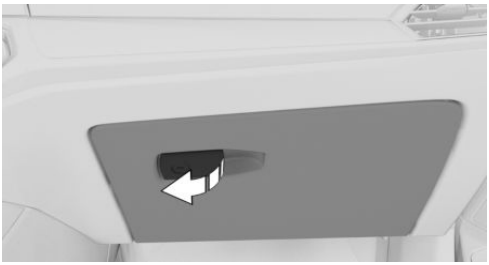
Glove compartment on the passenger side

Safety note

WARNING

The glove compartment protrudes into the interior when it is open. Objects in the glove compartment may be thrown around the interior during the journey, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or taking evasive action. There is a risk of injury. Immediately close the glove compartment after using it.

Opening



Pull the handle.

The lighting in the glove compartment comes on.

Closing

Shut the lid.

Glove compartment on driver's side

Safety note

WARNING

The glove compartment protrudes into the interior when it is open. Objects in the glove compartment may be thrown around the interior during the journey, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or taking evasive action. There is a risk of injury. Immediately close the glove compartment after using it.

Opening

Pull the handle.

Closing

Shut the lid.

Pockets in the doors

General

There are storage compartments in the doors.

Safety note

WARNING

Breakable objects, for example glass bottles or glasses, may get broken in the event of an accident or when braking or taking evasive action. Shards may scatter throughout the interior. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Do not use breakable objects during a journey. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

Storage compartment in the centre console

Opening

Press the cover.

Closing

Pull back the cover on the handle strip.

Storage compartment in the rear of the centre console

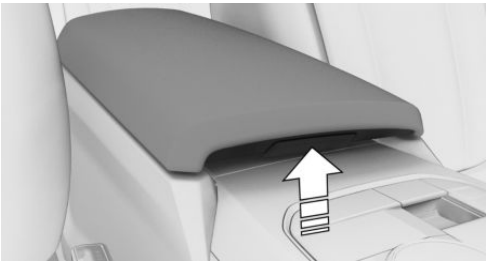
Depending on the vehicle equipment, there may be a storage compartment on the back of the centre console.

Front centre armrest

General

There is a storage compartment in the centre armrest between the seats.

Opening



Press the button.

Closing

Push the cover down until it engages.

Cup holder front

Safety note

WARNING

Unsuitable containers placed in the cupholders may damage the cupholders or be flung into the interior, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out evasive manoeuvres. Spilt liquids can distract the driver from the road and lead to an accident. Hot beverages may damage the cup holders or cause scalding. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use lightweight, sealable and shatterproof containers. Do not transport hot drinks.

Opening

Press the cover.

There are two cup holders in the centre console.

Closing

Pull back the cover on the handle strip.

Cup holder rear

Safety notes

WARNING

Unsuitable containers placed in the cupholders may damage the cupholders or be flung into the interior, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out evasive manoeuvres. Spilt liquids can distract the driver from the road and lead to an accident. Hot beverages may damage the cup holders or cause scalding. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Do not force objects into the cup

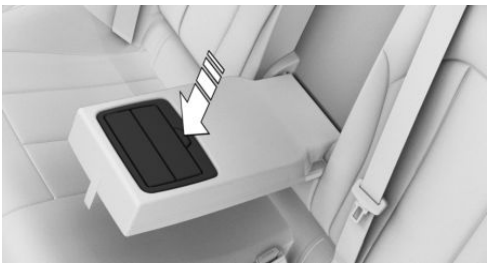
holder. Use lightweight, sealable and shatter-proof containers. Do not transport hot drinks.

NOTE

If the cup holder is open, the centre armrest cannot be folded back. There is a risk of material damage. Push back the covers before folding up the centre armrest.

Opening

1. Pull centre armrest forward with the loop.
2. To open the cupholder, press the button.



Closing

Push both covers back in one after the other and fold back the centre armrest.

Coat hooks

General

The coat hooks are located on the grab handles in the rear.

Safety notes

WARNING

Items of clothing on the coat hooks can impair visibility when driving. There is a risk of accident. Hang items of clothing from the coat hooks so that they do not obstruct visibility when driving.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the coat hooks can present a danger, for example if objects are thrown around as a result of braking or evasive action. There is a risk of injury and material damage. Only hang lightweight objects, for example items of clothing, on the coat hooks.

Luggage compartment

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Loads

Safety notes

WARNING

A high gross vehicle weight can make the tyres overheat, causing internal damage and a sudden loss of tyre inflation pressure. Handling characteristics may be adversely affected, for example reduced directional stability, longer stopping distance and altered steering characteristics. There is a risk of accident. Please comply with the permitted load index of the tyre, and do not exceed the permitted gross vehicle weight.

WARNING

If the permitted total weight and the permitted axle loads are exceeded, the operational safety of the vehicle is no longer guaranteed. There is a risk of accident. Do not exceed the permitted total weight and permitted axle loads.

WARNING

Loose objects or devices connected by a cable to the vehicle, for example mobile telephones, may be thrown around the interior during the journey, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out an evasive manoeuvre. There is a risk of injury. Ensure that loose objects or devices connected by cable to the vehicle are secured in place in the interior.

WARNING

Incorrectly stowed objects may slip or be thrown into the interior, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out an evasive manoeuvre. Vehicle occupants could be struck and injured. There is a risk of injury. Stow and secure objects and the load correctly.

NOTE

Liquids in the luggage compartment may cause damage. There is a risk of material damage. Ensure that no liquids leak out into the luggage compartment.

Stowing and securing loads in the vehicle

- ▷ Wrap protective material around any sharp corners and edges on the load.
- ▷ Heavy loads: stow as far forward and as low down as possible, ideally directly behind the rear backrests.
- ▷ Very heavy loads: stow as far forward as possible, low down and directly behind the rear seat backrests. If there are no passengers on

the back seat, insert both outer seat belts into the respective opposite buckles.

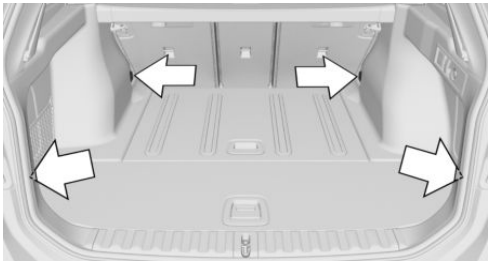
- ▷ Fully fold down the rear backrests if a large load is to be stowed.
- ▷ Do not stack load items above the upper edge of the backrests.
- ▷ Small and lightweight loads: secure with tensioning straps or, depending on the equipment, a luggage compartment net or other suitable straps.
- ▷ Large and heavy loads: secure with lashing straps.

Lashing eyes in the luggage compartment

General

Load-securing equipment, for example lashing straps, tensioning straps or luggage nets, must be secured to the lashing eyes in the boot.

Lashing eyes



Four lashing eyes are located in the luggage compartment for securing loads.

Bag holders

General

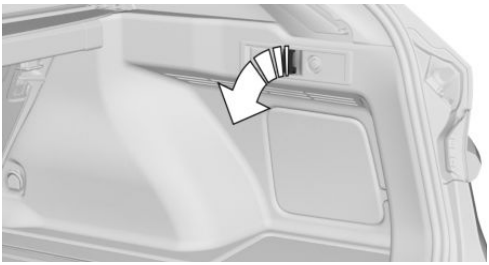
There is a bag holder on the right side in the luggage compartment.

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the bag holders can present a danger, for example if objects are flung around in the event of braking and evasive manoeuvres. There is a risk of injury and material damage. Only hang light objects, for example shopping bags, on the bag holders. Only transport heavy luggage in the luggage compartment if suitably secured.

Folding down



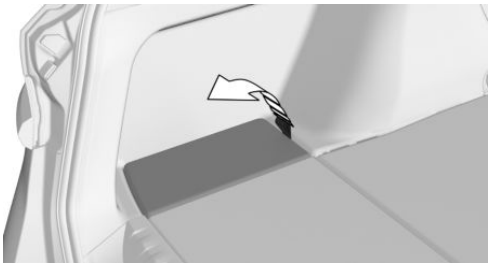
Fold open the bag holder until it detectably engages in the lower position.

Side storage compartment, left

General

There is a storage compartment on the left side of the luggage compartment.

Opening



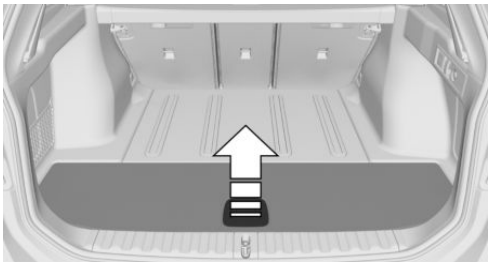
Pull the tab.

Storage compartment under the luggage compartment floor

General

There is a storage compartment under the luggage compartment floor.

Opening



Pull the handle and fold the luggage compartment floor upwards.

Closing

Push the luggage compartment floor down until it engages.

Through-loading system

Principle

The boot can be expanded by folding down the rear seat backrests.

General

The rear backrest is split 40–20–40. The rear seat backrests on each side and the middle part can be folded down individually.

Depending on the equipment, the rear backrests can be folded down from the rear or from the boot.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

Risk of entrapment when folding down the rear backrest. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Before folding down, make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest and the head restraint is kept clear.

⚠ WARNING

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured cargo may be flung into the interior, for example in the event of an accident or during braking or evasive manoeuvres. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked after it has been folded back.

⚠ WARNING

If the seat is not adjusted properly or the child seat has been installed incorrectly, the child restraint system may have limited stability or may not be stable at all. There is a risk of injury or even death. Make sure that the child restraint system rests firmly against the backrest. Wherever possible, adapt the backrest angle of all the relevant seat backrests and adjust the seats

correctly. Make sure that the seats and their backrests are correctly engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints, or remove them.

WARNING

Once the rear backrest has been folded down, the locking bracket protrudes into the interior. There is a risk of material damage. When the rear seat backrest is folded down, watch out for the protruding locking bracket and keep this area clear.

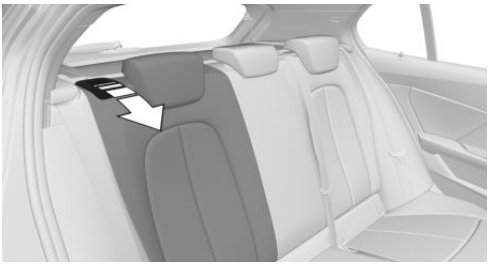
NOTE

Vehicle parts can be damaged when folding down the rear backrest. There is a risk of material damage. When folding down, make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest including head restraint is kept clear.

Folding down the rear backrest manually

From the rear

1. If necessary, remove the corresponding head restraint.
2. Pull the lever in the recess and fold the rear seat backrest forwards.



Folding back the rear backrest

Fold the rear seat backrest back into seat position and engage. Ensure that the seat belt is not jammed. The red mark behind the recess disappears completely.

Folding down the rear backrest electrically

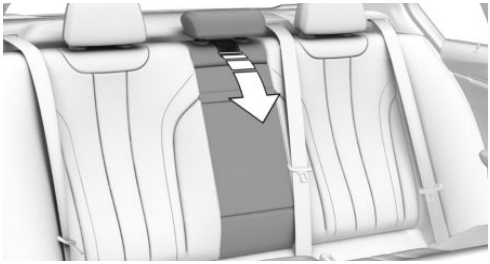
From the luggage compartment

Pull switch in the luggage compartment.

- ▷ Top switch: right rear backrest folds forwards.
- ▷ Bottom switch: left and middle rear backrests fold forwards.

Folding down the middle part

1. Fold down the middle head restraint.
2. Pull the lever and fold the middle part forwards.



Luggage compartment cover

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

Loose objects or devices connected by a cable to the vehicle, for example mobile telephones, may be thrown around the interior during the journey, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out an evasive manoeuvre. There is a risk of injury. Ensure that loose objects or devices connected by cable to the vehicle are secured in place in the interior.

⚠ WARNING

If the boot cover is not inserted correctly, it may be thrown around the interior during the journey, for example in the event of an accident or during braking or evasive manoeuvres. There is a risk of injury and material damage. Make sure that the luggage compartment cover is engaged securely in the brackets.

Closing

Remove luggage compartment cover, arrow 1, and hang on the brackets on both sides, arrow 2.

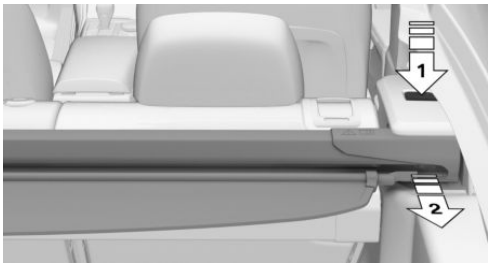
Raising

For loading, the withdrawn luggage compartment cover can be raised. To do this, push the front area of the luggage compartment cover upwards.

Before closing the rear window or tailgate, push the luggage compartment cover downwards until it clicks.

Removing

The cover can be removed for stowing bulky items.



Press the release button, arrow 1, and pull the case for the luggage compartment cover towards the rear, arrow 2.

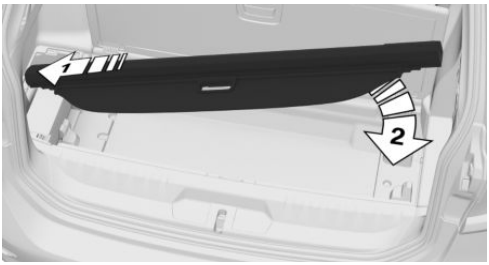
The luggage compartment cover can be stowed in the storage compartment under the luggage compartment floor.

Stowing away

1. Open the storage compartment under the luggage compartment floor.
2. Open the side storage compartment and remove the lid.

   Side storage compartment, left, see page 330.

3. Insert the left side of the luggage compartment cover into the holder under the side trim panel, arrow 1.



4. Lower the right side of the luggage compartment cover, arrow 2.
5. Close the storage compartments.

Inserting

Slide the case for the luggage compartment cover into the mounts on the side trim panel. Make sure that the case audibly engages on both sides.

Luggage net

General

The luggage net can be installed in two different positions in the vehicle.

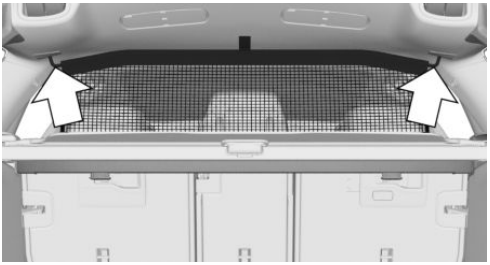
Safety note

WARNING

Injuries or damage can occur when the luggage net rolls closed rapidly. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Do not permit the luggage net to roll rapidly closed.

With the rear backrest upright

1. Fold open rear covers on the headliner until they audibly engage.
2. Grip the loop and pull the luggage net out of its case.
3. Insert the rods on both sides upwards into the brackets on the headliner and push forwards.



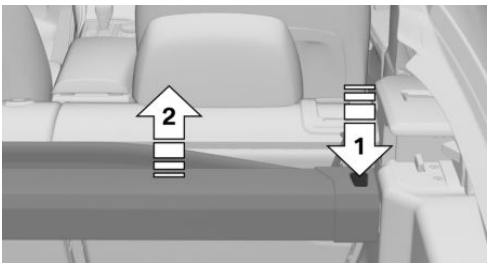
When the luggage net is no longer needed, reverse the procedure.

With the rear backrest folded down

Moving the luggage compartment separating net forwards

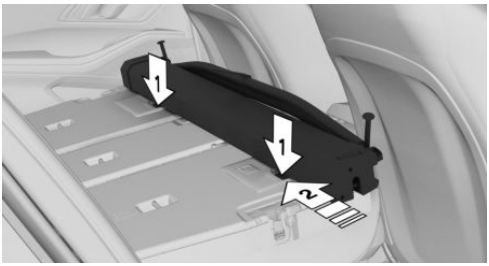
1. Fold the rear seat backrests forwards.
2. Remove the luggage compartment cover.

   Removing, see page 333.
3. Press the button, arrow 1, to unlock the case of the luggage compartment separating net at both sides.



4. Remove the case upwards from both side brackets, arrow 2. Take care not to get the case jammed.

5. Position the case at the rear of the backrests, arrows 1.



6. Push the case to the left until the guides reach their limit position, arrow 2. Make sure that the red mark on the backrest is no longer visible.

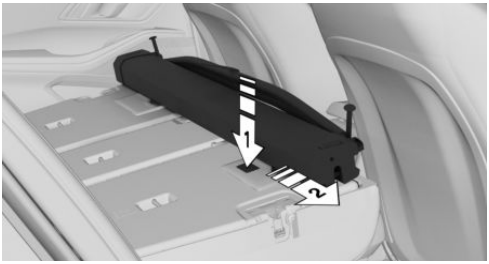
Hooking on the luggage net

1. Fold open front covers on the headliner.
2. Swiftly pull out the luggage net. Insert the two side rods into the front brackets on the headliner and push forwards, as in a normal luggage compartment with the rear seat backrest upright. If removal is blocked, push luggage compartment separating net back in and smoothly remove again.

   With the rear seat backrest upright, see page 334.

Moving the luggage net backwards

1. Remove the case with the luggage net: press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the case, arrow 2.



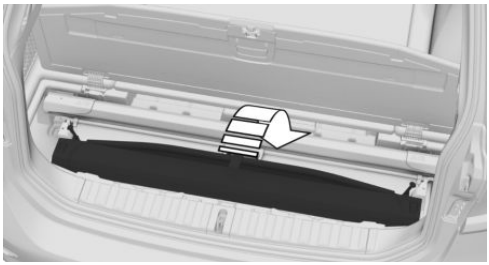
2. Push the case from above into both brackets in the side trim panel behind the rear seat backrests, until the case engages on both sides. The red warning zones on the buttons disappear.
3. Fold the rear seat backrests back.

Stowing away

The luggage net can be stowed under the luggage compartment floor.

1. Open the storage compartment under the luggage compartment floor.
2. Open the side storage compartment and remove the lid.

   Side storage compartment, left, see page 330.
3. Fit the case into the mounts.
4. Pull the luggage compartment separating net out a little and fold downwards.



5. Close the storage compartments.

Driving precautions

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Running in

General

Moving parts need to adjust to each other.

The following notes will help to maximise the vehicle's lifetime and efficiency.

Do not use Launch Control when running in.

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

New parts and components can cause safety and Driver Assistance Systems to respond with a delay. There is a risk of accident. After new parts have been installed or if the vehicle is new, drive moderately and take action promptly if necessary. Please comply with running-in procedures for the corresponding parts and components.

Engine, gearbox and differential

General

The revolution counter is available in SPORT driving mode or in the M/S sport program.

Up to 2000 km, 1200 miles

Do not exceed the maximum engine revs and speed:

▷ With petrol engines, 4500 rpm and 160 km/h, 100 mph.

Generally avoid kick-down and driving under full load.

From 2000 km, 1200 miles onwards

Engine and road speeds can be gradually increased.

Tyres

Due to the manufacturing process, new tyres do not achieve their full road grip immediately.

Drive moderately for the first 300 km, 200 miles.

Brake system

Brake discs and pads only achieve their full effectiveness after approximately 500 km, 300 miles. Drive moderately during this running-in period.

After fitting new parts

Please comply with the running-in procedures again if the components previously referred to are renewed.

General driving information

Closing the rear window and tailgate

Safety note

WARNING

An open rear window or tailgate projects beyond the vehicle, and in the event of an accident, braking or evasive manoeuvres, it can endanger vehicle occupants and other road users, or damage the vehicle. There is also a risk of exhaust fumes entering the interior of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Do not drive with the rear window or tailgate open.

Driving with the rear window and tailgate open

If there is no alternative to driving with the tailgate open:

- ▷ Close all the windows and the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Adjust the blower to a high setting.
- ▷ Maintain a moderate speed.

Hot exhaust system

WARNING

High temperatures may occur under the vehicle body during driving, for example because of the exhaust system. Contact with the exhaust system can lead to burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch the hot exhaust system, including the exhaust pipe.

WARNING

If flammable materials, for example leaves or grass, come into contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can catch fire. There is a risk of fire and injury. Never remove the heat shields fitted here or apply underseal to them. Make sure that when driving, idling or parking, no flammable materials can come into contact with hot vehicle parts.

Exhaust gas particle filter

Principle

The exhaust gas particle filter collects soot particles. The soot particles are burned at high temperatures to clean the exhaust gas particle filter as necessary.

General

The cleaning process takes a few minutes, during which the following may occur:

- ▷ The engine may temporarily run a little roughly.
- ▷ A slightly higher engine speed may be required to achieve the usual power output.
- ▷ There may be a small amount of smoke from the exhaust, even after stopping the engine.
- ▷ Noise, for example caused by the radiator fan running, may be heard, even some minutes after stopping the engine.

It is normal for the radiator fan to keep running for several minutes, even after short trips.

Cleaning the exhaust gas particle filter while driving

Various driver profiles ensure that the exhaust gas particle filter is self-cleaning. If, in addition to the self-cleaning function, the exhaust gas particle filter needs to be actively cleaned while driving, a Check Control message is displayed.

Proceed as follows the next time you drive outside of built-up areas for around 30 minutes.

With petrol engine:

- ▷ Deactivate cruise Control systems.
- ▷ Take your foot off the accelerator repeatedly and allow the vehicle to roll in overrun mode.

  For further information:

  Make use of overrun mode, see page 349.
- ▷ If possible, drive at alternating speeds.

Radio signals

⚠ WARNING

Certain vehicle functions may be affected by interference from high-frequency radio signals. Such signals are output from a series of transmission systems, for example from air traffic beacons or relay stations for mobile telecommunications.

We recommend you consult your Service Centre should you experience any difficulties.

Mobile communication in the vehicle

⚠ WARNING

There is a possibility of reciprocal interference between the vehicle electronics and mobile radio devices. Radiation is generated when mobile radio devices are transmitting. There is a risk of injury or material damage. If possible, only use mobile radio devices, for example mobile telephones, in the interior if they are connected directly to an external aerial in order to eliminate reciprocal interference and to divert the radiation away from the vehicle's interior.

Aquaplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tyres and the road.

This situation, known as aquaplaning, means that the tyre can actually lose contact completely with the road surface and the vehicle can neither be steered, nor the brakes properly applied.

Driving through water

General

Please comply with the following when driving through water:

- ▷ Deactivate the Automatic Start/Stop function.
- ▷ Only drive through still water.
- ▷ Only drive through water up to a max. depth of 25 cm, 9.8 in.
- ▷ Drive through water at a walking speed of no more than 5 km/h, 3 mph.

Safety note

⚠ NOTE

Driving through excessively deep water too fast can result in water entering the engine compartment, electrical system or transmission. There is a risk of material damage. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum water depth and speed specified above.

Safe braking

General

The vehicle is equipped with an Anti-lock Brake System ABS as standard.

Perform full braking in situations that require it.

The vehicle remains steerable. Any obstacles can be avoided by steering as smoothly as possible.

A pulsing of the brake pedal and hydraulic regulating sounds indicate that the Anti-lock Brake System ABS is functioning.

In certain braking situations, the perforated brake discs can cause functional noise. However, the

functional noises have no effect on the efficiency and operational safety of the brakes.

Objects in the range of movement of the pedals

WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can restrict the pedal travel or block a pedal that has been pressed. There is a risk of accident. Ensure that items in the vehicle are stowed securely and cannot get into the driver's footwell. Only use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be securely fastened to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats, and do not place several floor mats on top of one another. Make sure that there is sufficient space for the pedals. Ensure that floor mats are securely reattached after removal, for example for cleaning.

Wet roads

In wet weather, on gritted roads and in heavy rain, apply the brakes lightly every few kilometres/miles.

Ensure that you do not obstruct other road users when doing so.

The heat generated by braking dries the brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

This helps to maintain the brake power so that it is available immediately when needed.

Downhill gradients

General

When driving on long or steep downhill stretches, use the gear in which the least braking is required. Otherwise the brake system can overheat and the braking effect is reduced.

Engine braking effect can be additionally increased by manually shifting down, even into first gear, if applicable.

Safety notes

WARNING

Even slight but continuous pressure on the brake pedal can cause overheating, brake pad wear or even brake system failure. There is a risk of accident. Avoid excessive loads on the brake.

WARNING

When idling, in the ECO PRO drive mode or with the drive-ready state switched off, safety-relevant functions are restricted or no longer available, for example the braking effect of the engine or power assistance for the braking force and steering. There is a risk of accident. Do not drive at idle speed, in the ECO PRO drive mode or with the drive-ready state switched off.

Corrosion of the brake discs

Corrosion of the brake discs and contamination of the brake pads increase in the following circumstances:

- Low mileage.
- Extended periods when the vehicle is not used.
- Infrequent use of the brakes.
- Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents.

During braking, corroded brake discs may cause brake judder which usually cannot be eliminated.

Condensation when vehicle is parked

When the automatic air conditioning is in operation, condensation develops and exits underneath the vehicle.

Roof rack

General

Fitting only possible with roof railing.

Roof racks are available as special equipment.

Safety note

WARNING

When driving with a roof load, for example with a roof rack, the higher centre of gravity can mean that driving safety is no longer guaranteed in critical driving situations. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Do not deactivate Dynamic Stability Control DSC when driving with a roof load.

Fitting

Follow the installation instructions for the roof rack.

Make sure that there is sufficient space to raise and open the glass sunroof.

Loads

A loaded roof rack alters the vehicle's road behaviour and steering response by shifting its centre of gravity.

When loading and driving, bear the following in mind:

- ▷ Do not exceed the permitted roof and axle loads or the permitted gross weight.
- ▷ Make sure that there is sufficient space to raise and open the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Distribute the roof load evenly.
- ▷ The roof load must not be spread over a large area.
- ▷ Place heavy items of luggage at the bottom.
- ▷ Securely fasten the luggage, for example with tensioning straps.
- ▷ Do not allow objects to protrude into the swing range of the tailgate.
- ▷ Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration, braking or cornering.

Rear luggage rack

Principle

The ball linkage of the trailer tow hitch can be used as a mount for rear luggage racks; for example bicycle rack systems.

General

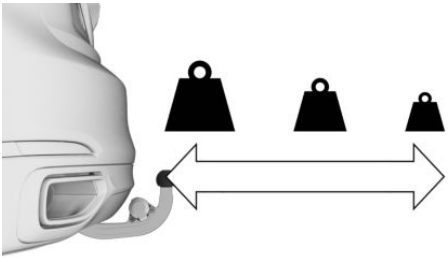
Rear luggage racks that have been classified as suitable by the vehicle manufacturer are available as special equipment.

Bicycle rack systems for up to three bicycles can be used.

Fitting

Follow the installation instructions for the rear luggage rack.

Loads



The permitted gross weight of the rear luggage rack when loaded depends on how far its centre of gravity is from the ball linkage.

- ▷ If the centre of gravity is up to 30 cm, 11.8 in from the ball linkage, the gross weight of the rear luggage rack must not exceed 75 kg/165 lbs.

- If the centre of gravity is 60 cm, 23.5 in from the ball linkage, the gross weight of the rear luggage rack must not exceed 35 kg/77 lbs.
- Stow heavy loads as close as possible to the ball linkage.
- Fasten loads securely to the rear luggage rack and secure them against sliding around.

Before a journey

Before beginning the journey, check that the rear lights on the rear luggage rack are working.

The maximum output of the rear luggage rack rear lights must not exceed the values for trailer rear lights.

To prevent functional limitations and malfunctions affecting driver assistance systems, activate towing a trailer operation.

For further information:

- Power consumption, see page 343.
- Activating trailer operation, see page 345.

Driving with a rear luggage rack

When laden, the rear luggage rack alters the vehicle's handling and steering response due to the centre of gravity having been shifted.

When loading and driving, bear the following in mind:

- Do not exceed the permitted axle load or the permitted gross weight.
- Drive smoothly and avoid sudden acceleration and braking or fast cornering.

Driving on a racing track

WARNING

The vehicle is not designed for use in motorsport competitions or similar. There is a risk of accident. Do not use the vehicle in motorsport competitions or similar.

The higher mechanical and thermal loads involved in driving on racing tracks lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty.

Before and after driving on a racing track, have the vehicle checked at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Towing a trailer

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

The permitted trailer loads, axle loads, trailer nose weights and gross vehicle weight rating are specified in the technical data.

Consult a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

The vehicle is equipped with reinforced springs on the rear axle and, depending on the type, with a more powerful cooling system.

For Australia/New Zealand: note

Towing

The Australian/New Zealand Standards AS 4177.1-2004 Caravan and light Towing a trailer components – trailer tow hitches and towing brackets contains the following statement, which is hereby accepted by the BMW Group Australia: FOR TOWING ONLY. The trailer tow hitch supplied with your BMW vehicle should only be used for towing purposes, the trailer tow hitch assembly should not be used in conjunction with any towbar-mounted carrying device, such as, for example, a bicycle carrying rack.

As all BMW Group towbar assemblies are designed, tested and approved as a single unit, the practice of modifying or replacing the BMW supplied towball mount assembly is not approved. Use only the genuine BMW towball mount assembly.

BMW Group Australia does not recommend or support the installation and use of a Weight Distribution Hitch or Load Levelling Device on any BMW Group vehicle. The use of such devices may affect the vehicle's warranty status.

We recommend you consult your Authorised BMW Dealer for any further advice or clarification.

Before a journey

Trailer nose weight

The trailer nose weight should not be less than the minimum trailer nose weight of 25 kg, 55 lb. Utilise the maximum trailer nose weight as far as possible.

The weight of the trailer tow hitch and the nose weight reduce the maximum load of the towing vehicle. The nose weight increases the vehicle weight. Do not exceed the permitted total weight of the towing vehicle.

Loads

Distribute the load as evenly as possible over the loading area.

Stow the load as low as possible and as close as possible to the trailer axle. A low centre of trailer gravity makes the car/trailer combination much more stable and safe to drive.

The permitted total weight of the trailer and the permitted trailer load of the vehicle must not be

exceeded. The lower value is the limit which should be adhered to.

Tyre inflation pressure

Check the vehicle's and the trailer's tyre inflation pressures carefully.

On the vehicle, the tyre inflation pressure for higher loads applies.

For the trailer, the regulations of the manufacturer apply.

For further information:

Tyre inflation pressure information, see page 368.

Runflat indicator RPA

Initialise the runflat indicator after the tyre inflation pressure has been corrected or a trailer has been attached or detached.

For further information:

Runflat indicator RPA, see page 386.

Tyre Pressure Monitor

Reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor after the tyre inflation pressure has been corrected or a trailer has been attached or detached.

For further information:

Tyre Pressure Monitor, see page 379.

Exterior mirror

Two exterior mirrors which bring both rear corners of the trailer into your field of view are required by law. Mirrors of this type are available as special equipment from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Power consumption

General

Before beginning your journey, check the function of the trailer rear lights.

When towing a caravan, keep the activation times of power consumers short to avoid placing an excessive load on the vehicle battery.

Not Australia/New Zealand: Trailer rear lights

The power output of the trailer's rear lights must not exceed the following values:

- ▷ Turn indicators: 42 watt per side.
- ▷ Tail lights: 50 watt per side.
- ▷ Brake lights: 84 watt total.
- ▷ Rear fog lights: 42 watt total.
- ▷ Reversing lights: 42 watt total.

Australia/New Zealand: Trailer rear lights

- ▷ Turn indicators: 54 watt per side.
- ▷ Tail lights: 100 watt in total.
- ▷ Brake lights: 108 watt total.
- ▷ Reversing lights: 54 watt total.

Towing a trailer

General

When the trailer socket is in use, some driver assistance systems are unavailable, or available to a limited extent. A Check Control message is shown where applicable.

In order to avoid malfunctions, activate towing a trailer mode.

For further information:

Activating trailer operation, see page 345.

Safety notes

WARNING

Speeds in excess of approximately 80 km/h, 50 mph, can be enough to produce snaking motion, depending on the design of trailers and the loads they are carrying. There is a risk of accident or material damage.

Keep to an appropriate speed when towing a trailer. If the trailer starts to snake, brake immediately and make the necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

WARNING

The tyre inflation pressure must be adapted because of the increased axle load when towing a trailer. Driving with inadequate tyre inflation pressure can damage the tyres. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Do not exceed a speed of 100 km/h / 60 mph. Increase the tyre inflation pressure of the towing vehicle by 0.2 bar. Note the maximum possible tyre inflation pressure stated on the tyre.

Upward gradients

General

In the interest of safety and to avoid holding up other traffic, do not attempt to climb upward gradients steeper than 12 % when towing a trailer.

If higher trailer loads have been retrospectively approved, the limit is 8%.

Driving off on upward gradients

The parking brake is automatically released when the accelerator pedal is operated.

To prevent the vehicle from rolling back when driving off, use the parking brake.

1. Shortly before driving off, pull and release the switch.
   The parking brake is engaged.
2. To drive off, press the accelerator pedal with sufficient force.

Downhill gradients

On downward gradients, a car/trailer combination tends to start snaking earlier.

Before the downward gradient, shift down manually to the next-lowest gear and drive downwards slowly.

Trailer Stability Control

Principle

The system helps you to neutralise a trailer's tendency to swing from side to side.

Trailer Stability Control detects snaking movements and promptly brakes the vehicle so that road speed falls to below the critical range and the car/trailer combination is stabilised.

General

If the power socket for the trailer is in use but no trailer is attached, for example when using a bicycle carrier with lighting, the system may become active in extreme driving situations.

Operating requirements

The system is operational from a speed of approximately 65 km/h, 40 mph, when towing a trailer and with the trailer socket in use.

System limits

The system is unable to intervene or intervenes too late, in the following situations for example:

- ▷ If a trailer folds instantly, for example on slippery or loose road surfaces.
- ▷ If a trailer with a high centre of gravity tips over before snaking is detected.
- ▷ If Dynamic Stability Control DSC is deactivated or has malfunctioned.

▷ If the power consumption of a trailer is too low to be detected by the system, for example due to LED rear lights.

Activating towing a trailer mode

Principle

When driving with a trailer or load carrier and the trailer socket occupied, some driver assistance systems may have functional limitations or may malfunction. In order to avoid malfunctions, activate towing a trailer mode.

Activating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Trailer mode"
5. "Trailer mode"

Not for Australia/New Zealand: Trailer tow hitch with electrically swivellable trailer hitch

General

The swivel-mounted ball linkage for the trailer tow hitch is located on the underside of the vehicle.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

If the ball linkage is not locked, unstable driving conditions or accidents can result. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Before a journey with a trailer or load carrier, check that the ball linkage is correctly locked.

If the ball linkage is not properly locked, the LED in the button illuminates red.

⚠ NOTE

The trailer tow hitch is intended to be used with a trailer. If the ball linkage of the trailer tow hitch has been swivelled out, it may become jammed when driving without a trailer or load carrier. There is a risk of material damage. Swivel the ball linkage back in when driving without a trailer or load carrier.

Overview

The button for swinging the swivel-mounted ball linkage in and out is in the luggage compartment.

Operating requirements

The following requirements must be met in order to swivel the ball linkage:

▷ Vehicle is standing on level ground.

▷ The tailgate is open.

▷ The trailer socket is not occupied.

▷ Trailer towing is not activated.

▷ Adequate charge state of the vehicle battery.

The LED in the button illuminates green if the system is operational.

Swivelling out the ball linkage

1. Open the luggage compartment.
2. Step out of the swivelling range of the ball linkage behind the vehicle.
3. Press the button in the luggage compartment.

   The ball linkage swivels outwards. The LED in the button flashes in green.
4. Wait until the ball linkage has reached the end position.

Swivelling the ball linkage back in

1. Disconnect the trailer or load carrier.
2. Remove any fittings for the track-stabilising devices.
3. Pull the power supply connector for the trailer and any adapters out of the socket.
4. Press the button in the luggage compartment.

   The ball linkage swivels inwards. The LED in the button flashes in green.
5. Wait until the ball linkage has reached the end position.

Interrupting or reversing the swivel movement

General

The swivel movement is interrupted, might be reversed or is not performed if electrical current limits are exceeded, for example at very low temperatures, or if mechanical resistance is encountered. The LED in button illuminates red.

Repeating the swivel movement with the engine running

1. Switch on the drive-ready state via the Start/Stop button.
2. Press the button in the luggage compartment and hold it until the ball linkage has moved completely in or out.

If necessary, repeat the swivel movement with the button pressed and the engine running.

The LED in the button illuminates green when the ball linkage has reached an end position.

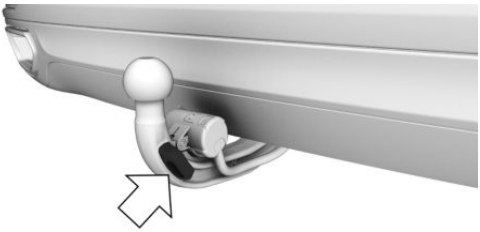
In the event of repeated interruptions in the swivel movement, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Trailer socket

The trailer socket is located on the trailer tow hitch.

Fold the cover downwards.

Eye for securing cable



There is an eye on the trailer tow hitch for fastening the trailer securing cable.

For increased safety when towing a trailer, attach the trailer securing cable to the eye.

Check that the securing cable can move freely and is not dragging on the ground.

Operating rear luggage racks

The ball linkage of the trailer tow hitch can be used as a mount for rear luggage racks; for example bicycle rack systems.

Note the information on rear luggage racks when operating the rear luggage rack.

For further information:

Rear luggage rack, see page 340.

Saving fuel

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Reducing fuel consumption

General

The vehicle possesses wide-ranging technologies for reducing consumption and emission levels.

Fuel consumption depends on various factors.

A number of measures, such as a moderate driving style and regular maintenance, can influence fuel consumption and reduce the burden on the environment.

Remove unnecessary loads

Extra weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove mounted parts after use

If no longer required, remove auxiliary mirrors, roof racks and rear-mounted racks after use.

Add-on accessories on the vehicle can adversely affect its aerodynamic performance and increase fuel consumption.

Close windows and the glass sunroof

An open glass sunroof or open window increase drag and consequently fuel consumption.

Tyres

General

Tyres can have differing effects on consumption figures. Consumption can be affected by the size of the tyres, for example.

Check tyre inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if necessary, correct the tyre inflation pressures at least twice a month and before setting off on a longer journey.

Insufficient tyre inflation pressure enlarges the rolling resistance and thus increases fuel consumption and tyre wear.

Observe the correct tyre inflation pressure and the ECO tyre inflation pressure where applicable.

For further information:

Tyre inflation pressure information, see page 368.

Drive off immediately

Do not warm up the engine with the vehicle at a standstill, but instead set off straight away, driving at moderate engine speeds.

This brings the cold engine up to operating temperature as quickly as possible.

Think ahead

Anticipating the road situation and adopting a smooth driving style will reduce fuel consumption.

Avoid accelerating and braking unnecessarily.

Keep an appropriate distance from the vehicle ahead.

Avoid high engine speeds

Driving at low engine speeds reduces fuel consumption and wear.

Pay attention to the optimum shift indicator in the vehicle, if fitted.

Make use of overrun mode

When approaching a red traffic light, take your foot off the accelerator and allow the vehicle to roll.

On downward stretches, take your foot off the accelerator and allow the vehicle to roll.

The fuel supply is interrupted in overrun mode.

The high-voltage battery is charged.

Regular charging

Charge up the vehicle as often as possible at a charging facility. This reduces fuel consumption further by using electrical energy.

Switch off the engine if stopping for longer periods

When you stop the vehicle for longer periods, for example at traffic lights, railway crossings or in traffic jams, switch off the engine.

Switch off functions which are not currently required

Functions such as seat heating or rear window heating require a great deal of energy and increase fuel consumption, especially in city traffic and stop-and-go traffic.

Switch these functions off if they are not required.

The HYBRID ECO PRO and ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL driving modes support the energy-saving use of comfort functions. In HYBRID ECO PRO driving mode, the performance offered by the comfort functions is reduced automatically. In ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL driving mode, deactivation of comfort functions must be set first.

Have maintenance work carried out

Have the vehicle serviced regularly to achieve optimal economy and lifetime. BMW recommends having maintenance work carried out by a BMW Service Partner.

Please also see the BMW Maintenance System.

Using the hybrid system efficiently

Principle

The hybrid system of the vehicle works automatically. By precautionary driving, the hybrid properties are used efficiently, in other words fuel consumption and energy recuperation are optimised.

Optimising energy recuperation

Types of energy recuperation

The energy recuperation is for charging the high-voltage battery. Energy recuperation is important for supplying the electrical components and therefore is a requirement for saving fuel.

The energy recuperation function acts in three stages when you are rolling and braking:

- ▷ Slight energy recuperation: when rolling without pressing the brake.
- ▷ Moderate energy recuperation: slight deceleration by gently pressing the brake.
- ▷ Maximum energy recuperation: by pressing the brake somewhat more strongly, as long as the needle is still moving in the middle range of the CHARGE display of the instrument cluster.

Optimum energy recuperation

Driving with foresight and decelerating in due time help to optimise energy recuperation.

As soon as the display shows the maximum energy recuperation, the brake pedal can then be pressed more firmly only if the situation requires it.

Example drive situations for saving fuel

The hybrid system allows particularly efficient energy management in many traffic situations.

- ▷ Stop-and-go traffic:

  The internal combustion engine is automatically started or stopped by the hybrid system.
- ▷ Driving at constant speed:

  The electric motor temporarily relieves the internal combustion engine by automatically switching in.

Optimising fuel consumption

Charging the vehicle regularly

Regularly charge the vehicle fully at a suitable charging device. This reduces fuel consumption by using electrical energy.

The load state of the high-voltage battery may be reduced by longer periods standing still.

Using the stationary air conditioning regularly

Activate preliminary air conditioning in the vehicle during charging before starting the trip. This helps to optimise the range.

Stationary air conditioning, see page 316.

Avoid using the internal combustion engine

Comply with the following notes to avoid using the internal combustion engine:

- ▷ Set the properties of the hybrid system to ELECTRIC or ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL using Driving Experience Control.

  Driving Experience Control, see page 155.
- ▷ Comply with the displays for electric driving in the instrument cluster. Further information: electric driving: ELECTRIC and ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL.

  Displays of the hybrid system, see page 177.

Using the navigation system regularly

Use the navigation system even for routes that you are used to driving regularly. With active route guidance of the navigation system, the hybrid system uses the navigation data available. The section of the route ahead is analysed. The hybrid engine adapts to the specific sections of the route.

The function may be limited if the navigation data is invalid, outdated or not available, for example.

Driving modes for optimising consumption

Principle

The HYBRID ECO PRO and ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL driving modes support a fuel-efficient driving style. For this purpose, comfort functions such as air conditioning and, where applicable, engine control are adjusted. In ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL driving mode, deactivation of comfort functions must be set first.

The engine is disconnected from the gearbox and the engine stopped in selector lever position D under certain circumstances. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

In addition, context-sensitive information, ECO PRO tips, can be displayed in HYBRID ECO PRO driving mode to assist with an efficient driving style.

General

The system comprises the following EfficientDynamics functions and EfficientDynamics displays:

- ▷ ECO PRO seat air conditioning.
- ▷ ECO PRO air conditioning.
- ▷ ECO PRO light and sight.
- ▷ HYBRID ECO PRO: route-ahead assistant.
- ▷ HYBRID ECO PRO: driving style analysis.

Overview

HYBRID HYBRID button

ELECTRIC ELECTRIC button

Activating HYBRID ECO PRO

1. HYBRID Press the button.
2. "ECO PRO"

Activating ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL

1. ELECTRIC Press the button.
2. "INDIVIDUAL"

Configuring ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL

Via the Driving Experience Control

1. Activate ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL.
2. "Configure ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL"

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL"
5. "Configure ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Enabling/disabling ECO PRO functions

The following ECO PRO functions can be activated/deactivated:

- ▷ "ECO PRO seat heating"
- ▷ "ECO PRO climate control"
- ▷ "ECO PRO light and sight"

The settings are saved for the current driver profile.

ECO PRO seat air conditioning

The output from the seat heating is reduced when ECO PRO is activated.

The output from the seat heating and, if applicable, the seat ventilation is reduced when ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL is activated.

ECO PRO air conditioning

The air conditioning is adjusted for efficient consumption.

To achieve this, the set temperature is adjusted slightly and the interior is heated or cooled more slowly to reduce consumption.

ECO PRO light and sight

The power output of the exterior mirror and the rear window heating is reduced.

Depending on the equipment, the dynamic ECO light function is activated additionally.

Resetting settings

Reset ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL to the default setting:

"Reset"

HYBRID ECO PRO: route-ahead assistant

Principle

The function helps to save fuel and supports an anticipatory driving style. Using the navigation data, certain sections of the route ahead can be detected early and information can be shared with the driver.

General

The recognised sections of the route, such as built-up areas or bends ahead, for example, require a reduction in speed.

The alert is also given if the section of the route ahead cannot yet be detected when driving.

The alert is shown until the section of the route is reached.

If an alert is given, vehicle speed can then be reduced in an efficient way by removing your foot from the accelerator and allowing the vehicle to roll until the section of road is reached.

Operating requirements

- ▷ HYBRID ECO PRO driving mode is activated.
- ▷ The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is being driven.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Speed Assistant"
6. "Speed limits"
7. Select the desired setting.

For further information:

Speed Limit Assist, see page 264.

Display

Display in the instrument cluster

An alert regarding a section of the route ahead is given as a recommendation to allow the vehicle to roll.

An additional symbol shows the detected section of the route:

Symbol	Section of the road in front
	Speed limit or town entrance.
	Junction or turn, exit from a fast road.
	Corner.
	Roundabout.

Display in the Head-Up Display

The advance notice alert can also be shown in the Head-Up Display.

Display on the control display

An alert is shown in the driving style analysis display on the Control Display if there is a corresponding section of the route.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Driving style analysis"

Using route-ahead assistant

A section of the route ahead is shown:

1. Remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.
2. Allow the vehicle to roll until you reach the section of road displayed.
3. Adjust the speed by braking as necessary.

System limits

The function is not available in the following situations:

- ▷ The speed is below the minimum speed.
- ▷ With a temporary and variable speed limit, such as at road works.
- ▷ In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- ▷ With Active Cruise Control.
- ▷ When towing a trailer.

Adaptive recuperation

Principle

Adaptive recuperation supports an anticipatory and comfort-oriented driving style. Map data and various sensors analyse the current driving situation, for example the distance to the vehicle in front.

General

Based on the situation, the system decides whether and the extent to which energy is recovered through recuperation, or how the vehicle rolls. Depending on the extent of recuperation, the vehicle is decelerated at different rates during rolling.

Operating requirements

The system is active under the following conditions:

- ▷ Brake not pressed.
- ▷ Accelerator pedal not activated.
- ▷ HYBRID ECO PRO driving mode is activated.
- ▷ Dynamic Stability Control DSC is activated.

System limits

- ▷ In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- ▷ During country-dependent restrictions on map-based route sections.
- ▷ With a temporary and variable speed limit, such as at road works.
- ▷ With Active Cruise Control.
- ▷ If the sensors are faulty, soiled or covered.

HYBRID ECO PRO: driving style analysis

Principle

The function helps you to develop a particularly efficient driving style and to save fuel.

To do this, the driving style is analysed. The evaluation is performed in various categories and is shown on the Control Display.

Using this display, the individual driving style can be adjusted to save fuel.

General

The current trip is evaluated.

To support an efficient driving style, ECO PRO tips are shown during the journey.

Adapting the driving style can increase the range of the vehicle.

Operating requirements

The function is available in HYBRID ECO PRO driving mode.

Calling up the driving style analysis

1. "CAR"

2. "Driving information"
3. "Driving style analysis"

Display on the control display

The display of the driving style analysis shows the efficiency of the driving style.

The more efficient the driving style, the more bars are shown in colour.

If the driving style is inefficient, on the other hand, a reduced number of bars are shown.

Charging vehicle

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

Vehicle can be recharged with various charging cables at charging stations or domestic socket outlets.

The charging process is controlled and monitored fully automatically. The charging current intensity can be set using iDrive.

Safety notes

WARNING

Working with electric current incorrectly can cause an electric shock due to high voltages or powerful current. There is a risk of fire or fatal injury. Follow the general safety regulations when working with electric current.

WARNING

A defective and wrongly configured charging point at the charging location may damage to the vehicle and overload the power system at the charging location. There is a risk of fire and injury.

Before the first charging process, have the following components of your own charging point checked by a qualified electrician at the charging location:

- ▷ Charging cable.
- ▷ Charging station.
- ▷ Domestic socket outlet and connected circuits.

WARNING

Damaged or worn charging fixtures, for example worn contacts, can heat up. There is a risk of fire. Only use a charging fixture that is in perfect condition.

WARNING

If no sufficient safety distance is maintained from inflammable materials, filling up and charging at the same time can lead to a danger of fire. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Do not fill up and charge the vehicle at the same time.

WARNING

Touching live components can result in an electric shock. There is high voltage at the charging connection. There is a risk of injury or even death. Have work on the charging connection, for example cleaning, performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

High-voltage battery

The high-voltage battery serves as an energy store. The high-voltage battery can be charged during the journey by energy recuperation or from the electrical mains.

To optimally operate the high-voltage battery, charge the vehicle regularly and fully on a suitable charging fixture.

The following different options are available for charging from the mains:

- ▷ Domestic socket outlet.
- ▷ AC charging station.

The battery can be charged at a domestic socket outlet in a voltage range from 100 V to 240 V.

For optimum use of energy from the grid, charging at a charging station, for example BMW Wallbox, is recommended.

Charge current

General

Charging current intensity is specified in amps.

The vehicle cannot automatically detect the maximum permitted charge current intensity of the grid when charging at a domestic socket outlet.

Charging at a domestic socket outlet

Before charging for the first time at your own domestic socket outlet, and when charging at other domestic socket outlets, first find out the permitted charge current intensity, for example by consulting a qualified electrician.

The current limitation for the charging current intensity can be set using iDrive.

Current limitation

General

Current limitation for charging via the mode 2 charging cable can be set.

The vehicle is charged at different charge current intensities depending on the mains network. The charging current limit is set to the lowest level as standard.

Setting current limitation

1. "CAR"
2. "Plan charg./climate"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "AC settings"
6. "Current limit"
7. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved. When charging the charging location, change the setting accordingly.

For foreign domestic sockets, set the charging current intensity to the lowest level.

Maintaining the charge state

If it is necessary to save a certain electric range for a later point in the journey, for example, the BATTERY CONTROL function can maintain or raise the current charge state of the high-voltage battery.

Charging cable

General

To charge the vehicle, use a mode 2 charging cable, a mode 3 charging cable or a fixed cable of a charging station.

Depending on the country, different charging cables can be required.

It may be possible to make settings on the charging cable. Do not change the default setting on the charging cable.

Safety notes

WARNING

Incompatible charging cables or unsuitable charging stations can heat up and cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of fire. For charging, use charging cables or charging stations that have been classified as suitable for the corresponding type of vehicle.

Information on suitable charging cables can be asked for at the Service Partner of the manufacturer.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the charging cable can prevent the charging process and lead to damage, for example cable fire. There is a risk of fire. Only use the charging cable for charging the vehicle and do not extend it with a cable or adapter.

WARNING

Damaged charging cables can heat up or cause an electric shock. There is a risk of fire or injury. Only use undamaged charging cables.

Mode 2 charging cable

Depending on the national-market version, a mode 2 charging cable may be included in the delivery specification of the vehicle.

The mode 2 charging cable permits charging at domestic socket outlets with protective earth. The power supply at a domestic socket outlet uses alternating current to charge the vehicle.

When using the mode 2 charging cable, the efficiency values may differ from those of the energy label.

The mode 2 charging cable is also referred to as a standard charging cable.

Mode 3 charging cable

Depending on the national-market version, a mode 3 charging cable may be included in the delivery specification of the vehicle.

The mode 3 charging cable enables fast charging at sockets of designated AC charging stations through a special connector. Alternating current is used to charge at designated AC charging stations. The charging process can be completed faster than with domestic socket outlets.

A charge current intensity of up to maximum 16 A is possible.

If necessary, the charging cable is permanently installed on the charging station.

The mode 3 charging cable is also referred to as an AC quick charge cable.

Storage

On delivery, the charging cable is stowed in the luggage compartment, for example under the luggage compartment floor or in a bag.

Put the charging cable back in the same place after use.

If the charging cable is stowed in a bag, secure the bag to a free lashing eye in the luggage compartment.

If necessary, store the charging cable with attached plug cover to avoid moisture in the charging cable plug.

Connecting

Charge point flap

The charge point flap is located on the left of the vehicle.

Keep charge point flap clean and clear.

Keep the charge point flap closed when the charge point is not being used.

Connecting a charging cable

To connect, engage selector lever position P, deactivate drive-ready state and unlock the vehicle. Apply parking brake if necessary.

1. To open the charge point flap, push on the upper edge, arrow. The charge point flap opens.

2. Connect the mode 2 charging cable to the domestic socket outlet or the mode 3 charging cable to the connection point on the AC charging station.
3. Position the charging cable connector on the charging socket and push it in as far as it will go.

Removing

General

During the charging process, the charging cable is automatically locked. Unlock the charging cable before removing.

Before pulling off, clean the area between the charge point flap and charging connection, for example to remove snow.

Removing a charging cable

1. Press the release button on the vehicle key or operate the door handle.

   Charging process is interrupted.

   The charging cable is unlocked for a short time.
2. Hold the charging cable by the gripping areas.
3. Remove charging cable from the charge point, arrow.

4. Press on the charge point flap until it engages.
5. Fit cover on charging cable connector if necessary.
6. If necessary, disconnect the mode 2 charging cable from the domestic socket outlet or the mode 3 charging cable from the connection point on the AC charging station.
7. Store charging cable.

   Plug in a fixed charging cable at a charging station in the place provided for it.

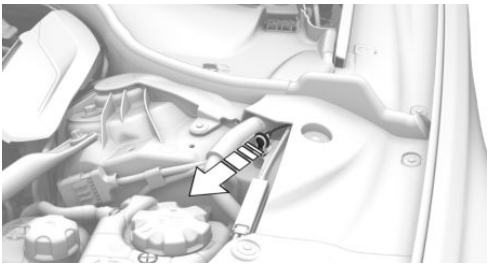
Emergency unlocking

The charging cable is locked when the vehicle is locked and during the charging process.

Charging cable can be unlocked manually if there is electrical defect.

1. Open bonnet.
2. Release the knob from the holder.
3. Pull the knob.

   Charging cable is manually unlocked.



4. Remove charging cable.

   Removing, see page 359.

After the charging cable has been unlocked in an emergency, have the locking system of the charging connection checked at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Charging

General

At high or low outside temperatures, preheating/precooling of the high-voltage battery can result in longer charging times.

If the mode 2 charging cable is exposed to high temperatures and direct sunlight, this may interrupt the charging process. Charging resumes automatically.

The charging process will be interrupted or will not be started when a Remote Software Upgrade is installed. The charging process may not be continued automatically after successful installation.

Safety notes

WARNING

Incorrect use of the power system connection can lead to damage, for example cable fire. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Only use the charging cable for charging the vehicle and do not extend it with a cable or adapter.

WARNING

If the charging current intensity is set incorrectly, the power system of the domestic socket can be overloaded and overheat. There is a risk of fire. Before charging at domestic socket outlets, adapt the charging current intensity to the power system. Set to the lowest level if the power system is unknown.

WARNING

An incorrectly connected charging cable can lead to damage, for example cable fire. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Ensure that the charging cable plug has been fully inserted into the socket.

Starting charging

1. Engage the selector lever in position P. Apply parking brake if necessary.
2. Plan the charging process.

   Planning to charge, see page 361.
3. Switch off drive-ready state.
4. If necessary, connect the mode 2 charging cable to the domestic socket outlet or the mode 3 charging cable to the connection point on the AC charging station.
5. Open charge point flap.
6. Connect charging cable to the vehicle.

Connecting a charging cable, see page 359.

7. Lock the vehicle if necessary.

The charging cable is automatically locked if all the general conditions are complied with, for example the AC charging station has authorised the charging. Charging can only be started if the charging cable is locked. If the charging cable is not locked, pull off the charging cable if it is not already disconnected, and reconnect it.

Charging status display

Indicator lamp on the charge point

The charging status for charging with a charging cable is indicated by the charging socket indicator lamp.

Charge state

Light	Charge state
White	Charging cable can be connected or removed.
Flashes yellow	Charging process is being prepared.
Blue	Charging process paused.
Flashes blue	Charging process active.
Flashes red	Fault in charging process.
Green	Charging process completed.

The indicator lamp is no longer illuminated after some time when the vehicle is locked.

The blue indicator lamp flashes continuously while the vehicle is unlocked. The other indicator lamps are extinguished after some time.

To check the charge state, press the button on the vehicle key. The charge state is shown on the indicator lamp. The vehicle may be locked.

Additional messages about the charging status can be displayed in the instrument cluster, on the BMW display key or via the BMW Connected app on a smartphone.

Planning to charge

General

Charging can be adapted to boundary conditions, for example, electricity costs, available electricity source or low ambient temperature. The vehicle controls the charging so that the charging is completed if possible by a departure time. To do so, a departure time must be set.

The following functions are available:

- ▷ Charge immediately.
- ▷ Charge in the time window.

If the drive-ready state is switched off, changes can be made using iDrive. Settings for standing air conditioning and loading process are accepted for planned departure times too.

1. Switch off drive-ready state.
2. "Charge immediately once"

For further information:

Departure time, see page 363.

Setting the charging mode

1. "CAR"
2. "Plan charg./climate"
3. "Charging mode:"
4. Select the desired settings:
   - ▷ "Charge immediately": charging starts as soon as the charging cable is connected.

- ▷ "Charging in time slot": if a departure time is set, a time window with a favourable electricity tariff can be set for charging.

Charge in the time window

General

During the charging process, a time window with a favourable electricity tariff can be set for charging.

To set a time window for favourable charging, a departure time must be set.

If the drive-ready state is switched off, changes can be made using iDrive.

Setting the time window for favourable charging

If a departure time is set, a time window with a favourable electricity tariff can be set for charging.

1. "CAR"
2. "Plan charg./climate"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "AC settings"
6. "Charging time slot"
7. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "From:": set start of tariff.
   - ▷ "Until:": set end of tariff.

The vehicle can also start the charging process before the selected time window begins or end it after the selected time window finishes. The starting point of the charging process is adjusted so the vehicle can be charged as much as possible and, if applicable, be climate controlled right up to the departure time.

If the drive-ready state is switched off, changes can be made using iDrive.

The set time window can be ignored for the next charging process: "Charge immediately once"

Stopping charging

Charging is interrupted when the vehicle is unlocked and automatically continued again after a short time when it is locked.

The charging process can be terminated at any time by removing the charging cable, and resumed at a later point by connecting the charging cable. For example, so that other consumers can use the power connection in the meantime or to avoid high power output levels simultaneously from a number of consumers.

For further information:

Removing, see page 359.

Resuming charging

If charging is interrupted, for example, by unlocking the vehicle or due to a temporary power failure, charging is automatically continued after the interruption.

Ending charging

1. Remove charging cable from the vehicle.

   Removing, see page 359.
2. Store charging cable if necessary.
3. Press on the charge point flap until it engages.
4. Lock vehicle as appropriate.

Displays in the instrument cluster

When the standby state is switched on, the charge state indicator shows the charge state of the high-voltage battery in the instrument cluster. If all bars are filled in, the high-voltage battery is completely charged.

Even if no bar is filled in, the high-voltage battery is always under high voltage.

The charge screen displays information about the charging process.

Display	Meaning
	Plug blue: charging process active or completed. White plug: charging procedure interrupted.
2:25 23.11.2018	Time for end of charging. Set departure time.
	Charge continuation bar.
25km	Display in blue: charged electrical range.
46km 100 %	Display in white: current maximum available electric range when high-voltage battery is fully charged.
max. 9 A	Maximum current limitation or current limitation that is actually set.
	Departure time set.
	Air conditioning activated for departure time.
	Flashing: ventilation active.
	Flashing: heating active.
A/C	Flashing: cooling active.

For further information:

Charge screen, see page 176.

Departure time

Principle

For optimum range and air conditioning, the departure time can be set before stopping the vehicle.

General

With a set departure time, the vehicle is preheated or precooled if climate control is set.

The following settings for departure time are possible:

- ▷ Air conditioning for departure time.
- ▷ Planning up to three regular departure times.
- ▷ Planning a one-time departure time.

If the drive-ready state is switched off, changes can be made using iDrive. Settings for acclimatisation and loading process are accepted for planned departure times too.

Air conditioning for departure time

1. "CAR"
2. "Plan charg./climate"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Precond. departure"

Setting the departure time

1. "CAR"
2. "Plan charg./climate"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Departure schedule"
5. Select the required departure time.
6. Set the time and day of the week.

Up to three regular departure times can be set and a one-time departure time can be set.

Activating the departure time

1. "CAR"
2. "Plan charg./climate"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Departure schedule"
5. Select the required departure time.
6. "Activate departure"

Up to three regular departure times or a one-time departure time can be activated.

The set departure time is deactivated if the departure time is not observed three times in succession.

Air conditioning

General

The following settings for air conditioning the vehicle are possible:

▷ Activate stationary air conditioning immediately.

With standing air conditioning activated and no charging cable connected, the range is reduced.

▷ Planned climate control at the set departure time.

For further information:

Stationary air conditioning, see page 316.

Discharged high-voltage and vehicle battery

General

As well as high-voltage battery the vehicle has a 12 Volt vehicle battery which is required to operate the on-board electronics.

If the internal combustion is started when the high-voltage battery is discharged, the air conditioning may be limited.

It is not possible to operate the vehicle with a discharged vehicle battery.

Making the vehicle operable

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the internal combustion engine can be started from another vehicle's battery using two jump leads.

For further information:

Starting aid, see page 417.

Refuelling

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Notes when refuelling

General

Before refuelling, observe the notes on the fuel grade.

At least 10 litres, 3 gal of fuel should be refuelled so as to guarantee all engine functions even in unfavourable situations such as a very steep vehicle inclination.

When refuelling, insert the filler nozzle fully into the filler neck. Lifting the filler nozzle during refuelling results in the following:

- ▷ The supply of fuel is stopped too soon.
- ▷ Fuel vapour recovery is less effective.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle cuts out for the first time.

Please comply with the safety regulations displayed at filling stations.

For further information:

Fuel quality, see page 396.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

If no sufficient safety distance is maintained from inflammable materials, filling up and charging at the same time can lead to a danger of fire. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Do not fill up and charge the vehicle at the same time.

⚠ NOTE

If the range drops below 50 km, 30 miles, the engine may no longer be supplied with sufficient fuel. Engine function is no longer ensured. There is a risk of material damage. Refuel in good time.

⚠ NOTE

Fuels are poisonous and aggressive substances. Overfilling the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. If fuel comes into contact with paintwork, it can damage it. The environment is polluted. There is a risk of material damage. Avoid overfilling.

Tank aeration

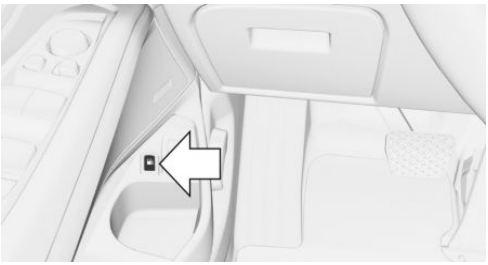
Principle

The vehicle is equipped with a special fuel tank. The fuel tank is designed for special requirements arising from hybrid operation of the vehicle, in other words, alternating drive with internal combustion engine or electric motor.

General

An overpressure may form in the fuel tank as a result of petrol vapours which is dissipated before fuel tank cap is opened.

Overview



The button is located in the driver's door storage compartment.

Tank ventilation

1. Switch off drive-ready state.
2. Press button to start aerating.

   The tank aeration status is shown in the instrument cluster. In rare cases, the tank aeration may take several minutes.

   When the tank aeration has finished, a message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The fuel tank filler flap is released for opening.
3. Open fuel filler flap.

   If it is not possible to open the fuel filler flap after tank aeration, press the button again.

   If it is still not possible to open the fuel filler flap even after the button has been pressed again, unlock the fuel filler flap manually.

   Emergency release, see page 367.

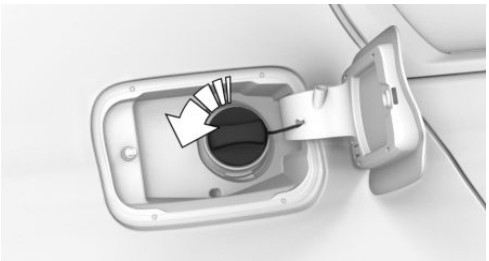
Fuel tank cap

Opening

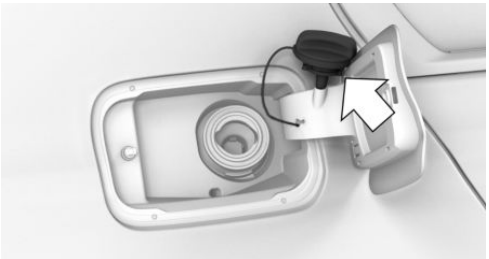
Before opening allow air to escape from tank.

1. To open the fuel tank filler flap, push on the upper edge, arrow. The fuel tank filler flap opens.

2. Turn the fuel tank cap anticlockwise.



3. Place the fuel tank cap in the holder on the fuel filler flap.



For further information:

Tank ventilation, see page 365.

Closing

WARNING

The retaining strap of the fuel tank cap may become trapped and crushed when turning the cap to close it. It will then not be possible to close the cap properly. Fuel or fuel vapours can leak out. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Make sure that the retaining strap does not get trapped and crushed when closing the cap.

1. Fit the fuel filler cap and turn clockwise until it is clearly heard to click into place.
2. Press on the fuel tank filler flap until it engages.

Emergency release

In certain situations, it may be necessary to unlock the fuel tank filler flap manually, for example if there is an electrical fault.

The unlocking mechanism is in the luggage compartment.

1. Remove the cover from the right-hand trim panel.

2. Pull the green tag with the fuel pump symbol. Fuel tank filler flap is unlocked without making any noise.
3. To open the fuel tank filler flap, push on the upper edge, arrow. The fuel tank filler flap opens.
4. Carefully open the fuel tank cap. An overpressure can be formed in the fuel tank due to petrol vapours.
5. Refuel the vehicle in the usual way. It is possible for residual pressure to make the refuelling procedure difficult, for example because the filler nozzle cuts out frequently.

Immediately have the vehicle checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Wheels and tyres

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Tyre inflation pressure

General

A tyre's condition and inflation pressure influence the following:

- ▷ Lifetime of the tyre.
- ▷ Driving safety.
- ▷ Driving comfort.
- ▷ Fuel consumption.

Safety note

⚠ **WARNING**

A tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure can heat up significantly and sustain damage. Handling characteristics, for example steering and braking, will be impaired as a result. There is a risk of accident. Check the tyre inflation pressure regularly and adjust as necessary, for example twice a month or before any long journey.

Tyre inflation pressure information

On the door pillar

The tyre inflation pressure information is shown on the door pillar of the driver's door.

The tyre inflation pressure data is valid for the tyre sizes and recommended tyre makes which have been rated by the vehicle manufacturer as suitable for the vehicle concerned.

The tyre inflation pressures stated for the respective load conditions apply depending on the vehicle's actual load condition. Example: for a partially loaded vehicle, the optimum tyre inflation pressure is the one stated for a partially loaded vehicle.

When the vehicle is partially loaded, the lowest possible fuel consumption can be achieved with the ECO tyre inflation pressure.

More information regarding wheels and tyres can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For Australia/New Zealand

WARNING

The inflation pressures on the tyre label are applicable only for tyres explicitly mentioned on the label. Inflation pressures for tyres that may be covered by the label – by size, speed category and load rating/load index – but not explicitly mentioned on the label may be different. Please obtain adequate inflation pressures in accordance with the tyre manufacturer's specifications from your tyre dealer.

On the control display

The current tyre inflation pressure values and the specified tyre inflation pressure values for the mounted tyres can be displayed on the Control Display.

To ensure that they are displayed correctly, the tyre sizes must be stored in the system and must have been set for the fitted tyres.

The current tyre inflation pressure value is shown on each tyre.

The specified tyre inflation pressure value is located towards the bottom of the Control Display.

Checking the tyre inflation pressure

General

Tyres heat up while driving. The tyre inflation pressure increases with the temperature of the tyre.

Tyres have a natural, uniform loss of tyre inflation pressure.

Inflating devices can display a pressure that may be up to 0.1 bar too low.

Checking using tyre inflation pressure inscriptions on the door pillar

1. Determine the specified tyre inflation pressures for the tyres installed on the vehicle.
2. Check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres, using a pressure gauge, for example.
3. Correct the tyre inflation pressure if the current tyre inflation pressure deviates from the specified tyre inflation pressure.
4. Check whether all valve caps are screwed onto the tyre valves.

The tyre inflation pressure information on the tyre inflation pressure plate on the door pillar only relates to cold tyres or tyres at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tyre inflation pressures when the tyres are cold, i.e.:

- ▷ If the vehicle has been driven a distance of no more than 2 km, 1.25 miles.
- ▷ If the vehicle has not moved again for at least 2 hours after a journey.

Checking using the tyre inflation pressure information on the control display

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tyre Pressure Monitor"
4. Check if the current tyre inflation pressures match the specified tyre pressure value.
5. Correct the tyre inflation pressure if the current tyre inflation pressure deviates from the specified tyre inflation pressure.

After adjusting the tyre inflation pressure

For runflat indicator RPA:

Reinitialise the runflat indicator RPA.

With the Tyre Pressure Monitor:

The corrected tyre inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tyre settings have been made.

For tyres that cannot be found in the tyre inflation pressure information on the control display, reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor.

Speed code

Designation	Maximum speed
Q	up to 160 km/h, 100 mph
R	up to 170 km/h, 106 mph
S	up to 180 km/h, 112 mph
T	up to 190 km/h, 118 mph
H	up to 210 km/h, 131 mph
F	up to 240 km/h, 150 mph
W	up to 270 km/h, 167 mph
Y	up to 300 km/h, 186 mph
(Y)	above 300 km/h/186 mph

Tyre tread

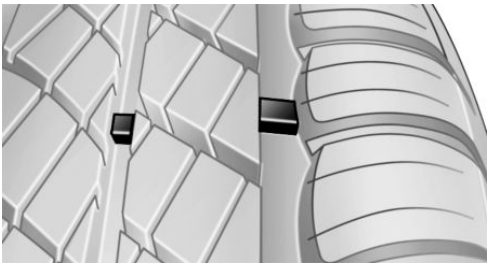
Summer tyres

The tyre tread depth should not be less than 3 mm, 0.12 in, otherwise there is a high risk of aquaplaning.

Winter tyres

The tyre tread depth should not be less than 4 mm, 0.16 in, its suitability for winter use is limited.

Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the circumference of the tyre. These wear indicators have the legally prescribed minimum height of 1.6 mm, 0.06 in.

The positions of the wear indicators are identified on the tyre's side wall by TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Tyre damage

General

Inspect tyres regularly for damage, the presence of foreign bodies and wear.

Vehicle behaviour that may indicate tyre damage or other faults:

- ▷ Unusual vibrations.
- ▷ Unusual tyre or running noises.
- ▷ Unusual vehicle response, such as pronounced pulling to the left or right.

Damage can be caused by the following situations, for example:

- ▷ Driving over kerbs.
- ▷ Road damage.
- ▷ Insufficient tyre inflation pressure.
- ▷ Overloading the vehicle.
- ▷ Incorrect tyre storage.

Safety notes

WARNING

If the tyres are damaged, the tyre inflation pressure may be reduced, which in turn could cause you to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. If you suspect tyre damage while you are driving, immediately reduce speed and bring the vehicle to a stop. Have the wheels and tyres checked. To do so, carefully drive to a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. If necessary, have the vehicle towed or transported there. Do not repair damaged tyres. Have them replaced.

WARNING

Tyres can become damaged by running over obstacles, for example kerbs or road damage, at high speed. Larger wheels have a smaller tyre cross-section. The smaller the tyre cross-section, the higher the risk of tyre damage. There is a risk of accident and material damage. If possible, drive around obstacles or drive over them slowly and carefully.

Age of tyres

Recommendation

Irrespective of the tyre tread depth, change tyres after 6 years at the latest.

Date of manufacture

The date of manufacture of the tyre is indicated on the tyre sidewall.

Designation	Date of manufacture
DOT … 3820	38th week of 2020

Replacement of wheels and tyres

Fitting and balancing

Have the wheel fitted and balanced by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Wheel/tyre combination

General

Information on the correct wheel/tyre combination and rim designs for the vehicle can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety notes

WARNING

Wheels and tyres that are not suitable for the vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle. For example they could come into contact with the bodywork on account of their dimensional tolerances, despite having the same nominal size. There is a risk of accident. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends using wheels and tyres that have been rated as suitable for the vehicle concerned.

WARNING

Mounted steel wheels can lead to technical problems, for example wheel studs may work loose and brake discs may be damaged. There is a risk of accident. Do not install steel wheels.

WARNING

Incorrect wheel and tyre combinations impair the vehicle's driving characteristics and interfere with the proper functioning of various systems, such as the Anti-lock Brake System ABS or Dynamic Stability Control DSC. There is a risk of accident. To maintain good vehicle handling, always fit tyres of the same make and tread pattern to all wheels. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends using wheels and tyres that have been rated as suitable for the vehicle concerned. After a tyre has been damaged, refit the same wheel/tyre combination as the original.

Recommended makes of tyre

Certain makes of tyre are recommended by the manufacturer of the vehicle for each tyre size. The tyre brands can be identified by a star on the side wall of the tyre.

New tyres

Due to the manufacturing process, new tyres do not achieve their full road grip immediately.

Drive moderately for the first 300 km, 200 miles.

Retreaded tyres

WARNING

Retreaded tyres may have different tyre carcasses. Their durability may be reduced due to their advanced age. There is a risk of accident. Do not use retreaded tyres.

The vehicle manufacturer advises against the use of retreaded tyres.

Winter tyres

General

Winter tyres are recommended if driving in winter conditions.

Although tyres known as all-season tyres with an M+S label have better winter characteristics than summer tyres, they do not normally match the performance of winter tyres.

Maximum speed of winter tyres

If the vehicle is capable of maximum speeds higher than the speed permitted for the winter tyres, an information label stating the maximum permitted speed for the tyres fitted must be displayed in the driver's field of view. The label is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

If winter tyres are fitted, observe and do not exceed the respectively permitted maximum speed.

Replacing run-flat tyres

When changing from run-flat tyres to standard tyres, make sure that a spare wheel or a flat tyre kit is available in the vehicle. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Rotating wheels between axles

WARNING

Swapping of wheels between axles on vehicles with differently sized tyres or rims on the front and rear cause tyre damage and damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Do not swap over wheels between axles on vehicles with differently sized tyres or rims on the front and rear.

Depending on the individual operating conditions, the tyre tread wears differently on the front and rear wheels. To achieve even wear, the tyres can be swapped over in pairs between the axles. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. After swapping over, check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust if necessary.

Storing tyres

Tyre inflation pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tyre inflation pressure indicated on the tyre's side wall.

Tyre storage

- ▷ Store wheels and tyres in a cool, dry and dark place when not in use.
- ▷ Protect the tyres against contamination from oil, grease and solvents.
- ▷ Do not leave tyres in plastic bags.
- ▷ Remove dirt from the wheels or tyres.

Run-flat tyres

Principle

In the event of a complete loss of tyre inflation pressure, run-flat tyres enable you to continue driving, with certain restrictions.

General

The wheels are fitted with tyres which are self-supporting to a limited degree. They may also have special rims.

The reinforced side wall means that the tyre keeps the vehicle mobile to a degree even if tyre inflation pressure has been lost.

Observe the notes on continuing to drive with a flat tyre.

Safety notes

WARNING

A run-flat tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure will change the vehicle's handling characteristics, for example there may be reduced directional stability when braking, longer stopping distances and different self-steering characteristics. There is a risk of accident. Drive with care and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

WARNING

Continuing to drive with a flat tyre can result in heavy trailers starting to slalom. There is a risk of accident or material damage. When driving with a trailer and a flat tyre, do not exceed the speed of 60 km/h, 35 mph. If the trailer starts to snake, brake immediately and make the necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

Label

The tyres are identified by Runflat System Component RSC on the tyre's side wall.

Remedying flat tyres

Safety measures

- ▷ Park the vehicle on a firm surface and as far away from moving traffic as possible.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- ▷ Apply the parking brake to prevent the vehicle rolling away.
- ▷ Engage the steering wheel lock with the wheels in the straight-ahead position.
- ▷ Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and guide them out of the danger area, for example behind the crash barrier.
- ▷ Set up the warning triangle an appropriate distance away.

Mobility System

Principle

With the Mobility System, minor tyre damage can be quickly sealed, to allow you to drive on. For this purpose, liquid sealant is pumped into the tyres which encloses the damage from the inside when it hardens.

General

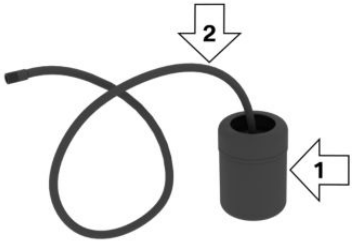
- ▷ Please observe the notes on the application of the Mobility System which are on the compressor and the sealant container.
- ▷ Applying the Mobility System can be ineffective for tyre damage larger than approximately 4 mm.
- ▷ Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop if you are unable to put the tyre back in operation.
- ▷ Foreign bodies that have penetrated the tyre should remain inside the tyre. Only remove foreign objects if they are visibly protruding from the tyre.
- ▷ Remove the speed limit sticker from the sealant container and attach to the steering wheel.
- ▷ Using sealants can damage the wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.
- ▷ The compressor can be used to check the tyre inflation pressure.

Overview

Storage

The Mobility System is located in a bag in the left storage compartment of the boot. To remove it, loosen the tensioning strap.

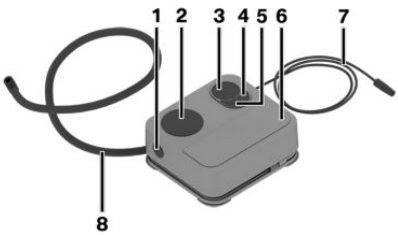
Sealant container



- ▷ Sealant container, arrow 1.
- ▷ Filler hose, arrow 2.

Note the use-by date on the sealant container.

Compressor



1 Unlocking sealant container
2 Sealant container holder
3 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
4 Reduce tyre inflation pressure button
5 On/Off button
6 Compressor
7 Plug/cable for socket
8 Connecting hose

Safety measures

- ▷ Park the vehicle on a firm surface and as far away from moving traffic as possible.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- ▷ Apply the parking brake to prevent the vehicle rolling away.
- ▷ Engage the steering wheel lock with the wheels in the straight-ahead position.
- ▷ Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and guide them out of the danger area, for example behind the crash barrier.
- ▷ Set up the warning triangle an appropriate distance away.

Filling with sealing compound

Safety notes

⚠ DANGER

A blocked exhaust pipe or inadequate ventilation can allow harmful exhaust fumes to enter the vehicle. The exhaust fumes contain pollutants which are colourless and odourless. In enclosed spaces, exhaust fumes can also build up outside the vehicle. There is a risk of death. Keep the exhaust pipe clear and ensure sufficient ventilation.

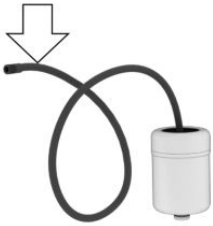
⚠ NOTE

The compressor can overheat if operated for too long. There is a risk of material damage. Do not let the compressor run for longer than 10 minutes.

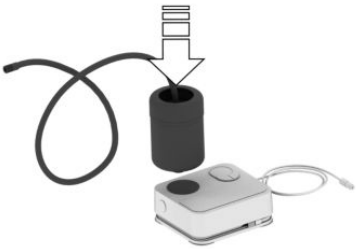
Filling

1. Shake the sealant container.

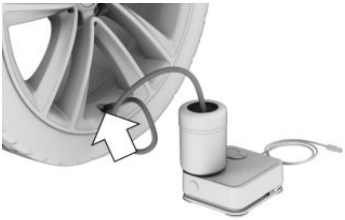
2. Pull filler hose completely from the cover of the sealant container. Do not kink the hose.



3. Push the sealant container into the bracket on the compressor housing, until it audibly engages.



4. Screw the filler hose of the sealant container onto the tyre valve of the faulty wheel.



5. Insert the plug into the socket in the vehicle interior while the compressor is switched off.

6. Switch on the compressor with standby state or drive-ready state switched on.

Let the compressor run for a maximum of 10 minutes to fill the sealing compound and achieve a tyre inflation pressure of approximately 2.0 bar.

The tyre inflation pressure may rise to approximately 5 bar during the filling process of the sealing compound. Do not switch off the compressor during this step.

Checking and adjusting the tyre inflation pressure

Checking

1. Switch off compressor.
2. Read off the tyre inflation pressure as shown on the tyre pressure indicator.

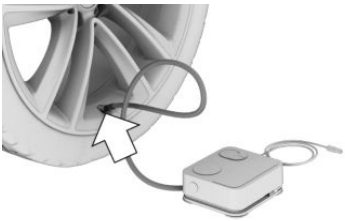
To be able to continue the journey, a tyre inflation pressure of at least 2 bar must be reached.

Removing and storing the sealant container

1. Unscrew the filler hose of the sealant container from the tyre valve.
2. Press the red unlocking device.
3. Remove the sealant container from the compressor.
4. Pack and store the sealant container to avoid soiling the boot.

Minimum tyre inflation pressure is not reached

1. Unplug the connector from the socket in the vehicle interior.
2. Drive forwards and backwards by 10 m, 400 inches, to distribute the sealant in the tyre.
3. Screw the connecting hose of the compressor directly onto the tyre valve.



4. Insert the plug into the socket in the vehicle interior.

5. Switch on the compressor with standby state or drive-ready state switched on.

   If the tyre inflation pressure of at least 2 bar is not reached, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or a qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

   If the tyre inflation pressure of at least 2 bar is reached, see Minimum tyre inflation pressure is reached.
6. Unscrew the connecting hose of the compressor from the tyre valve.
7. Unplug the connector from the socket in the vehicle interior.
8. Store Mobility System in the vehicle.

Minimum tyre inflation pressure is reached

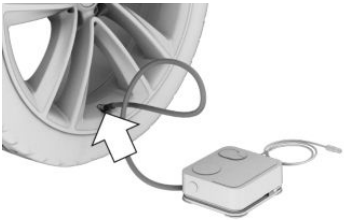
1. Unscrew the connecting hose of the compressor from the tyre valve.
2. Unplug the connector from the socket in the vehicle interior.
3. Store Mobility System in the vehicle.
4. Immediately drive for approximately 10 km/5 mi to evenly distribute the sealing compound in the tyre.

   Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h/50 mph.

   If possible, do not drive slower than 20 km/h/12 mph.

Adjusting

1. Stop in a suitable area.
2. Screw the connecting hose of the compressor directly onto the tyre valve.



3. Insert the plug into the socket in the vehicle interior.

4. Correct tyre inflation pressure to at least 2.0 bar:
   - ▷ To increase the tyre inflation pressure: switch on the compressor with standby state or drive-ready state switched on.
   - ▷ To reduce tyre inflation pressure: press the button on the compressor.
5. Unscrew the connecting hose of the compressor from the tyre valve.
6. Unplug the connector from the socket in the vehicle interior.
7. Store Mobility System in the vehicle.

Resuming a journey

Do not exceed maximum permitted speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

Reinitialise the runflat indicator RPA.

Reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor.

Have the punctured tyre and the sealant container of the Mobility System replaced as soon as possible.

For further information:

- ▷ Runflat indicator RPA, see page 386.
- ▷ Tyre Pressure Monitor, see page 379.

Snow chains

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

If snow chains are fitted to unsuitable tyres, the snow chains can come into contact with parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Only fit snow chains on tyres which have been approved by the manufacturer as being suitable for snow chains.

⚠ WARNING

Insufficiently tensioned snow chains can damage tyres and vehicle components. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Ensure that snow chains are always adequately tensioned. Re-tension them if necessary in accordance with the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Fine-link snow chains

The vehicle manufacturer recommends using fine-link snow chains. Certain fine-link snow chains have been tested, found safe for use in traffic and rated as suitable by the manufacturer of the vehicle.

Information regarding suitable snow chains is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Use

Snow chains may only be used in pairs on the rear wheels with tyres of the following sizes:

- ▷ 225/50 R17.
- ▷ 225/45 R18.

Observe the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialise the runflat indicator RPA with snow chains fitted, as it may give incorrect readings.

Do not reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor with snow chains fitted, as it may give incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains fitted, activate Dynamic Traction Control DTC briefly as required in order to optimise traction.

Maximum speed with snow chains

When snow chains are fitted, do not exceed 50 km/h, 30 mph.

Tyre Pressure Monitor

Principle

The system monitors the tyre inflation pressure in the four tyres installed on the vehicle. The system warns if the tyre inflation pressure in one or more tyres has dropped.

General

Sensors in the tyre valves measure the tyre inflation pressure and tyre temperature.

The system detects the fitted tyres automatically. The system shows the preset specified pressures on the Control Display and compares them to the current tyre inflation pressures.

If the vehicle is fitted with tyres which are not listed in the tyre inflation pressure information on the vehicle, for example tyres with special approval, the system must be actively reset. The current tyre inflation pressures are then accepted as the specified values.

When operating the system, please also comply with the information and notes in the chapter on tyre inflation pressure.

For further information:

Tyre inflation pressure, see page 368.

Safety note

WARNING

The display showing the specified tyre inflation pressures does not replace the tyre inflation pressure information on the vehicle. If incorrect data has been entered into the tyre settings, the specified tyre inflation pressures will also be incorrect. As a result, reliable signalling of a loss of tyre inflation pressure can no longer be guaranteed. There is a risk of injury and material damage. Make sure that the tyre sizes of the fitted tyres are displayed correctly and that they match the specifications on the tyres and in the tyre inflation pressure information.

Operating requirements

The following requirements must be met for the system, otherwise reliable signalling of a loss of tyre inflation pressure is not ensured:

- After each tyre or wheel change, the system has detected the fitted tyres, updated the relevant information and, after a short journey, shown it on the Control Display.

  If the system does not detect the tyres automatically, enter the specifications for the fitted tyres in the tyre settings.
- The Tyre Pressure Monitor only becomes active after a journey of several minutes:
  - After changing a tyre or wheel.
  - After a reset, in the case of tyres with special approval.
  - After changing the tyre setting.
- In the case of tyres with special approval:
  - After every tyre or wheel change, a reset must be carried out when the tyre inflation pressures are correct.
  - A reset must be carried out after the tyre inflation pressure has been adjusted to a new value.
- Wheels with wheel electronics.

Tyre settings

General

If the system does not detect the tyres automatically, the specifications for the fitted tyres can be entered in the tyre settings.

The tyre sizes of the fitted tyres can be found in the tyre inflation pressure information on the vehicle or directly on the tyres.

The tyre data does not have to be re-entered if the tyre inflation pressure is corrected.

For summer and winter tyres, the tyre data last entered for each type is saved. This means that the settings can be retrieved again after a tyre or wheel change.

Adjusting the settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tyre Pressure Monitor"
4. "Tyre settings"
5. "Tyre selection"
6. "Manual"
7. "Tyre type"
   - ▷ "Summer"
   - ▷ "Winter/all-season"
8. Select the type of tyre mounted on the rear axle.

   In the case of tyres with special approval:

   "Other tyres".

   See the Performing a reset section for how to proceed.
9. Select the load status of the vehicle once tyre size has been selected.
10. "Save tyre settings"

The measurement of the current tyre inflation pressure is started. The progress of the measurement is shown.

Status display

Current status

The status of the system, for example whether the system is active, can be shown on the Control Display.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tyre Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

Current tyre inflation pressure

The current tyre inflation pressure is displayed for each tyre.

The current tyre inflation pressures can vary depending on vehicle operation or outside temperature.

Current tyre temperature

Depending on the model, the current tyre temperatures are shown.

The current tyre temperatures can change as a result of vehicle operation or the outside temperature.

Specified pressure

The specified pressure for the tyres on the front and rear axle is displayed.

The calculated pressure takes account of the temperature effects caused by vehicle operation and the outside temperature. The appropriate specified pressure is always displayed irrespective of the weather conditions, tyre temperatures and length of journey.

The displayed specified pressure may vary and differ from the value stated in the tyre inflation pressure information on the door pillar of the driver's door. The tyre inflation pressure can thus be corrected to the value of the displayed specified pressures.

The specified pressure is adjusted immediately if the load status is changed in the tyre settings.

Tyre statuses

General

The status of the system and tyres is indicated by the wheel colour and a message on the Control Display.

If applicable, existing messages are not deleted if the nominal pressure is not reached on correction of the tyre inflation pressure.

All wheels green

- ▷ The system is active and refers to the nominal pressures for the warning.
- ▷ In the case of tyres with special approval: the system is active and is using the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset for the warning.

One to four wheels yellow

There is a flat tyre or major loss of tyre inflation pressure in the tyres shown.

Wheels grey

Tyre pressure losses might not be detected.

Possible causes:

- ▷ Malfunction.
- ▷ The tyre inflation pressure is being measured, after confirmation of the tyre settings.
- ▷ In the case of tyres with special approval: a system reset is being performed.

Tyres with special approval: performing a reset

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tyre Pressure Monitor"
4. Make sure that the correct tyre settings have been made.

   Tyre settings, see page 380.
5. Switch on drive-ready state but do not drive off.
6. Reset the tyre inflation pressure: "Perform reset".
7. Drive off.

The wheels are shown grey and the following appears on the display: "Resetting tyre pressure…".

After driving for several minutes, the set tyre inflation pressures are accepted as the specified tyre inflation pressures. The reset is completed automatically during the journey.

If the reset was successful, the wheels are shown in green on the Control Display and the following appears: "Reset successful."

You can interrupt your journey at any time. The reset resumes automatically when you continue your journey.

Messages: for tyres without special approval

General

Dynamic Stability Control DSC will be activated if necessary as soon as a message for low tyre inflation pressure appears.

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

A damaged standard tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure impairs driving characteristics, for example steering and braking. Tyres with run-flat properties allow a limited level of stability to be maintained. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is fitted with standard tyres. Comply with the notes on run-flat tyres and continuing to drive with these tyres.

If a tyre inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message is shown on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	The tyre was not inflated properly, for example insufficient air was added or there was a natural, even loss of tyre inflation pressure.

Action

Check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust as necessary.

If the tyre inflation pressure is insufficient

Message

A yellow warning lamp is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message is shown on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There has been a loss of tyre inflation pressure.

Action

1. Reduce speed. Do not exceed a speed of 130 km/h, 80 mph.
2. At the next opportunity, for example at a filling station, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres and correct if necessary.

If there is a significant loss of tyre inflation pressure

Message

A yellow warning lamp is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tyre is shown in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tyre or substantial loss of tyre inflation pressure.

Action

1. Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.
2. Check whether the vehicle is equipped with standard tyres or run-flat tyres.

   The symbol identifying run-flat tyres is a circle with the letters RSC on the tyre sidewall.

   Run-flat tyres, see page 373.
3. Follow the description of what to do when the vehicle gets a flat tyre.

   What to do in the event of a flat tyre, see page 384.

Messages: in the case of tyres with special approval

General

Dynamic Stability Control DSC will be activated if necessary as soon as a message for low tyre inflation pressure appears.

Safety note

WARNING

A damaged standard tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure impairs driving characteristics, for example steering and braking. Tyres with run-flat properties allow a limited level of stability to be maintained. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is fitted with standard tyres. Comply with the notes on run-flat tyres and continuing to drive with these tyres.

If a tyre inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message is shown on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	The tyre was not inflated properly, for example insufficient air was added. The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset has been performed. The tyre inflation pressure has dropped compared to the last reset. No reset has been performed on the system. The system is using the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset for the warning.

Action

1. Check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust as necessary.
2. Perform a reset of the system.

If the tyre inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning lamp is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message is shown on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There has been a loss of tyre inflation pressure. No reset has been performed on the system. The system is using the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset for the warning.

Action

1. Reduce speed. Do not exceed a speed of 130 km/h, 80 mph.
2. At the next opportunity, for example at a filling station, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres and correct if necessary.
3. Perform a reset of the system.

If there is a significant loss of tyre inflation pressure

Message

A yellow warning lamp is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tyre is shown in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tyre or substantial loss of tyre inflation pressure. No reset has been performed on the system. The system is using the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset for the warning.

Action

1. Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.
2. Check whether the vehicle is equipped with standard tyres or run-flat tyres.

   The symbol identifying run-flat tyres is a circle with the letters RSC on the tyre sidewall.

   Run-flat tyres, see page 373.
3. Follow the description of what to do when the vehicle gets a flat tyre.

   What to do in the event of a flat tyre, see page 384.

What to do in the event of a flat tyre

Standard tyres

1. Identify the damaged tyre.

   Check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres, for example using the tyre pressure indicator of a flat tyre kit.

   In the case of tyres with special approval: if all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the Tyre Pressure Monitor might not have been reset. Perform a reset.

   If no tyre damage can be found, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.
2. Repair the flat tyre, for example using a flat tyre kit or by changing the wheel.

   The use of sealant, for example a flat tyre kit, can damage the wheel electronics. Have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.

Run-flat tyres

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

A run-flat tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure will change the vehicle's handling characteristics, for example there may be reduced directional stability when braking, longer stopping distances and different self-steering characteristics. There is a risk of accident. Drive with care and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

⚠ WARNING

Continuing to drive with a flat tyre can result in heavy trailers starting to slalom. There is a risk of accident or material damage. When driving with a trailer and a flat tyre, do not exceed the speed of 60 km/h, 35 mph. If the trailer starts to snake, brake immediately and make the necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

Maximum speed

If a tyre is damaged you can continue your journey, but do not exceed a maximum speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

Continuing a journey with a flat tyre

Note the following if you continue a journey with a flat tyre:

1. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.
3. As soon as there is an opportunity, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres.

Possible driving distance with a deflated tyre

The possible driving distance varies depending on the load and stresses the vehicle is subjected to, for example speed, the nature of the road surface, outside temperature. The driving distance may be shorter but can also be increased by adopting a more careful driving style.

If the vehicle is moderately loaded and subjected to low stress, it is possible to travel up to 80 km, 50 miles.

Driving properties with damaged tyres

On a journey with damaged tyres, handling characteristics change and lead to the following situations, for example:

- ▷ The vehicle losing traction more quickly.
- ▷ Longer stopping distances.
- ▷ Different self-steering characteristics.

Adapt your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering or driving over obstacles, for example kerbs or potholes.

Final tyre failure

Vibration or loud noises during the journey may be an indication that the tyre has finally failed.

Reduce your speed and stop the vehicle. Parts of the tyre may detach, which might lead to an accident.

Do not continue driving, but instead contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

System limits

Temperature

The tyre inflation pressure depends on the temperature of the tyre.

The pressure increases as the temperature of the tyre increases, for example while driving or when exposed to sunlight.

The pressure decreases when the tyre temperature drops.

Due to the system's inherent warning thresholds, therefore, this behaviour may cause a warning to be triggered when significant temperature drops occur.

After a temperature-related warning, the specified pressures are displayed again on the Control Display after driving a short distance.

Sudden loss of tyre inflation pressure

No warning can be given in the event of extreme, sudden tyre failure caused by external factors.

Reset not carried out

Tyres with special approval: the system will not function correctly if a reset has not been carried out, for example, a flat tyre may be reported even though the tyre pressure is correct.

Malfunction

Message

The yellow warning lamp flashes and then illuminates continuously. A Check Control message is shown. Tyre pressure losses may not be detected.

Action

- ▷ A wheel without wheel electronics is mounted: have the wheels checked if necessary.
- ▷ Fault due to systems or devices with the same radio frequency: the system is automatically reactivated upon leaving the field of interference.
- ▷ In the case of tyres with special approval: the system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.

Malfunction: have the system checked.

Runflat indicator RPA

Principle

The system identifies a loss of tyre inflation pressure by comparing the rotational speeds of the individual wheels during the journey.

If a tyre loses inflation pressure, its diameter changes. This in turn alters the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel. The discrepancy will be detected and reported as a flat tyre.

The system does not measure the tyre inflation pressure as such.

Operating requirements

The following requirements must be met for the system, otherwise reliable signalling of a loss of tyre inflation pressure is not ensured:

- ▷ After every tyre or wheel change, an initialisation must be carried out once the tyre inflation pressures are correct.
- ▷ An initialisation must be carried out after the tyre inflation pressure has been adjusted to a new value.

Status display

It is possible to display the current status of the runflat indicator RPA, for example to check whether the RPA is active.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Flat Tyre Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialisation required

An initialisation must be performed in the following situations:

- ▷ After adjusting the tyre inflation pressure.
- ▷ After a tyre or wheel change.

Initialising

Initialisation saves the set tyre inflation pressures as reference values for subsequent detection of a flat tyre. Initialisation is started by confirming the correct tyre inflation pressures.

When driving with snow chains fitted, do not initialise the system.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tyre Monitor"
4. Switch on drive-ready state but do not drive off.
5. Start the initialisation: "Perform reset"
6. Drive off.

Initialisation is completed during the journey; this process can be interrupted at any time.

Initialising resumes automatically when you continue your journey.

Messages

General

Dynamic Stability Control DSC is activated if necessary as soon as the message for a flat tyre appears.

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

A damaged standard tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure impairs driving characteristics, for example steering and braking. Tyres with run-flat properties allow a limited level of stability to be maintained. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is fitted with standard tyres. Comply with the notes on run-flat tyres and continuing to drive with these tyres.

Flat tyre message

A yellow warning lamp is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message is shown on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tyre or substantial loss of tyre inflation pressure.

Action

1. Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.
2. Check whether the vehicle is equipped with standard tyres or run-flat tyres.

   The symbol identifying run-flat tyres is a circle with the letters RSC on the tyre sidewall.

   Run-flat tyres, see page 373.

What to do in the event of a flat tyre

Standard tyres

1. Identify the damaged tyre.

   To do this, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres, for example using the tyre pressure indicator of a flat tyre kit.

   If all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the runflat indicator RPA might not have been initialised. In this case initialise the system.

   If it is not possible to identify tyre damage, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.
2. Repair the flat tyre, for example using a flat tyre kit or by changing the wheel.

Run-flat tyres

Safety notes

WARNING

A run-flat tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure will change the vehicle's handling characteristics, for example there may be reduced directional stability when braking, longer stopping distances and different self-steering characteristics. There is a risk of accident. Drive with care and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

WARNING

Continuing to drive with a flat tyre can result in heavy trailers starting to slalom. There is a risk of accident or material damage. When driving with a trailer and a flat tyre, do not exceed the speed of 60 km/h, 35 mph. If the trailer starts to snake, brake immediately and make the necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

Maximum speed

If a tyre is damaged you can continue your journey, but do not exceed a maximum speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

Continuing a journey with a flat tyre

Note the following if you continue a journey with a flat tyre:

1. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.
3. As soon as there is an opportunity, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres.

   If all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the runflat indicator might not have been initialised. In this case initialise the system.

Possible driving distance with a deflated tyre

The possible driving distance varies depending on the load and stresses the vehicle is subjected to, for example speed, the nature of the road surface, outside temperature. The driving distance may be shorter but can also be increased by adopting a more careful driving style.

If the vehicle is moderately loaded and subjected to low stress, it is possible to travel up to 80 km, 50 miles.

Driving properties with damaged tyres

On a journey with damaged tyres, handling characteristics change and lead to the following situations, for example:

- ▷ The vehicle losing traction more quickly.
- ▷ Longer stopping distances.
- ▷ Different self-steering characteristics.

Adapt your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering or driving over obstacles, for example kerbs or potholes.

Final tyre failure

Vibration or loud noises during the journey may be an indication that the tyre has finally failed.

Reduce your speed and stop the vehicle. Parts of the tyre may detach, which might lead to an accident.

Do not continue driving, but instead contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

System limits

In the following situations, the system could be slow to respond or operate incorrectly:

- ▷ A natural, even loss of tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres that occurs over time will not be detected. Therefore check the tyre inflation pressure at regular intervals.
- ▷ No warning can be given in the event of sudden tyre failure caused by external factors.
- ▷ The system has not been initialised.
- ▷ When driving on snow-covered or slippery surfaces.
- ▷ Dynamic driving style: drive wheels slipping, high lateral acceleration.
- ▷ When driving with snow chains.

Wheel change

General

For run-flat tyres or when using a flat tyre kit, it is not always necessary to change a wheel immediately if tyre inflation pressure is lost due to a flat tyre.

If required, the tools for changing wheels are available as optional accessories from a Service Partner of the manufacturer, another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety notes

⚠ DANGER

The jack is only intended for raising the vehicle briefly during a wheel change. Even if the safety measures are complied with, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling over due to the jack slipping. There is a risk of injury or even death. If the vehicle is raised with the jack, do not lie underneath the vehicle and do not start the engine.

⚠ DANGER

Supports such as wooden blocks under the jack can prevent it from achieving its load capacity due to the restricted height. The load capacity of the wooden blocks may be exceeded, causing the vehicle to tip over. There is a risk of

injury or even death. Do not place supports under the vehicle jack.

WARNING

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use; for example, changing from summer to winter tyres. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a risk of injury and material damage. Only use the jack to change an emergency wheel or a spare wheel when the vehicle gets a flat tyre.

WARNING

On soft, uneven or slippery ground, for example snow, ice, tiles or similar, the jack may slip. There is a risk of injury. Perform the wheel change on a level, firm and non-slip surface if at all possible.

WARNING

The jack is only optimised for raising the vehicle and for use with the jacking points on the vehicle. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift another vehicle or other items with the jack.

WARNING

If the jack has not been guided into the jacking point provided, the vehicle might be damaged when the jack is extended, or the jack could slip. There is a risk of injury or material damage. When extending, make sure that the jack is guided into the jacking point adjacent to the wheelhouse.

WARNING

A vehicle raised with a jack can fall from the jack if lateral forces are applied. There is a risk of injury and material damage. If the vehicle is raised, do not apply any lateral forces to the vehicle or pull the vehicle with sudden movements. Have any wheel that is jammed removed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

WARNING

The jack can damage the base of the vehicle if operated incorrectly, thereby exposing high-voltage components. There is a risk of injury or material damage. When extending, make sure that the jack is guided into the jacking point adjacent to the wheelhouse. Ensure that no parts of the underbody trim are damaged.

Protecting the vehicle against rolling

General

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that the vehicle should additionally be protected against rolling away during a wheel change.

On a level surface

Place chocks or other suitable objects in front of and behind the wheel directly opposite to the one being changed.

On a slight downhill slope

If it is necessary to change a wheel on a slight downhill slope, place chocks and other suitable objects, for example stones, under the wheels of the front and rear axles against the direction of roll.

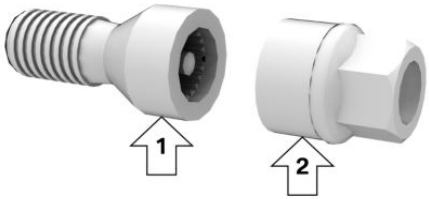
Locking wheel bolts

Principle

The wheel locking bolts have a special coding. The blots can only be released with the adapter that matches the coding.

Overview

The adapter of the locking wheel bolts can be found in the on-board tool kit or in an oddments tray in the on-board tool kit.



- ▷ Locking wheel bolt, arrow 1.
- ▷ Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing

1. Place the adapter on the locking wheel bolt.
2. Unscrew the locking wheel bolt.
3. After unscrewing the wheel stud, remove the adapter again.

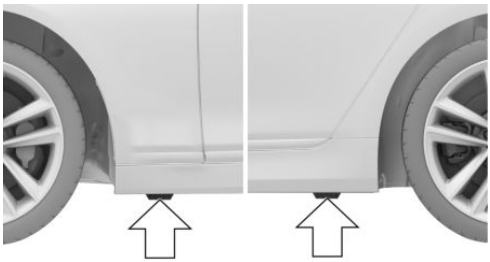
Screwing on

1. Place the adapter on the locking wheel bolt. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the locking wheel bolt.
2. Screw on the locking wheel bolt. The tightening torque is 140 Nm.
3. After screwing on the wheel stud, remove the adapter again and stow it.

Preparing the vehicle

- ▷ Park the vehicle on firm and non-slip ground at a safe distance from traffic.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Engage a gear or select selector lever position P.
- ▷ As soon as the traffic permits, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and guide them out of the danger area, for example behind the crash barrier.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment, take the wheel change tools and, if necessary, the spare wheel out of the vehicle.
- ▷ If applicable, set up warning triangle or flashing light at the correct distance.
- ▷ Additionally protect the vehicle against rolling away.
- ▷ Undo the wheel studs by half a turn.

Jacking points



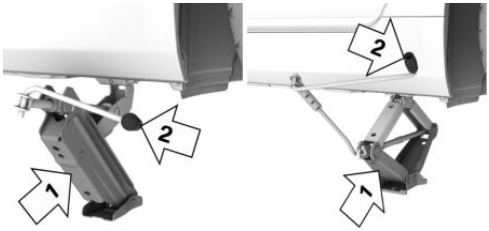
The jacking points are located in the marked positions.

Raising vehicle

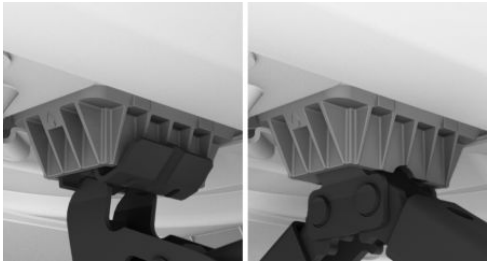
WARNING

Your hands or fingers could get trapped when using the jack. There is a risk of injury. Keep your hands in the described position when using the jack, and do not change this position.

1. Hold the jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the jack crank or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.



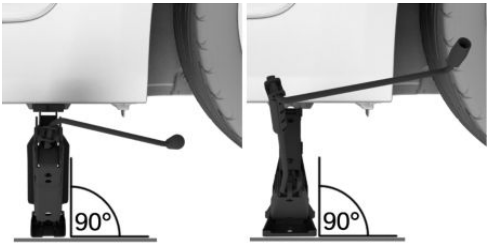
2. Guide the jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.



3. Turn the jack crank or lever clockwise to extend the jack.

4. Remove your hand from the jack as soon as the jack is under load and continue to turn the jack crank or lever with one hand.
5. Make sure that the base of the vehicle jack is extended perpendicular to and at right angles underneath the jacking point.

6. Make sure that the base of the jack is extended perpendicular to and at right angles below the jacking point.



7. Raise by cranking until the jack is supported on the ground with its entire surface and the wheel in question is at most 3 cm, 1.2 inches off the ground.

Fitting a wheel

Only fit one spare wheel at most, as required.

1. Unscrew the wheel studs.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put on the new wheel or emergency wheel and tighten at least two wheel studs crosswise until finger-tight.

   If non-original light alloy wheels not from the vehicle manufacturer are fitted, the wheel studs belonging to the wheels may also have to be used.
4. Tighten the remaining wheel studs until finger-tight and then tighten all the wheel studs crosswise.
5. Turn the jack crank anticlockwise to retract the jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the jack and stow it securely.

After changing the wheel

1. Tighten the wheel studs crosswise. The tightening torque is 140 Nm, 101 lb ft.
2. Stow the faulty wheel in the luggage compartment, if necessary.

   Due to its size, the faulty wheel cannot be accommodated under the luggage compartment floor.
3. Check tyre inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as necessary.
4. Reinitialise the runflat indicator RPA.

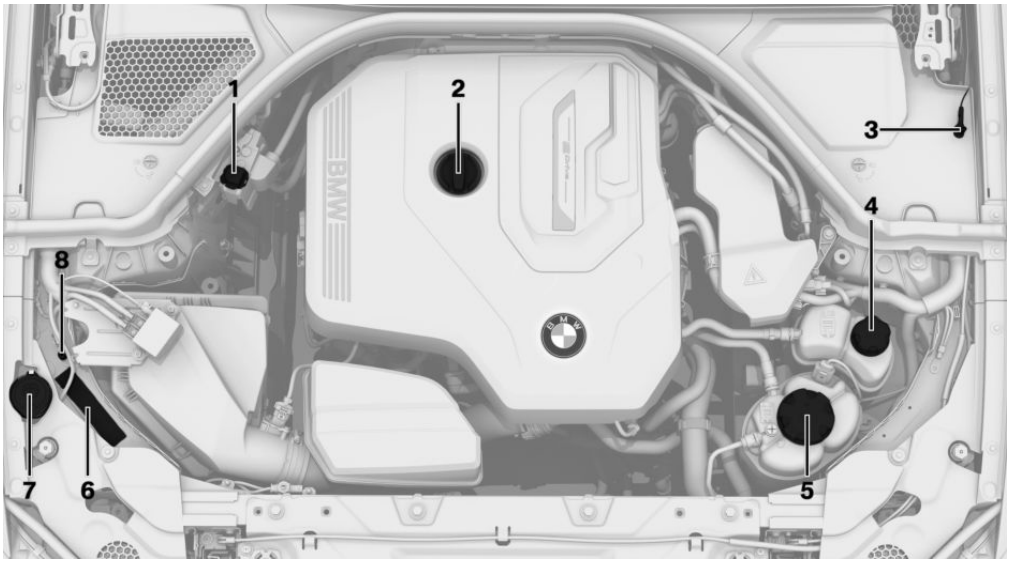
   Reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor.
5. Check the tight fit of the wheel bolts using a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Drive to the nearest Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop to have the damaged tyre replaced.

Engine compartment

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Overview



1 Starting aid, positive battery terminal
2 Oil filler neck
3 Manual unlocking, charging cable
4 Additional coolant tank cooling
5 Engine coolant tank
6 Vehicle identification number
7 Filler neck for washing fluid
8 Starting aid, negative battery terminal

Bonnet

Safety notes

WARNING

Incorrectly performed work in the engine compartment can damage components and poses a safety risk. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Have work in the engine compartment undertaken by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

WARNING

The engine compartment contains moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move when the vehicle is switched off, for example the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into an area where there are moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

WARNING

The front flap has protruding parts on the inside, for example locking hooks. There is a risk of injury. When the front flap is open, watch out for protruding parts and keep these areas clear.

WARNING

If the bonnet is not correctly locked, it can come open during the journey and impair visibility. There is a risk of accident. Stop immediately and close the bonnet correctly.

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when opening and closing the bonnet. There is a risk of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the bonnet is kept clear.

NOTE

Wipers which are folded away from the windscreen can become trapped if the front flap is opened. There is a risk of material damage. Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the wipers are fitted with wiper blades and are in contact with the windscreen.

NOTE

When closing, the front flap must lock into place on both sides. Applying additional pressure can damage the front flap. There is a risk of material damage. Open the front flap again and close it firmly. Avoid applying additional pressure.

Opening

1. Pull the lever, arrow 1.

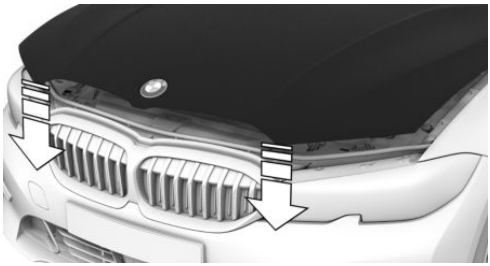
   Front flap is unlocked.

2. After releasing the lever, pull the lever again, arrow 2.

   The front flap can be opened.

3. Watch out for any protruding parts on the front flap.

Closing



Allow the front flap to drop from a height of approximately 50 cm, approx. 20 in.

The front flap must engage on both sides.

Operating fluids

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Fuel grade

General

Depending on the region, many filling stations sell fuel that is adapted to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is sold in winter helps with cold starting, for example.

Petrol

General

For optimal fuel consumption, the petrol should be sulphur-free or have a low sulphur content.

Fuels labelled on the pump as containing metal must not be used.

You can fill up with fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 25 %, for example E10 or E25.

The engine has knock control. This means that different petrol grades can be used.

Safety notes

NOTE

The fuel system and engine can be damaged by the wrong fuel, even in small quantities, and by the wrong fuel additives. In addition, the catalytic converter will be permanently damaged. There is a risk of material damage. For petrol engines, do not refuel with or add the following:

- ▷ Leaded petrol.
- ▷ Metallic additives, for example manganese or iron.

After filling with the wrong fuel, do not press the start/stop button. Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

NOTE

Fuel below the specified minimum quality can adversely affect engine function or lead to engine damage. There is a risk of material damage. Do not refuel below the specified minimum quality.

NOTE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and engine. There is a risk of material damage. Do not refuel with fuel with a higher ethanol content than recommended. Do not refuel with fuel containing methanol, for example M5 to M100.

Petrol grade

The engine is designed to run on petrol as per DIN EN 228.

Super, RON 95.

Use this fuel to achieve the rated performance and consumption figures.

Minimum grade

Unleaded petrol, RON 91.

BMW recommends Shell Quality Fuels

Engine oil

General

Engine oil consumption depends on the driving style and operating conditions.

Therefore check the engine oil level regularly each time you fill up with fuel by taking a detailed measurement.

Engine oil consumption may increase due to the following, for example:

- ▷ Dynamic driving style.
- ▷ While running in the engine.
- ▷ Engine idling.
- ▷ Use of engine oil grades rated as unsuitable.

Different Check Control messages are shown on the Control Display, depending on the engine oil level.

Safety notes

NOTE

Too little engine oil causes engine damage. There is a risk of material damage. Top up with engine oil immediately.

NOTE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of material damage. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is too much engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Electronic oil measurement

General

Electronic oil measurement uses two measuring procedures:

- ▷ Monitoring.
- ▷ Detailed measurement.

When frequently making short journeys or using a sporty driving style, for example fast cornering, perform a detailed measurement at regular intervals.

Monitoring

Principle

The engine oil level is monitored electronically during the journey and can be shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is shown.

Operating requirements

A current measurement is available after approximately 30 minutes of normal driving with the internal combustion engine running.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

System limits

When frequently making short journeys or using a sporty driving style, it may not be possible to obtain a measured value. In this case, the measurement for the last, sufficiently long journey is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Principle

The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and is shown on a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is shown.

General

During measurement, the idle speed is increased slightly.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Vehicle is standing on level ground.
- ▷ In drive-ready state.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not pressed.
- ▷ The internal combustion engine is at operating temperature.

Carrying out a detailed measurement

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"
4. "Engine oil level measurement"
5. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and shown on a scale.

Adding engine oil

General

Do not top up engine oil unless a message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The top-up amount is specified in the message on the Control Display.

Only replenish with suitable types of engine oil.

Safely stop the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before topping up with engine oil.

Do not add too much engine oil.

Safety notes

WARNING

Service products, for example oils, greases, coolants and fuels, can contain substances that are harmful to health. There is a risk of injury or even death. Please comply with the instructions on the containers. Do not allow service products to come into contact with clothing, skin or eyes. Do not pour service products into other bottles. Keep service products out of the reach of children.

NOTE

Too little engine oil causes engine damage. There is a risk of material damage. Top up with engine oil immediately.

NOTE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of material damage. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is too much engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Overview

The oil filler neck is in the engine compartment.

For further information:

Overview, see page 393.

Adding engine oil

1. Open bonnet.
   Opening, see page 394.
2. Turn the cap anticlockwise to open.

3. Add engine oil.
4. Tighten cap.

Engine oil grades for topping up

General

Engine oil quality is a critical factor in the service life of the engine.

Only replenish with the types of engine oil that are listed.

Some engine oil grades may not be available in all countries.

Safety notes

NOTE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of material damage. Do not use oil additives.

NOTE

Using the wrong engine oil can result in engine malfunctions and damage. There is a risk of material damage. When selecting the engine oil, make sure that it is the correct specification.

Suitable engine oil grades

Engine oils with the following oil specifications can be used.

Oil specification
BMW Longlife-04.
BMW Longlife-12 FE.
BMW Longlife-17 FE+.

Alternative engine oil grades

If suitable engine oils are not available, up to 1 litre, 2 pints, of an engine oil with the following oil specification can be used for topping up:

Oil specification
ACEA C2.
ACEA C3.

Viscosity classes

When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil belongs to one of the following viscosity classes:

Viscosity classes
SAE 0W-20.
SAE 5W-20.
SAE 0W-30.
SAE 5W-30.
SAE 0W-40.
SAE 5W-40.

Viscosity classes with a high viscosity grade can increase fuel consumption.

Further information on suitable engine oil specifications and viscosity classes can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Oil change

NOTE

If the engine oil is not changed at the correct time, engine wear may increase which could cause engine damage. There is a risk of material damage. Do not exceed the service date indicated in the vehicle.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having the engine oil changed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

BMW recommends
Original BMW Engine Oil.

Coolant

General

Coolant is a mixture of water and an additive.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Do not mix additives of different colours. Comply with the 50:50 mixing ratio of water to additive. Information regarding suitable additives is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety notes

WARNING

If the cooling system is opened when the engine is hot, coolant can escape and cause scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system when the engine has cooled down.

WARNING

Additives are harmful to health and using the wrong additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and material damage. Do not allow additives to come into contact with clothing, skin or eyes, and do not swallow them. Only use suitable additives.

Coolant level

General

Depending on the motorisation, there will be one or two coolant expansion tank(s) in the engine compartment. Check the coolant levels and top up.

The coolant level is shown by the Max. mark in the filler neck of the coolant tank.

For further information:

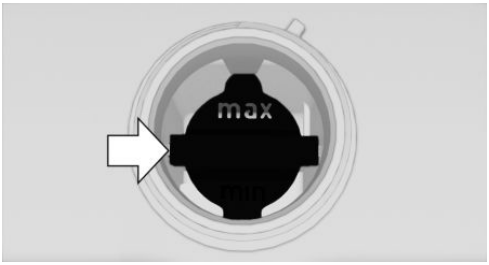
Overview, see page 393.

To check the coolant level

1. Allow the engine to cool down.
2. Open bonnet.

   Opening, see page 394.
3. Turn cap on coolant tank slightly anticlockwise, then allow the pressure to escape.
4. Open cap on coolant tank.

5. The coolant level is correct if it is just below the Max. mark in the filler neck.



6. Tighten cap.

Replenishing the coolant

1. Allow the engine to cool down.
2. Open bonnet.
   Opening, see page 394.
3. Turn cap on coolant tank slightly anticlockwise, then allow the pressure to escape.
4. Open cap on coolant tank.
5. If necessary, slowly top up to the correct level; do not overfill.
6. Tighten cap.
7. Have the cause of coolant loss rectified as soon as possible.

Disposal

When disposing of coolant and coolant additives, comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations.

Washer fluid

General

All washer jets are supplied from one reservoir.

Use a mixture of tap water and screenwash concentrate for the windscreen washer system, if necessary with the addition of antifreeze.

Recommended minimum fill level: 1 litre, 1.7 Imp. pints.

Safety notes

WARNING

Some antifreezes can contain toxic substances, and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and injury. Please comply with the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreezes away from sources of combustion. Do not pour service products into other bottles. Keep service products out of the reach of children.

WARNING

Washer fluid can ignite on contact with hot parts of the engine and catch fire. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Only top up washer fluid when the engine has cooled down. Then fully close the cap of the washer fluid reservoir.

NOTE

Silicone additives mixed with the washer fluid for their water beading effect on the windows may damage the washer system. There is a risk of material damage. Do not add silicone additives to the washer fluid.

NOTE

Mixing different screenwash concentrates or antifreezes may damage the washer system. There is a risk of material damage. Do not mix different screenwash concentrates or antifreezes. Please comply with the instructions and mixing ratios stated on the containers.

Overview

The reservoir for the washer fluid is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

Using undiluted screenwash concentrate or anti-freeze based on alcohol may result in false readings at low temperatures below -15 °C/+5 °F.

Maintenance

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

BMW Maintenance System

The maintenance system indicates what maintenance measures are required and thereby assists in maintaining the road safety and operational safety of the vehicle.

The exact work required and the maintenance intervals may vary depending on the national-market version. Labour, spare parts, operating materials and wear materials are charged separately. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Condition Based Service CBS

Principle

Sensors and special algorithms monitor the conditions in which the vehicle is used. CBS uses this information to determine what maintenance is required.

The system therefore allows the scope of the maintenance work to be adapted to the individual usage profile.

General

Information on service requirements can be shown on the control display.

For further information:

Service requirements, see page 189.

Service data in the vehicle key

Information on maintenance requirements is continuously stored in the vehicle key. The Service Partner can read out this data and suggest a programme of maintenance for your vehicle.

It is therefore important to give the service advisor the vehicle key that was last used to drive the vehicle.

Periods out of use

Periods when the vehicle is out of use with its battery disconnected are not taken into account.

In such cases, have any time-dependent maintenance procedures, for example those concerning the brake fluid and, where applicable, the engine oil and microfilter/activated charcoal filter, updated by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Service history

Maintenance and repairs

Have maintenance and repairs carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Entries

The maintenance work carried out is entered in the maintenance records and the vehicle data.

As with a service booklet, the entries provide evidence of regular maintenance.

If an entry is made in the electronic service history of the vehicle, service-relevant data is saved both in the vehicle and in the central IT systems of BMW AG, Munich.

After a change of vehicle ownership, the new vehicle owner will be able to view the data entered in the electronic service history. Similarly, a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop can also view the data entered in the electronic service history.

Objection

The vehicle owner has the right to contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop and request that no entries are made in the electronic service history and that no data relating to his/her time as owner is subsequently stored in the vehicle or transmitted to the vehicle manufacturer. In such cases, no entries will be made in the electronic service history of the vehicle.

Displays

Services that have been entered can be displayed on the control display.

For further information:

Service requirements, see page 189.

For Australia/New Zealand: maintenance

No maintenance work other than normal maintenance is required to keep the emission levels of your vehicle within the design limits.

Socket for on-board diagnosis OBD

General

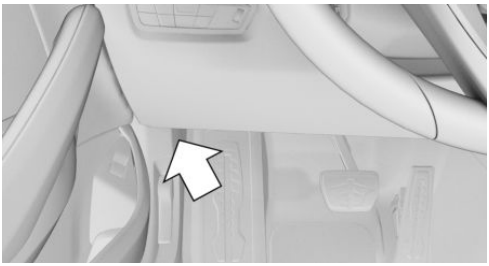
Devices connected to the OBD socket trigger the alarm system when the vehicle is locked. Remove any devices connected to the OBD socket before locking the vehicle.

Safety note

NOTE

Incorrect use of the OBD on-board diagnosis socket can cause malfunctions in the vehicle. There is a risk of material damage. Only have service and maintenance work involving the OBD on-board diagnosis socket carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop or other authorised persons. Only connect devices that have been tested and found to be safe for use with the OBD on-board diagnosis socket.

Position



The OBD socket for checking emissions-relevant components is located on the driver's side.

Engine warning light

▷ When the warning light flashes:

There is an engine malfunction that could damage the catalytic converter.

Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

▷ When the warning light illuminates:

This indicates a deterioration in exhaust emissions. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Vehicle recycling

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends returning the vehicle to a collection point nominated by the manufacturer at the end of its life cycle. The regulations concerning the returning of end-of-life vehicles may vary from country to country. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

High-voltage battery recycling

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or specialist workshop dispose of high-voltage batteries that are at the end of their useful life or are defective.

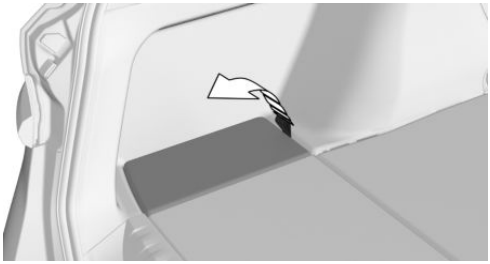
The regulations concerning the returning of end-of-life vehicles may vary from country to country. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. For more information, see www.bmw.com.

Replacing parts

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

On-board tool kit



The on-board tool kit is located in the left storage compartment of the boot.

Wiper blades

Safety notes

NOTE

The windscreen may sustain damage if a wiper falls onto it without the wiper blade fitted. There is a risk of material damage. Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold in or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.

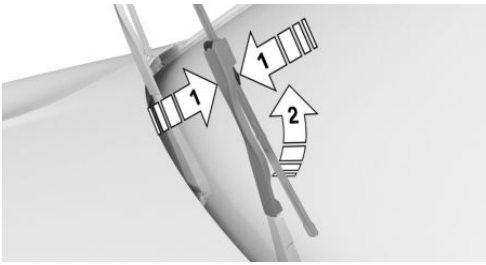
NOTE

Wipers which are folded away from the windscreen can become trapped if the front flap is opened. There is a risk of material damage. Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the wipers are fitted with wiper blades and are in contact with the windscreen.

Replacing the front wiper blades

1. To replace the wiper blades, move the wipers to the fold-out position.

   Fold-out position of the wipers, see page 164.
2. Fold out the wiper arm and hold firm.
3. Press together securing spring, arrow 1, and fold out the wiper blade, arrow 2.



4. Take the wiper blade forwards out of the fitting.
5. Insert the new wiper blade in the opposite sequence ensuring that it clips into place.
6. Fold in the wipers.

Replacing the rear wiper blade

The wiper blade is engaged on the end of the wiper arm.

1. Pull the wiper up fully and pull off the wiper blade, arrow.

2. Insert new wiper blade. The wiper blade must engage audibly.
3. Fold in the wipers.

Bulbs and lights

General

Lights and bulbs are an important aspect of driving safety.

All headlights and other lights use LED or laser technology.

Some equipment versions have light-emitting diodes behind a cover as a light source. These light-emitting diodes are similar to conventional lasers and are classified by legislation as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

In the case of a defect, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having respective work carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety notes

WARNING

Concentrated laser light can cause irritation or lasting damage to the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having work on the lighting system, including bulb replacement, performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

WARNING

Intense brightness can irritate or harm the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove covers from LEDs.

Headlight glass

During cool or humid weather, the headlight glass can mist over on the inside. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation disappears after a short time. There is no need to replace the headlight glass.

If moisture increases for example if there are water droplets in the lamp despite the headlights being switched on, have the headlights checked.

Vehicle battery

General

The battery is maintenance-free.

More information regarding the battery can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety notes

DANGER

Touching live components can result in an electric shock. There is a risk of injury or even death. Do not touch any components that could be live.

WARNING

Vehicle batteries that are classified as unsuitable may damage systems or result in functions no longer being carried out. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Only use vehicle batteries that have been classified as suitable by the vehicle manufacturer.

WARNING

If a vehicle battery is old or has been subjected to excessive stress for several years, it is no longer possible to guarantee all systems, for example steering assistance, will function correctly. There is a risk of accident or material damage. Replace the vehicle battery after the Check Control message is displayed.

Registering the battery with the vehicle

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or an authorised workshop register the vehicle battery with the vehicle after the battery has been replaced. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort functions will be available without restriction and any Check Control messages relating to the comfort functions will no longer be displayed.

Hazard symbols

The following hazard symbols can be found on the vehicle battery:

Symbol	Meaning
	No smoking, no naked flames, no sparks.
	Wear protective goggles.
	Keep away from children.
	Risk of acid burns: wear gloves, do not tilt the battery.
	Rinse any splashes of acid with water immediately. If acid comes into contact with eyes or is swallowed, seek medical attention immediately.
	No direct sunlight, no frost.
	Follow the user manual.
	Explosive gas mixture. Do not seal any openings on the battery.

Replacing the battery

General

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends only having the vehicle battery replaced by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or an authorised workshop. If the battery is not replaced correctly, the vehicle may not recognise it properly and perfect functioning cannot be guaranteed.

Notes on removal

Observe the following notes on removing the vehicle battery:

- ▷ Park the vehicle and switch off consumers.
- ▷ First disconnect the power at the negative terminal. Then disconnect the power at the positive terminal.

Notes on installation

Observe the following notes on installing the vehicle battery:

- ▷ Remove any foreign bodies from the battery holder.
- ▷ Only install the battery in the intended position in the vehicle.
- ▷ Keep the battery and vehicle connection contacts clean.
- ▷ First connect the power at the positive terminal. Then connect the power at the negative terminal.
- ▷ Use the connections, connectors and covers provided.
- ▷ Connect a hose to the gas outlet opening if necessary.

Initial operation

The battery is operational. No special precautions are required for start-up.

Charging the battery

General

Ensure the battery is sufficiently charged to guarantee the entire lifetime of the battery.

Charge the battery under the following situations:

- ▷ If the inspection glass on the top of the battery is black.
- ▷ If there is insufficient starting power.

The following conditions can have a negative effect on battery performance:

- ▷ Frequently driving short distances.
- ▷ If the vehicle is not used for a period of one month or longer.

Safety note

⚠ NOTE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery may operate with high voltages and high currents which can overload or damage the 12-volt on-board network. There is a risk of material damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

Battery charger

Battery chargers developed especially for the vehicle and suitable for the on-board network can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Charging the battery

Only charge the battery via the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment and with the engine switched off.

For further information:

Starting aid terminals, see page 418.

Power failure

Following an electrical power failure, some equipment will have to be reinitialised or individual settings will need to be updated, for example:

- ▷ With memory function: save positions again.
- ▷ Time: update.
- ▷ Date: update.
- ▷ Glass sunroof: initialise system.

Storing the battery

Observe the following information on storing vehicle batteries:

- ▷ Store the battery in a cool and dry place.

- ▷ Protect the battery from direct sunlight and frost.
- ▷ Only clean the battery with a damp, anti-static cloth.
- ▷ Store the battery upright and secure it against falling over.
- ▷ Install the oldest batteries first.
- ▷ Do not remove the protective cap from the contacts.
- ▷ Charge or install the battery by the date on the battery label at the latest. Once fully charged, the battery will work for another 10 months.

Disposing of the old battery

Dispose of old batteries at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop or hand them in to an authorised collecting point.

Batteries filled with acid should be transported upright. Protect batteries against falling over when in transit.

Warranty

See the vehicle purchase contract for information on the battery warranty.

Fuses

General

The fuses are located at different positions in the vehicle.

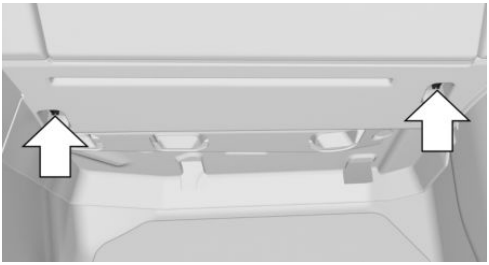
Safety note

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect or repaired fuses can overload electrical cables and components. There is a risk of fire. Do not repair blown fuses or replace them with fuses with a different colour or amp rating.

In the interior

The fuses are located in the interior, behind a cover in the front seat passenger footwell.



Undo fastenings, arrow, and open cover.

The fuse box is located at the front right.

Inside the luggage compartment

The fuses are located behind a cover on the right-hand side in the luggage compartment.

Remove the cover from the right-hand trim panel.

The fuse box may be located behind sound insulation.

Information on the fuse types and locations, as well as the positions of any other fuse boxes, is available on the Internet: www.bmw.com/fuse-card.

Where applicable, information on the fuse types and locations is also found on a separate sheet in the fuse box.

Other fuse boxes

There are other fuse boxes in the vehicle. In the event of a fault, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having fuses changed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Help in case of a breakdown

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

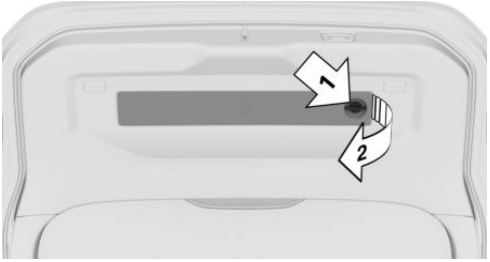
Hazard warning lights

The button is located in the centre console.

Warning triangle

The warning triangle is located in the tailgate.

1. Turn the twist lock in the tailgate by 90°, arrow 1, and fold open the trim panel, arrow 2.



2. To remove it, slide the warning triangle to the side.

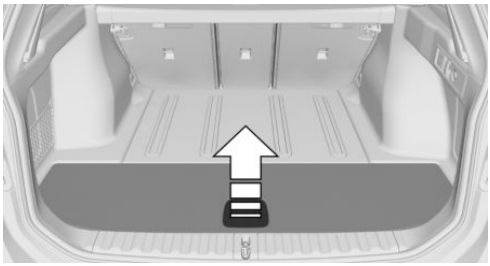
First-aid kit

General

Some items in the kit have a limited life.

Check the use-by dates of the contents regularly and replace any items that have expired in good time.

Storage



The first-aid kit is located in the compartment under the luggage compartment floor.

Fold up luggage compartment floor.

BMW Roadside Assistance

Principle

BMW Group Roadside Assistance can be contacted if you require help in the event of a breakdown.

General

In the case of a breakdown, data on the vehicle condition can be transferred to the BMW Roadside Assistance. It is possible that malfunctions can be remedied directly.

There are various ways of contacting BMW Roadside Assistance.

- ▷ Via a Check Control message.

  Supplementary text messages, see page 180.
- ▷ Calling with a mobile phone.
- ▷ Via the BMW Connected app.

Depending on the national-market version and vehicle type, a different Roadside Assistance provider can be assigned via the ConnectedDrive customer portal if necessary.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Activated ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ Mobile reception.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Starting manually

When equipped with Teleservices, support is provided first through Teleservice Diagnosis and then by Teleservice Assistance if required.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assistance"
4. If necessary, "BMW Roadside Assistance"

   A voice connection is established.

Teleservice Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnosis enables the detailed vehicle data required for diagnosis to be transferred via mobile communications. This data is transferred automatically. It may be necessary to approve this on the Control Display.

Teleservice Assistance

Teleservice Assistance is a country-specific feature that allows BMW Roadside Assistance to carry out a more in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle via mobile communications.

Teleservice Assistance can be started after a request by BMW Roadside Assistance.

1. Park the vehicle safely.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Control Display is switched on.
4. Confirm Teleservice Assistance.

BMW Accident Assistance

Principle

BMW Group Accident Assistance can be contacted if help is required in the event of an accident.

General

If the vehicle sensors detect a minor to moderately severe accident, which did not trigger any airbags, a Check Control message is displayed in the instrument cluster. A corresponding text message also appears on the Control Display.

When BMW Accident Assistance is activated, data on the vehicle condition is transferred to BMW.

Depending on the national-market version and vehicle type, a different accident assistance provider can be assigned via the ConnectedDrive customer portal if necessary.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Activated ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ Mobile reception.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance

If an accident is detected automatically

A text message prompting the driver to call BMW Accident Assistance is shown on the Control Display.

The connection can be established directly:

"Contact accident assistance"

The Check Control message for BMW Accident Assistance can also be called up from the saved Check Control messages for a certain length of time.

For further information:

Check Control, see page 179.

Starting manually

BMW Accident Assistance can also be contacted independently of the automatic accident detection function.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assistance"
4. "BMW Accident Assistance"

   Follow the displays on the control display. A voice connection is established.

Emergency call

Statutory emergency call

Principle

The system can be used to trigger an emergency call automatically or manually in emergency situations.

General

Press the SOS button in an emergency only.

The emergency call establishes a connection to a public emergency call number.

This depends on factors such as the specific mobile telephone network and national regulations.

The emergency call is placed using the SIM card integrated in the vehicle and cannot be switched off.

For technical reasons, it might not be possible to make an emergency call in highly adverse conditions.

Overview

SOS button.

Operating requirements

- Standby state is switched on.
- Emergency call system is functional.
- If the vehicle is equipped with intelligent emergency call: the SIM card integrated in the vehicle is activated.

Automatic triggering

In certain circumstances, for example deployment of the airbags, an emergency call may be placed automatically immediately after an accident of appropriate severity. An automatic emergency call is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Manual triggering

1. Tap on cover flap.
2. Press and hold the SOS button until the LED in the button area is illuminated green.

- The LED is illuminated green when the emergency call has been activated.

  If a cancellation request is displayed on the Control Display, the emergency call can be cancelled.

  If the situation permits, wait in the vehicle until voice contact has been established.

- The LED flashes green when the connection to the emergency number has been established.

  In the case of an emergency call, data is sent to the public rescue coordination centre in order to decide what rescue measures are required. The data may include, for example, the current position of the vehicle, if this can be determined.

  For information on data transfer and storage:

  Statutory emergency call system, see page 15.

  Even if the vehicle occupants can no longer hear the rescue coordination centre through the loudspeakers, the rescue coordination centre may still be able to hear the vehicle occupants speak.

The rescue coordination centre ends the emergency call.

Malfunction

The emergency call function may be impaired.

The LED near the emergency call button illuminates for approximately 30 seconds. A Check Control message is shown.

Have checks performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Intelligent emergency call

Principle

The system can be used to trigger an emergency call automatically or manually in emergency situations.

General

Press the SOS button in an emergency only.

The intelligent emergency call system establishes a connection with the BMW emergency call centre.

Even if no emergency call through BMW is possible, in some cases an emergency call may still be established to a public emergency call number. This depends on factors such as the specific

mobile telephone network and national regulations.

For technical reasons, it might not be possible to make an emergency call in highly adverse conditions.

Overview

SOS button.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Emergency call system is functional.
- ▷ If the vehicle is equipped with intelligent emergency call: the SIM card integrated in the vehicle is activated.

Automatic triggering

In certain circumstances, for example deployment of the airbags, an emergency call may be placed automatically immediately after an accident of appropriate severity. An automatic emergency call is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Manual triggering

1. Tap on cover flap.
2. Press and hold the SOS button until the LED in the button area is illuminated green.

- ▷ The LED is illuminated green when the emergency call has been activated.

  If a cancellation request is displayed on the Control Display, the emergency call can be cancelled.

  If the situation permits, wait in the vehicle until voice contact has been established.

- ▷ The LED flashes green when the connection to the emergency number has been established.

  When an emergency call is made via BMW, data, for example the vehicle's position if this can be determined, is sent to the public emergency call centre in order to decide what rescue measures are required.

  If questions asked by the emergency call centre remain unanswered, rescue measures are implemented automatically.

  Even if the vehicle occupants can no longer hear the emergency call centre through the loudspeakers, the emergency call centre may still be able to hear the vehicle occupants speak.

The emergency call centre ends the emergency call.

Fire extinguisher

Principle

The fire extinguisher can be used to put out vehicle fires.

General

Depending on the vehicle's equipment and the country variant, the vehicle may have a fire extinguisher.

Safety note

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the fire extinguisher can cause injury. There is a risk of injury. Observe the information below when using the fire extinguisher:

- ▷ Do not inhale the extinguishing agent. If the extinguishing agent is inhaled, move the casualty out into the fresh air. If the casualty experiences breathing difficulties, contact a doctor immediately.
- ▷ Do not allow the extinguishing agent to come into contact with the skin. Prolonged contact with the extinguishing agent can cause the skin to dry out.
- ▷ Do not allow the extinguishing agent to come into contact with the eyes. In the event of contact with the eyes, rinse them immediately with plenty of water. In case of prolonged discomfort, contact a doctor.

Overview

The fire extinguisher is located at the front of the front passenger seat.

Removing the fire extinguisher

Open the buckles on the retaining strap.

Using the fire extinguisher

To use the fire extinguisher, follow the manufacturer's instructions on the fire extinguisher and the information supplied with it.

Stowing the fire extinguisher

1. Insert the fire extinguisher into the holder.
2. Hook in and close the buckles.

Maintenance and refilling

Have the fire extinguisher checked every 2 years by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Make a note of the next maintenance date for the fire extinguisher.

Replace the fire extinguisher after use or have it refilled.

Conduct after an accident

General

After an accident, take the following safety measures regarding the high-voltage system:

- ▷ Secure the area where the accident has taken place.
- ▷ Inform the fire, police or ambulance service immediately that it involves a vehicle with a high-voltage system.
- ▷ Put the selector lever into position P, apply the parking brake and switch off or deactivate standby state or drive-ready state.
- ▷ Lock the vehicle when you leave it.
- ▷ Do not inhale any gases from the high-voltage battery and keep away from the vehicle as appropriate.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

Touching live components can result in an electric shock. There is a risk of injury or even death. After an accident, do not touch any high-voltage components, for example orange high-voltage cables or parts which are in contact with exposed high-voltage cables.

⚠ WARNING

Fluids in the high-voltage battery are corrosive. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch fluid from the high-voltage battery.

Starting aid

General

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the engine can be started from another vehicle's battery us-

ing two jump leads. Only use jump leads with fully insulated terminal clamps.

Vehicles with hybrid drive cannot provide starting aid.

Safety notes

DANGER

Touching live components can result in an electric shock. There is a risk of injury or even death. Do not touch any components that could be live.

WARNING

Connecting the jump leads in the wrong sequence can cause sparks. There is a risk of injury. Please comply with the correct sequence when connecting.

NOTE

Contact between the bodywork of the two vehicles can result in a short circuit during starting aid. There is a risk of material damage. Make sure there is no contact between the bodywork.

Preparations

1. Check whether the battery in the other vehicle shows 12 volts. Information about the voltage is provided on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the other vehicle.
3. Switch off any power consumers in both vehicles.

Jump-starting connections

The jump-starting connection in the engine compartment serves as the positive battery terminal.

A special connection on the body serves as the negative battery terminal in the engine compartment.

For further information:

Overview of the engine compartment, see page 393.

Open the lid of the positive battery terminal.

Connecting the cables

Before starting, switch off all unnecessary power consumers, for example the radio, on both vehicles.

1. Open the cover of the jump-starting connection.
2. Connect a terminal clamp on the positive/+ jump lead to the positive terminal of the battery or the corresponding jump-starting connection on the other vehicle.
3. Connect the second terminal clamp to the battery's positive terminal or to the corresponding jump-starting connection on the vehicle being started.
4. Connect a terminal clamp on the negative/– jump lead to the negative terminal of the battery or the corresponding engine or body earth connection on the other vehicle.
5. Connect the second terminal clamp to the negative terminal of the battery or to a corresponding engine or body earth connection on the vehicle being started.

Establishing drive-ready state

1. Start the engine of the other vehicle and allow it to run for a few minutes at a slightly higher idle speed.
2. Establish drive-ready state in the normal way in the vehicle to be started.

   If an initial attempt to start the engine fails, wait a few minutes before trying again to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Disconnect the jump leads in reverse order to connection.

Check the battery and have it recharged if necessary.

Tow-starting/towing away

Safety note

WARNING

Due to system limitations, individual functions may not work properly when tow-starting/towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems. There is a risk of accident. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/towing.

Steptronic transmission: transporting the vehicle

General

Do not have the vehicle towed.

Safety notes

NOTE

If the vehicle is towed with one axle raised, the vehicle can be damaged. There is a risk of material damage. Only have the vehicle transported on a truck bed.

NOTE

The vehicle may be damaged when raising and securing it.

There is a risk of material damage.

- ▷ Raise the vehicle with suitable equipment.
- ▷ Do not raise or secure the vehicle by its towing eye, body parts or chassis parts.

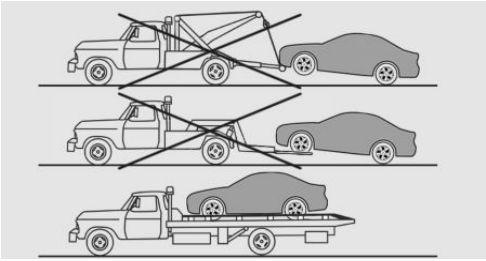
Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from danger, it can be pushed for a short distance.

For further information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, see page 166.

Towing truck



Only have the vehicle transported on a truck bed.

Towing other vehicles

General

Switch on the hazard warning lights in line with local regulations.

If the electrical system of the vehicle being towed has failed, the vehicle must be made identifiable to other road users, for instance by placing a sign or the warning triangle in the rear window.

With Safe Share function: to remove a broken-down vehicle from a dangerous area, it can be towed over a short distance at a maximum speed of 10 km/h, approx. 6 mph.

Safety notes

WARNING

If the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is less than that of the vehicle being towed, the towing eye may be torn off or it may not be possible to control the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the gross vehicle

weight of the towing vehicle is greater than the weight of the vehicle being towed.

NOTE

If the tow bar or the towing rope is not attached correctly, other vehicle parts can be damaged. There is a risk of material damage. Attach the tow bar or towing rope to the towing eye correctly.

Tow bar

The towing eyes of both vehicles should be on the same side.

If it is impossible to avoid attaching the tow bar at an angle, note the following:

- ▷ Clearance may be limited when cornering.
- ▷ Lateral forces will be generated if the tow bar is installed at an angle.

Towing rope

Note the following if using a towing rope:

- ▷ Use nylon ropes or straps that will allow the vehicle to be towed smoothly.
- ▷ Fasten the towing rope so it is not twisted.
- ▷ Check the towing eye and towing rope fastening regularly.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing speed of 50 km/h, 30 mph.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing distance of 5 km, 3 miles.
- ▷ Ensure that the towing rope is taut when the towing vehicle drives off.

Towing eye

General

Always keep the screw-on towing eye in the vehicle.

The towing eye can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

The towing eye is located in the toolkit.

- ▷ Only use the towing eye supplied with the vehicle and make sure that it is screwed in fully and is tight.
- ▷ Only use the towing eye for towing on paved roads.
- ▷ Avoid transverse loads on the towing eye, for example do not raise the vehicle by the towing eye.
- ▷ Check the towing eye fastening regularly.

For further information:

On-board tool kit, see page 406.

Safety note

NOTE

If the towing eye is not used as intended, the vehicle or towing eye may be damaged. There is a risk of material damage. Observe the notes on using the towing eye.

Thread for towing eye

Press the marking on the edge of the cover to push it out.

For covers which have an opening instead of a marking, pull the cover out by the opening.

Tow-starting

Do not attempt to tow-start the vehicle.

If necessary, start the engine using the starting aid.

Have the cause of the starting problems rectified by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For further information:

Starting aid, see page 417.

General care

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Washing the vehicle

General

Regularly remove foreign bodies, for example leaves, from the area below the windscreen with the bonnet raised.

Wash the vehicle frequently, especially in winter. Heavy soiling and road salt can cause damage to the vehicle.

Steam-jet cleaners and high-pressure cleaners

Safety note

NOTE

When cleaning with high-pressure cleaners, excessive pressure or excessive temperatures can damage various components. There is a risk of material damage. Maintain a sufficient distance and do not spray for an extended period of time. Comply with the instructions for the high-pressure cleaner.

Distances and temperature

- ▷ Maximum temperature: 60 °C/140 °F.
- ▷ Minimum distance to sensors, cameras, seals: 30 cm, 12 in.
- ▷ Minimum distance to the glass sunroof: 80 cm, 31.5 in.

Automatic car washes

Safety note

NOTE

The vehicle can be damaged if automatic washing bays or car washes are used incorrectly. There is a risk of material damage. Observe the following notes:

- ▷ Textile car washes or systems using soft brushes are preferable, to avoid damage to the paintwork.
- ▷ Do not drive into automatic car washes washing or washing bays with guide rails higher than 10 cm, 4 in, to avoid damage to the body.
- ▷ Note the maximum tyre width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tyres and rims.
- ▷ Fold in the exterior mirrors to avoid damaging them.
- ▷ Deactivate the wipers and the rain sensor (if fitted) to avoid damage to the wiper system.

Entering a car wash with a Steptronic transmission

Safety note

NOTE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of material damage. Do not switch off standby state in car washes.

General

The vehicle must be able to roll freely whilst in the car wash.

Some car washes require you to get out of the vehicle. It is not possible to lock the vehicle from the outside in selector lever position N. If an attempt is made to lock the vehicle, a signal sounds.

For further information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, see page 166.

Exiting from a car wash

Make sure that the vehicle key is in the vehicle.

Switch on drive-ready state.

For further information:

Drive-ready state, see page 52.

Headlights

Do not rub wet headlights dry and do not use abrasive or corrosive cleaning agents.

Soak impurities such as insect residues with shampoo and wash off with water.

Remove ice with a de-icer spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After the vehicle has been washed, briefly apply the brakes to dry them, otherwise braking effectiveness may be temporarily reduced. The heat generated by braking dries the brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove residues on the windscreens to avoid affecting visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiping noise and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Care products

General

BMW recommends using care and cleaning products from BMW. Suitable care products are available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety note

WARNING

Cleaning agents can contain hazardous substances or constitute a health risk. There is a risk of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Use only products that are intended for cleaning the vehicle's interior. Observe the notes on the packaging.

Vehicle paintwork

General

Regular care promotes driving safety and preserves your vehicle's value. Environmental effects in areas with high air pollution or natural contaminants, for example tree resin or pollen, may affect the vehicle paintwork. Take such factors into consideration when deciding on the frequency and scope of vehicle care measures.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, for example spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings to prevent paintwork damage and discolouration.

Matt paintwork

Only use cleaning and care products that are suitable for vehicles with matt paintwork.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather at regular intervals with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Dust and road dirt will otherwise become worked into pores and folds, resulting in considerable abrasion and causing the leather surface to become prematurely brittle.

In order to protect against discolouration, for example from clothing, clean and care for the leather approximately every two months.

Clean light-coloured leather more frequently as it has the tendency to soil faster.

Use leather cleaner, otherwise dirt and grease will attack the protective coating of the leather.

Care of upholstery fabrics

General

Regularly clean the upholstery with a vacuum cleaner.

In the event of heavy soiling, for example stains caused by drinks, use a soft sponge or a lint-free microfibre cloth with suitable interior cleaning agents.

Clean the upholstery up to the seams using wide wiping actions. Avoid rubbing vigorously.

Safety note

NOTE

Open Velcro fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. There is a risk of material damage. Make sure that any Velcro fasteners on your clothing are closed.

Care of special parts

Light alloy wheels

When cleaning the wheels while they are installed on the vehicle, only use neutral rim cleaner with a pH value between 5 and 9. Do not use abrasive cleaners or steam cleaners above 60 °C/140 °F. Observe the manufacturer's instructions.

Corrosive, acidic or alkaline cleaners may destroy the protective coatings of adjacent parts, for example brake discs.

After cleaning, briefly apply the brakes to dry them. The heat generated by braking dries the brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean chrome-like surfaces with plenty of water and add shampoo if need be, particularly if they have been exposed to road salt.

Rubber parts

The surfaces of rubber parts can be contaminated or lose their shine due to environmental influences. Only use water and suitable care products for cleaning.

Rubber parts subjected to high wear and tear should be treated regularly with rubber care products. Do not use silicone-based care products for treating rubber seals, otherwise these could be damaged and become a source of noise.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood trims and fine wood parts with a damp cloth only. Then dry them with a soft cloth.

Kenaf

Treat parts made from kenaf fibres with a suitable care product only.

Plastic parts

NOTE

Cleaning agents containing alcohol or solvents, such as nitro thinners, cold cleaners, fuel or similar can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of material damage. Clean with a microfibre cloth. Lightly moisten the cloth with water if necessary.

Clean with a microfibre cloth.

Lightly moisten the cloth with water if necessary.

Do not soak the headliner.

Seat belts

WARNING

Chemical cleaners can cause irreparable damage to the fabric of the seat belts. The protective function of the seat belts will be lost. There is a risk of injury or even death. Only use a mild soap and water solution for cleaning the seat belts.

Dirt on the belt straps can interfere with the action of the reel and is a safety hazard.

Only clean the belt straps with a mild soap solution while still fitted to the vehicle.

Do not allow seat belts to retract until they are dry.

Carpets and foot mats

WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can restrict the pedal travel or block a pedal that has been pressed. There is a risk of accident. Ensure that items in the vehicle are stowed securely and cannot get into the driver's footwell. Only use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be securely fastened to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats, and do not place several floor mats on top of one another. Make sure that there is sufficient space for the pedals. Ensure that floor mats are securely reattached after removal, for example for cleaning.

Floor mats can be removed from the vehicle to enable the interior to be cleaned more thoroughly.

In the event of heavy soiling, clean floor carpets using a microfibre cloth and water or textile cleaner. Rub back and forth in the direction of travel to prevent matting.

Sensors and camera lenses

Clean sensors or camera lenses using a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass cleaner.

Displays, screens and protective glass of the Head-Up Display

NOTE

Chemical cleaners, moisture or fluids of all kinds can damage the surface of displays and screens. There is a risk of material damage. Clean with a clean, anti-static microfibre cloth.

NOTE

Incorrect cleaning can damage the surfaces of displays. There is a risk of material damage. Avoid applying excessive pressure and do not use abrasive materials.

Clean with a clean, anti-static microfibre cloth.

Clean the protective glass of the Head-Up Display with a microfibre cloth and commercially available dishwashing liquid.

High-voltage battery, long stationary periods

Principle

When the vehicle is standing around for several weeks, where possible stop with a fully-charged high-voltage battery.

Do not place the vehicle in storage for longer than 14 days if the electric range has been used up.

For phases of standing of up to three months, where possible park the vehicle plugged into a suitable power source or virtually fully charged.

General

A Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop will be pleased to advise you on the measures that should be taken when placing the vehicle in storage for longer than three months.

Safety note

NOTE

Excessive discharging can damage the high-voltage battery. There is a risk of material damage. Before standing for a long time, ensure that the high-voltage battery is fully charged. During the stationary phase, connect the vehicle to a suitable charging location with a charging station. The high-voltage battery is charged automatically as needed. Ensure that the charging process can be carried out. Check the charge state regularly.

Do not leave the vehicle standing for more than three months with a charge level less than approximately 50 %.

Technical data

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Handbook are reference figures. Data relating to a specific vehicle can deviate from this, for example, due to selected optional equipment, national-market versions or country-specific measurement methods. Detailed values can be found in the permit documents, on information plates on the vehicle or can be requested from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

The information in the vehicle documents always takes precedence over the information in the Owner's Handbook.

Dimensions

Dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The heights specified do not take into account add-on parts such as a roof aerial, roof railing or spoiler. The heights can deviate, for example, due to selected optional equipment, tyres, loads and suspension design.

BMW 3 Series Touring plug-in hybrid		
Width with mirrors	mm (in)	2068 (81.4)
Width without mirrors	mm (in)	1827 (71.9)
Height	mm (in)	1442 (56.8)
Length	mm (in)	4709 (185.4)
Wheelbase	mm (in)	2851 (112.2)
Smallest turning circle dia.	m (ft)	12.0 (39.4)

Weights

320e		
Kerb weight ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras	kg (lb)	1900 (4189)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2355 (5192)
Payload	kg (lb)	530 (1168)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1050 (2315)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1380 (3042)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)

330e		
Kerb weight ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras	kg (lb)	1905 (4200)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2355 (5192)
Payload	kg (lb)	525 (1157)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1050 (2315)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1380 (3042)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)

320e xDrive		
Kerb weight ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras	kg (lb)	1955 (4310)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2425 (5346)
Payload	kg (lb)	545 (1202)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1100 (2425)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1405 (3097)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)

330e xDrive		
Kerb weight ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras	kg (lb)	1965 (4332)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2425 (5346)
Payload	kg (lb)	535 (1179)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1100 (2425)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1405 (3097)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)

Towing a trailer

320e		
Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Consult a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.		
Unbraked trailer load	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
Trailer load with brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1500 (3307)
Trailer load with brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1500 (3307)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit, towing vehicle	kg (lb)	1485 (3274)
Total weight, towing vehicle	kg (lb)	2430 (5357)

330e		
Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Consult a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.		
Unbraked trailer load	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
Trailer load with brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1500 (3307)
Trailer load with brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1500 (3307)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)

330e		
Rear axle load limit, towing vehicle	kg (lb)	1485 (3274)
Total weight, towing vehicle	kg (lb)	2430 (5357)

320e xDrive		
Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Consult a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.		
Unbraked trailer load	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
Trailer load with brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1500 (3307)
Trailer load with brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1500 (3307)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit, towing vehicle	kg (lb)	1510 (3329)
Total weight, towing vehicle	kg (lb)	2500 (5512)

330e xDrive		
Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Consult a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.		
Unbraked trailer load	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
Trailer load with brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1500 (3307)
Trailer load with brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1500 (3307)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit, towing vehicle	kg (lb)	1510 (3329)
Total weight, towing vehicle	kg (lb)	2500 (5512)

Filling capacities

BMW 3 Series Touring plug-in hybrid		
Fuel tank, approximately.	Litres (gal)	40.0 (8.8)

Observe the additional information on fuel grade,
see page 396.

Seats for child restraint systems

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the special equipment selected or the country specification. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Information for manufacturers of child seats

General

Information about which child restraint systems can be used on the seats in question in accordance with the ECE-R 16 and ECE-R 129 standard.

Left-hand drive vehicles: Suitability of child restraint systems for each vehicle seat

Seat position	1	3 - Airbag ON	3 - Airbag OFF	4	5	6
Seat position suitable for universal fastening with a belt.	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seat position.	No	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seat position suitable for side mounting: L1/L2.	No	No	No	No	No	No
Largest rear-facing mounting: R1/R2X/R2/R3.	No	No	No	R3	No	R3
Largest front-facing mounting: F2X/F2/F3.	No	No	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster mount: B2/B3.	No	No	No	B3	No	B3

A seat position without i-Size approval is not compatible with an i-Size support stand.

A seat position with lower ISOFIX anchors, but with no Top Tether, is not available.

There are no seat belt buckles for adults between the two bottom ISOFIX anchors.

Seat number	Position in the vehicle
1	Front left
2	Front centre
3	Front right
4	2nd seat row left
5	2nd seat row centre

Seat number	Position in the vehicle
6	2nd seat row right
7	3rd seat row left
8	3rd seat row centre
9	3rd seat row right

Right-hand drive vehicles: suitability of child restraint systems for each vehicle seat

Seat position	1 - Air-bag ON	1 - Air-bag OFF	3	4	5	6
Seat position suitable for universal fastening with a belt.	No	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seat position.	No	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seat position suitable for side mounting: L1/L2.	No	No	No	No	No	No
Largest rear-facing mounting: R1/R2X/R2/R 3.	No	No	No	R3	No	R3
Largest front-facing mounting: F2X/F2/F3.	No	No	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster mount: B2/B3.	No	No	No	B3	No	B3

A seat position without i-Size approval is not compatible with an i-Size support stand.

A seat position with lower ISOFIX anchors, but with no Top Tether, is not available.

There are no seat belt buckles for adults between the two bottom ISOFIX anchors.

Seat number	Position in the vehicle
1	Front left
2	Front centre
3	Front right
4	2nd seat row left

Seat number	Position in the vehicle
5	2nd seat row centre
6	2nd seat row right
7	3rd seat row left

Seat number	Position in the vehicle
8	3rd seat row centre
9	3rd seat row right

Appendix

General

Here is where any updates to the Owner's Handbook for the vehicle are listed.

Updates after going to press

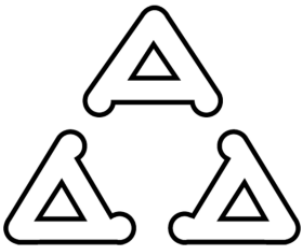
After the copy deadline for the integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle, the following chapters were updated in the printed Owner's Handbook:

- ▷ Operation: opening and closing: BMW Digital Key.
- ▷ Operation: lights: rear fog light: fog light.
- ▷ Driving hints: observe when driving: roof rack: safety information.

License Texts and Certifications

Remote Control

Serbia



И00520

Everything from A to Z

Index

0-9

3D View, see Surround View 293

A

ABS Anti-lock Brake System 247
Acceleration assistant, see Launch Control 169
Accessories and parts 9
Accident, conduct 417
Accident prevention, see Active Protection 244
ACC, see Active Cruise Control 255
Acoustic protection for pedestrians 151
AC quick charge cable, see Mode 3 charging cable 358
Activated charcoal filter 313
Activation, airbags 210
Activation, towing a trailer 345
Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC 255
Active front flap, see Active pedestrian protection 211
Active Guard Plus, see Intelligent Safety 212
Active Guard, see Intelligent Safety 212
Active PDC, see Emergency braking function 281
Active pedestrian protection 211
Active Protection 244
Active shock absorber adjustment, see Adaptive M suspension 304
Adapting the content, iDrive 60
Adaptive brake assist 247
Adaptive brake light, see Dynamic brake lights 242
Adaptive energy management 154
Adaptive Headlights 202
Adaptive hybrid mode 154
Adaptive M suspension 304
Adaptive recuperation 353
ADAPTIVE, see Driving Experience Control 157
Additives, engine oil grades 399
Adjusting the engine sound 304
Adjusting the sound of the engine 304
Age of tyres 371
Airbags 208
Airbags, indicator/warning lamp 209
Airbag switch, see Key switch 210
Air conditioning 305
Air conditioning function, air conditioning 310
Air distribution, manual 308, 313
Air outlets, see Ventilation 314
Air pressure, tyres 368
Air quality 305
Alarm system 115
All-season tyres, see Winter tyres 372
Amazon Alexa Car Integration 66
Ambient lighting 206
Amount of air, automatic air conditioning 307, 312
Android Auto, connection to vehicle 91
Android Auto preparation, connection to vehicle 91
Android Auto preparation, smartphone integration 91
Angle, backrest 124
Antifreeze protection, see Washer fluid 401
Antifreeze, see Washer fluid 401
Anti-lock Brake System ABS 247
Anti-theft alarm system, see Alarm system 115
Anti-theft security system, locking wheel bolts 390
Anti-theft system, locking 94
Anti-trap mechanism, glass sunroof 120
Anti-trap mechanism, windows 117
Apple CarPlay preparation, connection to vehicle 90
Apple CarPlay preparation, smartphone integration 90
Apps, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Aquaplaning 338
Arrival time, on-board computer 175
Artificial engine noise, see Acoustic protection for pedestrians 151
Ashtray 319
Assistant for leaving a parking space 290
Assisted Driving Mode, see Steering and lane control assistant 268
Assisted Driving Plus 272
Assisted Driving View 172
Attention camera for driver, see Driver Attention Camera 76
Attentiveness assistant 245
AUC automatic air recirculation control AUC 312
Audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
AUTO H button, see Parking brake 158
Automatic activation, see Regulation climate control 135
Automatic air conditioning 305, 309
Automatic air recirculation control AUC 312
Automatic car wash 422
Automatic dimming, see High beam assistant 203
Automatic driving lights control 199
Automatic formation of emergency lane 276
Automatic gearbox, see Steptronic transmission 165
Automatic Hold, see Parking brake 158
Automatic locking 114
Automatic parking function, exterior mirror 132
Automatic rear air-conditioning system, disabling operating elements 316
Automatic Start/Stop function 151
Automatic start-stop function 151
Automatic time setting 75
Automatic unlocking 114
Automating habits, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 67
AUTO program, automatic air conditioning 307, 311
AUTO program, intensity 311
Average consumption, see Journey data 194
Avoidance assistant 217
Avoiding false warnings 116
Axle loads, permitted 429

B

Backrest angle 124
Backrest contour, see Lumbar support 124
Backrest, seats 122
Backrest width 125
Bag holders 330
Ball linkage electrically swivellable 345
Bar for tow-starting/towing 420
Battery changing, vehicle key 96
Battery, charge status display 177
Battery charging, see Charging the vehicle 356
BATTERY CONTROL button 149
BATTERY CONTROL, electric driving 149
Battery, disposing of 410
Battery for high-voltage system, long stationary periods 426
Battery, vehicle 407
Belts, see Seat belts 125
Black ice, see Outside temperature warning 187
Blower, see Amount of air 307, 312
Bluetooth connection 87
Blu-ray, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
BMW Accident Assistance 414
BMW Digital Key 99
BMW Drive Recorder 242
BMW eDRIVE 149
BMW Gesture Control 69
BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 67
BMW Maintenance System 403
BMW Roadside Assistance 413
BMW Services, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Bonnet 394
Boot, extending 331
Boot, see Luggage compartment 329
Bottle holder, see Cupholder 327
Bottleneck support, see Steering and lane control assistant 268
Brake assist 247
Brake assist, adaptive 247
Brake discs, see Brake system 336
Brake lights, adaptive, see Dynamic brake lights 242
Brake lights, dynamic 242

Brake pads, see Brake system 336
Brake system 336
Braking, notes 338
Braking safely 338
Breakdown, help 412
Break recommendations, see Attentiveness assistant 245
Brightness, Control Display 77
Bulbs and lights 407
Buttons on the steering wheel 42
Button SOS, see Intelligent emergency call 415
Button SOS, see Statutory emergency call 414
Button, start/stop 151

C

Camera-based assistance systems, see Intelligent Safety 212
Camera lenses, care 425
Camera, rear-view camera, see Surround View 293
Camera, rear-view camera, without Surround View 283
Camera, see Surround View 293
Cameras, see Sensors of the vehicle 47
CANCEL button, Active Cruise Control 255
CANCEL button, cruise control 253
Can holder, see Cupholder 327
Care 422
Care, Head-Up Display 425
Care, light-alloy wheels 424
Care of upholstery fabrics 424
Care products 423
Care, vehicle 423
Caring Car, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 68
Caring for displays, monitors 425
Car key, see Vehicle key 93
Carpet, care 425
CarPlay, connection to vehicle 90
Carrying children 136
Carrying children safely 136
Car wash 422
Car wash, automatic 422
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust system 337
CBS Condition Based Service 403
Central key, see Vehicle key 93
Central locking system 104
Central screen, see Control display 58
Centre armrest, front 327
Centre console 45
Changes, technical, see Your own safety 8
Changing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 407
Changing gear, Steptronic transmission 165
Changing, wheels and tyres 371
CHARGE, energy recuperation 153
Charge screen 176
Charge status display, high-voltage battery 177
Charging a smartphone, see Wireless charging dock 322
Charging cables, stowing, see Storage 358
Charging cable, unlocking manually 360
Charging dock for smartphones, see Wireless charging dock 322
Charging, see Charging the vehicle 356
Charging status, see Charging status display 361
Charging the battery, see Charging the vehicle 356
Charging the vehicle 356
Charging to save fuel 349
Charging, vehicle 356
Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number 18
Check Control 179
Child locks 147
Child restraint systems, i-Size 139
Child restraint systems, see Carrying children safely 136
Child safety seat fasteners, ISOFIX 139
Child seat classes, see ISOFIX child restraint systems 139
Child seat mounting 137
Child seats, see Carrying children safely 136
Chrome-plated surfaces, care 424
Chrome surfaces, care 424
Cigarette lighter 320
Cleaning displays, monitors 425
Cleaning, Head-Up Display 425
Closing during rain, see Closing the glass sunroof automatically 115
Closing the glass sunroof automatically 115

Closing with a smartphone, see BMW Digital Key 99
Closing with the Key Card 98
Coasting 153
Coat hooks 328
Collision warning with braking function 214
Comfort Access 104
Comfort closing, vehicle key 95
Comfort opening, vehicle key 94
Communication, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Compass 175
Compatible devices, see Suitable devices 85
Compressor 375
Concierge Service, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Condensation when vehicle is parked 339
Condensation, windscreen 308, 313
Condition Based Service CBS 403
ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Connecting a device 84
Connecting electrical devices, see Sockets 320
Connecting, mobile devices 84
Connection point, starting aid 418
Connections, Screen Mirroring 89
Consumption display, widget in the instrument cluster 173, 175
Consumption, see Current consumption 173, 175
Consumption, see Journey data 194
Contactless opening and closing of the tailgate 107
Contacts, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Contact with water, hybrid system 20
Continuing a journey with a flat tyre 384, 387
Control display 58
Control Display, brightness 77
Controller 58
Control systems, driving stability 247
Converting the headlights, see Right-hand/left-hand traffic 205
Coolant 400
Coolant level 400
Cooling effect, maximum 306, 311
Cooling system 400
Cornering light 203
Corrosion of brake discs 339
Crossing traffic warning 301
Cruise Control, active with Stop&Go function 255
Cruise control, see Active Cruise Control 255
Cruise Control, see Cruise Control 253
Cruise Control with distance control, see Active Cruise Control 255
Cruise Control without distance control, see Cruise Control 253
Cupholder 327
Cup holder, front 327
Cup holder, rear 327
Current consumption 173, 175
Customer support, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

D

Damage, tyres 370
Dash cam, see BMW Drive Recorder 242
Data protection, settings 79
Data, see Deleting personal data 79
Data storage medium, see Vehicle data and data protection 9
Data, technical 428
Date 75
Daytime running lights 201
DCC, see Cruise Control 253
Deactivation, airbags 210
Deactivation, hybrid system 20
Defrosting, see Defrosting the windscreen 308, 313
Defrosting, windscreen 308, 313
Deleting personal data 79
Departure schedule, see Standing air conditioning 316
Departure times, stationary air conditioning 317
Desired speed, see Active Cruise Control 255
Destination distance, on-board computer 175
Destination entry, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Detecting traffic lights 266
Device list 85

Diagnosis connection 404
Digital Key, see BMW Digital Key 99
Dimensions 428
Dimming exterior mirror 132
Dimming rear-view mirror 132
Dipping headlights, see High beam assistant 203
Direction indicators, see Turn indicators 161
Direct selection buttons, see Functional bookmarks 57
Disabling operating elements, automatic rear air-conditioning system 316
Display, iDrive 55
Displaying notifications, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 67
Display in the windscreen, see Head-Up Display 196
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 206
Display of charging status 361
Displays 171
Displays and symbols 7
Disposal, coolant 401
Disposal, vehicle battery 410
Disposing of the old battery 410
Distance to destination, on-board computer 175
Distance warning, see PDC 278
Door handle lighting, see Welcome light 201
Door opening angle, Surround View 294
Downhill gradients 339
Drive mode, see Driving Experience Control 155
Drive-off assistant 247
Driver activity, see Driver Attention Camera 76
Driver assistance, driving, see Intelligent Safety 212
Driver assistance, parking, see Parking assistance systems 278
Driver assistance, see Intelligent Safety 212
Driver Assistance Systems 251
Driver Attention Camera 76
Drive-ready state, electric 52
Drive-ready state, engine start 52
Drive-ready state, rest state and standby state 51
Driver profiles 80
Driver profile, setting up 80
Driver profiles, welcome screen 80
Driving 149
Driving Assistant, see Intelligent Safety 212
Driving comfort 304
Driving Experience Control 155
Driving hints 337
Driving information, general 337
Driving information, running in 336
Driving instructions, hybrid system 349
Driving lights control, automatic 199
Driving path lines, rear-view camera 284
Driving path lines, Surround View 294
Driving Stability Control Systems 247
Driving style analysis, HYBRID ECO PRO 353
Driving through water 338
Driving with hybrid drive, HYBRID 149
Driving with internal combustion engine, POWER 149
Drying air, see Air conditioning function 310
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 247
DTC, Dynamic Traction Control 248
Dynamic brake lights 242
Dynamic damping, see Adaptive M suspension 304
Dynamic ECO lighting function 202
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 247
Dynamic Traction Control DTC 248

E

eASSIST, support for the internal combustion engine 154
eBOOST, support for the internal combustion engine 154
ECO lighting function, dynamic 202
Efficiency display, widget in the instrument cluster 173, 175
Efficient4x4, see xDrive 249
Electrical power window switches 116
ELECTRIC button 149
Electric drive-ready state 52
Electric driving, BATTERY CONTROL 149
Electric driving, ELECTRIC 149
Electric driving, ePOWER 149
ELECTRIC, electric driving 149
Electric glass sunroof 118

ELECTRIC INDIVIDUAL, see Driving Experience Control 155
ELECTRIC, see Driving Experience Control 155
Electronic oil measurement 397
Electronic Stability Program, ESP, see DSC 247
E-mail, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Emergency assistance, see BMW Accident Assistance 414
Emergency assistance, see BMW Roadside Assistance 413
Emergency brake, see Emergency stop assistant 240
Emergency braking function when parking, Active PDC 281
Emergency braking, see PostCrash – iBrake 245
Emergency call 414
Emergency release, charging cable 360
Emergency release, fuel tank filler flap 367
Emergency release, transmission lockout 169
Emergency running properties, tyres 373
Emergency service, see BMW Accident Assistance 414
Emergency stop assistant 240
Energy recuperation, CHARGE 153
Engine, automatic start-stop function 151
Engine compartment 393
Engine coolant 400
Engine noise, artificial, see Acoustic protection for pedestrians 151
Engine oil change 400
Engine oil filler neck 398
Engine oil grades for topping up 399
Engine oil level, checking electronically 397
Engine oil, topping up 398
Engine start, see Drive-ready state 52
Engine start, see Starting aid 417
Entering an address, Navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Entering letters and numbers 56
Entertainment, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Entertainment, selection list in the instrument cluster 193
ePOWER, electric driving 149
Equipment, interior 319
ESP, Electronic Stability Program, see DSC 247
Exchanging, wheels and tyres 371
Exhaust gas particle filter 337
Exhaust, see Exhaust system 337
Exhaust system 337
Experience Modes, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 68
Exterior lights when unlocking 94
Exterior lights with the vehicle locked 95
Exterior mirror 131
Exterior mirror, automatically dimming 132
Exterior mirror, automatic parking function 132
Exterior mirror internal 132
Exterior mirrors, malfunction 131
External start, see Starting aid 417
Eye for securing cable, towing a trailer 346
Eye for towing 420
Eyes, see Lashing eye in the boot 330

F

Factory settings, see Resetting vehicle configuration 78
Failure message, see Check Control 179
False warnings, see Avoiding false warnings 116
Fan run-on, see Exhaust gas particle filter 337
Fastening seat belts, see Seat belts 125
Fatigue warning function 245
Fault displays, see Check Control 179
Favourites buttons, see Functional bookmarks 57
Filler neck for engine oil 398
Filter, see Microfilter 308
Filter, see Microfilter/activated charcoal filter 313
Finding charging stations, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Fine wood parts, care 424
Fire extinguisher 416
First-aid kit 412
First steps, see Setup assistant 80
Flat tyre, continuing a journey 384, 387
Flat tyre, flat tyre monitor RPA 386
Flat tyre message, RPA 386
Flat tyre message, Tyre Pressure Monitor 382

Flat tyre monitor RPA 386
Flat tyre, remedying 374
Flat tyre, see Tyre Pressure Monitor 379
Flat tyre warning lamp, RPA 386
Flat tyre warning light, Tyre Pressure Monitor 382
Flat tyre, wheel change 388
Flood, driving through 338
Floor carpet, care 425
Fog lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 407
Fold-out position, windscreen wiper 164
Foot brake 338
Foot mats, care 425
Fording depth, water 338
Four-wheel drive, see xDrive 249
Front airbags 208
Front collision warning, see Collision warning 214
Front collision warning, see Intelligent Safety 212
Front collision warning, see Junction warning 219
Front collision warning, see Pedestrian warning 222
Front-collision warning, see Road priority warning 235
Front-end collision warning with City braking function 214
Front fog lights 205
Front head rests 128
Front neck supports, see Front head rests 128
Front passenger's side exterior mirror, tilting down, see Automatic parking function 132
Front passenger airbags, deactivation/activation 210
Front passenger airbags, indicator lamp 211
Front seats 122
Fuel 396
Fuel filler flap 366
Fuel gauge 185
Fuel quality 396
Fuel recommendation 396
Fuel tank cap 366
Fuel tank capacity 431
Fuel tank filler flap, manual release 367
Fuel tank, see Capacities 431
Functional bookmarks, iDrive 57
Functions, hybrid system 149
Fuses 410

G

Gearbox, see Steptronic transmission 165
General driving information 337
General settings 75
Gesture Control 69
Gestures, see BMW Gesture Control 69
Give way warning 235
Glare protection, see Sun visor 319
Glass sunroof, electric 118
Glass sunroof, initialising system 121
Glove compartment 325
G meter, widget in the instrument cluster 173
GPS, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

H

Handbrake, see Parking brake 158
Hands-free system, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Hazard warning lights 412
Head airbags 208
Head Light, adaptive 202
Headlight courtesy delay feature 201
Headlight flasher 161
Headlight glass 407
Headlights, care 423
Headliner 46
Head restraints and seats 122
Head-Up Display 196
Head-Up Display, care 425
Head-Up Display, saving position, see Memory function 133
Heavy transported loads, stowing 329
Height, vehicle 428
Help in case of a breakdown 412
Help in driving off, see Drive-off assistant 247
High beam assistant 203
High-beam headlights 161
High-voltage battery, charge status display 177

High-voltage battery, long stationary periods 426
High-voltage battery, recycling 405
Hill Start Assist, see Drive-off assistant 247
Holder for beverages 327
Holding charge state, BATTERY CONTROL 149
Home lights, switching on 96
Home lights, vehicle key 114
Home page, see Internet 6
Horn 42
Hotel function, see Parking service mode 112
Hot exhaust system 337
HYBRID button 149
HYBRID COMFORT, see Driving Experience Control 155
HYBRID, driving with hybrid drive 149
HYBRID ECO PRO, driving style analysis 353
HYBRID ECO PRO, route-ahead assistant 352
HYBRID ECO PRO, see Driving Experience Control 155
HYBRID STANDARD, see Driving Experience Control 155
Hybrid system, adjusting to the route 154
Hybrid system, automatic deactivation 20
Hybrid system, contact with water 20
Hybrid system indicators 177
Hybrid system, safety 20
Hybrid system, see BMW eDRIVE 149
Hybrid system, using efficiently 349
Hybrid system, working on 20

I

iBrake – PostCrash 245
Ice warning, see Outside temperature warning 187
Identification number, see Vehicle identification number 18
iDrive 55
Ignition key, see Vehicle key 93
Important considerations 136
Indicator and warning lamps 180
Indicator lamp, front passenger airbags 211
Indicators of the hybrid system 177
Individual air distribution 308, 313
Individual settings, see Driver profiles 80
Inductive charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging dock 322
Inflation pressure, tyres 368
Inflation pressure warning RPA, tyres 386
Information window, Control Display 77
Initialising, runflat indicator RPA 386
Input comparison 56
Input, iDrive 55
Instrument cluster 171
Instrument cluster switch, see Turn indicators 161
Instrument cluster switch, see Wiper system 161
Instrument lighting 206
Integrated key 102
Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle 21
Intelligent anticipation 154
Intelligent emergency call 415
Intelligent Personal Assistant 67
Intelligent Safety 212
Intended use 8
Intensity, AUTO program 311
Interior camera, see Driver Attention Camera 76
Interior equipment 319
Interior light 206
Interior lights when unlocking 94
Interior light with the vehicle locked 95
Interior mirror 132
Interior mirror, external 131
Interior movement detector 116
Internet connection 88
Internet hotspot 88
Internet site 6
Interval Display, see Service requirements 189
i-Size child restraint systems 139
ISOFIX, child safety seat fasteners 139

J

Jacking points 391
Journey data 194
Joystick, Steptronic transmission 165
Jump starting, see Starting aid 417
Junction warning, see Road priority warning 235
Junction warning with City braking function 219

K

Kenaf, care 424
Key Card 98
Keyless Go, see Comfort Access 104
Key, mechanical 102
Key, see BMW Digital Key 99
Key, see Vehicle key 93
Key switch for front passenger airbags 210
Kick-down, Steptronic transmission 165
Knee airbag 209

L

Labelling of recommended tyres 372
Labelling of run-flat tyres 373
Lane boundary, warning 225
Lane change assistant 273
Lane Change Warning 228
Lane control assistant, see Steering and lane control assistant 268
Lane control assistant with active side collision protection, see Side collision warning 231
Lane Departure Warning 225
Language, setting 76
Laser high-beam headlights 205
Lashing eyes in the boot 330
Lashing straps, see Lashing eyes in the boot 330
Lateral parking aid, Surround View 294
Lateral parking aid without Surround View 282
Launch Control 169
Leather care 424
Leaving a parking space 290
LED fog light, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 407
LED headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 407
Left-hand traffic, light setting 205
Length, vehicle 428
Light-alloy wheels, care 424
Lighter 320
Lighter, front 320
Light in exterior mirror, see Crossing traffic warning 301
Lighting 199
Light in the exterior mirror, see Lane Change Warning 228
Lights 199
Light switch 199
LIM button, see Manual Speed Limiter 251
List, instrument cluster, see Selection lists 193
List of all messages 78
Loading 329
Loading the boot, see Stowing transported loads 329
Locking, automatic 114
Locking, see Opening and closing 93
Locking settings 113
Locking, vehicle key 94
Locking wheel bolts 390
Lock, power window switches, see Safety switch 118
Lock, wheel bolts 390
Logging on, mobile devices, see Connections 84
Long stationary periods, high-voltage battery 426
Low-beam headlights 200
Luggage compartment 329
Luggage compartment cover 333
Luggage net 334
Luggage rack, see Roof rack 340
Lumbar support 124

M

Maintenance 403
Maintenance requirement, see CBS Condition Based Service 403
Maintenance, see Service requirements 189
Maintenance System, BMW 403
Make-up mirror 319
Malfunction displays, see Check Control 179
Malfunction, vehicle key 97
Managing devices 85
Manual mode, Steptronic transmission 165
Manual operation, air distribution 308, 313
Manual operation, amount of air 307, 312
Manual operation, fuel tank filler flap 367
Map update, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Matt paintwork, care 424
Maximum cooling effect 306, 311
Maximum speed, display, see Speed Limit Info 190
Maximum speed, winter tyres 372
Media of the Owner's Handbook 21
Medical supplies, see First-aid kit 412
Memory function 133
Menu, instrument cluster, see Selection lists 193
Messages 78
Messages, see Check Control 179
Microfilter 308, 313
Minimum tread depth, tyres 370
Mirror, vanity 319
Mobile communication in the vehicle 338
Mobile devices, managing 85
Mobile phone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Mobile Service, see BMW Accident Assistance 414
Mobile Service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 413
Mobile telephone, connecting 84
Mobile telephone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Mobility System 374
Mode 2 charging 356
Mode 2 charging cable 358
Mode 3 charging cable 358
MODE button, see Active Cruise Control 255
Moisture in the headlights, see Headlight glass 407
Monitor, see Control display 58
Mounting child restraints 137
MP3 player, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
M suspension, adaptive, see Adaptive M suspension 304
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 42
Multimedia, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Music track, gesture control 69

N

Navigation data, on-board computer 175
Navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Net 334
Neutral cleaner, see Light-alloy wheels, care 424
New wheels and tyres 371
No Passing Information, see Speed Limit Info 190
Notes 6
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing 420

O

OBD on-board diagnosis 404
Obstacle marker, rear-view camera 284
Obstacle marking, Surround View 294
Octane number, see Petrol grade 396
Odometer, see Journey data 194
Oil change 400
Oil change interval, see Service requirements 189
Oil filler neck 398
Oil grades for topping up, engine 399
Oil level, checking electronically 397
Oil, topping up 398
On-board computer, see Journey data 194
On-board diagnosis OBD 404
On-board literature, printed 21
On-board monitor, see Control display 58
On-board tool kit 406
Opening and closing 93
Opening with a smartphone, see BMW Digital Key 99
Opening with the Key Card 98
Operating menus, iDrive 55
Operating principle, iDrive 55
Operation via voice control 63
Optimum shift indicator 190
Optional equipment, see Vehicle equipment 7
Outside air, see AUC 312
Outside temperature 187
Overtaking restrictions 190
Owner's Handbook on language, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 68

Owner's Handbook, printed 21

P

Paintwork, vehicle care 423
Panorama glass sunroof, see Electric glass sunroof 118
Panorama View 298
Park Assistant 286
Park Assistant Plus, see Surround View 293
Park Assist, leaving a parking space 290
Park Distance Control PDC 278
Parking aid, see PDC 278
Parking assistance systems 278
Parking Assistant Plus, see Surround View 293
Parking Assistant, see Park Assistant 286
Parking, Automatic Hold, see Parking brake 158
Parking brake 158
Parking lights 200
Parking service mode 112
Particle filter, see Exhaust gas particle filter 337
Part replacement 406
Parts and accessories 9
Payload, technical data 429
PDC Park Distance Control 278
Pedestrian protection, active 211
Performance Control 304
Performance display, instrument cluster 186
Personal data, deleting 79
Personal profile, see Driver profiles 80
Personal settings 79
Person warning with braking function 222
Petrol 396
Petrol grade 396
Petrol particle filter, see Exhaust gas particle filter 337
Phone call, gesture control 69
Place for children 136
Plasters, see First-aid kit 412
Plastic parts, care 425
Pockets, doors 326
Possible gestures, gesture control 69
PostCrash – iBrake 245
Power display, see Sport displays 195
POWER, driving with internal combustion engine 149
Power failure 409
Powermeter, see Performance display 186
Power window switches 116
Preliminary air conditioning, see Standing air conditioning 316
Pressure, tyres 368
Pressure warning RPA, tyres 386
Printed on-board literature 21
Profiles, see Driver profiles 80
Protection for pedestrians, acoustic 151
Protection function, glass sunroof, see Anti-trap mechanism 120
Protection function, windows, see Anti-trap mechanism 117

Q

Quick charge cable, see Mode 3 charging cable 358

R

Racing track 341
Radar sensors, see Sensors of the vehicle 47
Radiator fan, see Exhaust gas particle filter 337
Radio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Radio signals 338
Rain sensor 162
Range 188
Rear automatic air conditioning 314
Rear collision prevention 234
Rear collision warning, see Rear collision prevention 234
Rear fog light 205
Rear fog light, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 407
Rear head rests 129
Rear luggage rack 340
Rear neck supports, see Rear head rests 129
Rear seat backrests, folding down 331
Rear-view camera, see Surround View 293
Rear-view camera, without Surround View 283
Rear-view mirror with automatic anti-dazzle function 132
Rear window heating 308, 313

Rear wiper, operation 164
Recirculated-air mode 307, 312
Recirculating air filter, see Microfilter/activated charcoal filter 313
Recirculation, see Recirculated-air mode 307, 312
Recommended makes of tyre 372
Recuperation, adaptive 353
Recuperation, see Energy recuperation 153
Recycling 405
Recycling, high-voltage battery 405
Refuelling 365
Regular charging 349
Regulation climate control 135
Remote 3D View 300
Remote control for audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Remote control, see Vehicle key 93
Remote services, app, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Remote Software Upgrade 72
Replacement of parts 406
Replacement, wheels and tyres 371
Replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 407
Replacing front lights, see Bulbs and lights 407
Replacing headlights, see Bulbs and lights 407
Replacing laser headlights, see Bulbs and lights 407
Replacing light-emitting diodes, see Bulbs and lights 407
Replacing lights, see Bulbs and lights 407
Replacing parts 406
Replacing rear light, see Bulbs and lights 407
Replacing tail lights, see Bulbs and lights 407
Replacing the wiper blades 406
RES CNCL button, Active Cruise Control, ACC 255
RES CNCL button, cruise control 253
Reserve warning, see Range 188
Reservoir for washer fluid 401
Resetting settings, vehicle 78
Resetting, Tyre Pressure Monitor 381
Resetting, vehicle configuration 78
Resetting, vehicle settings 78
Reset, Tyre Pressure Monitor 381
Restraint systems for children, see Carrying children safely 136
Rest state, standby state and drive-ready state 51
RESUME button, Active Cruise Control 255
RESUME button, cruise control 253
Retreaded tyres 372
Reuse, recycling 405
Reversing assistant 291
Revolution counter 186
Right-hand traffic, light setting 205
Road priority warning 235
Roadside Assistance, see BMW Roadside Assistance 413
Roller cover 333
Roller sunblinds, rear side windows 118
RON, petrol grade 396
Roof load, permitted 429
Roof rack 340
Rope for tow-starting/towing 420
Roundabout light 203
Route-ahead assistant 352
Route, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
RPA flat tyre monitor 386
RSC Runflat System, see Run-flat tyres 373
RTTI, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Rubber parts, care 424
Run Flat, see Run-flat tyres 373
Run-flat tyres 373
Running in 336
Run-on of fan, see Exhaust gas particle filter 337

S

Safe seating position 122
Safe Share function, see BMW Digital Key 99
Safety locks, doors and windows 147
Safety of the hybrid system 20
Safety package, see Active Protection 244
Safety switch, windows 118
Safety systems, see Airbags 208
Safety systems, see Intelligent Safety 212
Saving energy, see Optimum shift indicator 190

Saving fuel 348
Saving mirror position, see Memory function 133
Saving seat position, see Memory function 133
Saving steering wheel position, see Memory function 133
Screen Mirroring, connection 89
Screen, see Control display 58
Sealant, see Mobility System 374
Seat belt reminder for driver and front passenger seat 127
Seat belt reminder for rear seats 127
Seat belts 125
Seat belts, care 425
Seat heating 134
Seat heating, regulation climate control 135
Seats and head restraints 122
Seats, front 122
Securing, transported loads 329
Selection list in the instrument cluster 193
Selector lever, Steptronic transmission 165
Sensors, care 425
Sensors of the vehicle 47
Service history 189
Service requirements 189
Service requirement, see CBS Condition Based Service 403
Services, ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Service, see BMW Accident Assistance 414
Service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 413
SET button, Active Cruise Control 255
SET button, cruise control 253
Setting, Control Display 77
Settings, general 75
Settings, locking/unlocking 113
Settings, seats and head restraints 122
Settings, steering wheel 133
Setup assistant 80
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 165
Shock absorber adjustment, active, see Adaptive M suspension 304
Side airbag 208
Side collision warning 231
Side lights 200
Side nozzles, see Ventilation 314
Side protection, Surround View, see Lateral parking aid 294
Side protection without Surround View, see Lateral parking aid 282
Signal horn, horn 42
Signals on unlocking, see Acknowledgement signals 113
Sizes, see Dimensions 428
Sliding/tilting roof, see Electric glass sunroof 118
Smallest turning radius, vehicle 428
Smartphone, connecting 84
Smartphone integration, Android Auto preparation 91
Smartphone integration, Apple CarPlay preparation 90
Smartphone, operating via voice control 65
Smartphone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Smokers package 319
SMS, see Short messages, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Snow chains 378
Socket for on-board diagnosis OBD 404
Sockets, electrical devices 320
Software update, see Remote Software Upgrade 72
Software upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade 72
Software version, see Remote Software Upgrade 72
Soot particle filter, see Exhaust gas particle filter 337
SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call 415
SOS button, see Statutory emergency call 414
Sound output, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Sound, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Spanner, see On-board tool kit 406
Speech recognition 63
Speed Limit Assist 264
Speed Limit Device, Manual Speed Limiter 251
Speed limit, display, see Speed Limit Info 190

Speed limiter, manual 251
Speed Limit Info 190
Speed warning 77
Sport displays 195
SPORT INDIVIDUAL, see Driving Experience Control 155
Sport program, Steptronic transmission 165
SPORT STANDARD, see Driving Experience Control 155
Sport steering, variable 249
Sport suspension, see Adaptive M suspension 304
Stability control systems 247
Standard charging cable, see Mode 2 charging cable 358
Standard charging, see Mode 2 charging 356
Standard equipment, see Vehicle equipment 7
Standby state, rest state and drive-ready state 51
Standing air conditioning 316
Start/Stop button 151
Starting aid 417
Starting aid terminals 418
Starting assistance, see DSC 247
Starting, see Drive-ready state 52
Starting the engine, see Drive-ready state 52
Starting the engine with the Key Card 98
Stationary air conditioning, setting 114
Stations, AM/FM, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Status indicator, tyres 381
Status information, iDrive 56
Status of the Owner's Handbook 8
Status, vehicle 196
Statutory emergency call 414
Steering and lane control assistant 268
Steering column adjustment 133
Steering wheel, buttons 42
Steering wheel heating 133
Steering wheel heating, regulation climate control 135
Steering wheel, setting 133
Steptronic sport transmission, see Steptronic transmission 165
Steptronic transmission 165
Stopping the engine, see Drive-ready state 52
Storage, charge cables 358
Storage compartment, centre console 326
Storage compartment, luggage compartment 330
Storage compartments 325
Storage facilities 325
Storage, tyres 373
Stowing charging cables, see Storage 358
Stowing, transported loads 329
Suitable devices 85
Suitable mobile telephones 85
Summer tyres, tread 370
Sun visor 319
Supplementary handbook 21
Supplementary text message 180
Support of the internal combustion engine 154
Surround View 293
Surround View, gesture control 69
Suspension, electronic, see Adaptive M suspension 304
Suspension settings, see Driving Experience Control 155
Swinging of the trailer, see Trailer Stability Control 344
Switches, see Driving area 42
Switch for driving dynamics, see Driving Experience Control 155
Symbols and displays 7
SYNC programme, automatic air conditioning 313

T

Tailgate, contactless opening and closing 107
Tailgate, vehicle key 95
Tank aeration 365
Tank display 185
Tank unlocking, see Tank aeration 365
Technical changes, see Your own safety 8
Technical data 428
Telephone, connecting 84
Telephone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Telephone, selection list in the instrument cluster 193

Teleservices, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Television, TV, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Temperature, automatic air conditioning 306, 310
Temperature display, see Outside temperature 187
Temperature preconditioning, see Standing air conditioning 316
Tension belt, see Lashing eyes in the boot 330
Text message, Check Control 180
Thigh support 124
Third-party providers, voice assistant 66
Through-loading system 331
Tilt alarm sensor 116
Tilting down the front passenger's side exterior mirror, see Automatic parking function 132
Time 75
Time setting, automatic 75
Tools 406
Top View, see Surround View 293
Torque display, see Sport displays 195
Total weight, permitted 429
Total weight, trailer operation 430
Touchpad, Controller 61
Tourist function, see Right-hand/left-hand traffic 205
Tow bar 420
Tow fitting, see Towing eye 420
Towing a trailer 342
Towing a trailer, activation 345
Towing a trailer, technical data 430
Towing away 419
Towing eye 420
Towing rope 420
Towing, see Tow-starting and towing 419
Tow-starting 419
Traction control 248
TRACTION, driving dynamics 248
Traffic information, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Traffic jam assistant, see Assisted Driving Plus 272
Traffic light detection 266
Traffic-queue assistant, see Assisted Driving Plus 272
Trailer loads 430
Trailer nose weight, technical data 430
Trailer Stability Control 344
Trailer tow hitch, ball linkage electrically swivellable 345
Trailer tow hitch, rear-view camera view 284
Trailer tow hitch, Surround View 294
Transmission lockout, unlocking electronically 169
Transported loads, stowing and securing 329
Tread, tyres 370
Trip distance recorder, see Journey data 194
Triple turn signal 161
Turn indicator, indicator lamp 183
Turn indicators, high-beam headlights, headlight flasher 161
Turn indicators, replacing bulbs, see Bulbs and lights 407
Turning circle lines, rear-view camera 284
Turning circle lines, Surround View 294
Turning radius, vehicle 428
TV, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Tyre damage 370
Tyre inflation pressure 368
Tyre makes, recommendation 372
Tyre pressure 368
Tyre Pressure Monitor 379
Tyre pressure monitoring, see RPA 386
Tyre Pressure Monitor, reset 381
Tyre Pressure Monitor, resetting 381
Tyre pressure test, see Tyre Pressure Monitor 379
Tyre repair kit, see Mobility System 374
Tyre replacement 371
Tyres and wheels 368
Tyre sealant, see Mobility System 374
Tyre settings 380
Tyres with emergency running properties 373
Tyre tread 370

U

Ultrasonic sensors, see Sensors of the vehicle 47
Units of measure 76
Units, see Units of measure 76
Unloaded weight 429
Unlock-button, Steptronic transmission 165
Unlocking, automatic 114
Unlocking manually, charging cable 360
Unlocking, see Opening and closing 93
Unlocking, settings 113
Unlocking, vehicle key 94
Updates after going to press 8
Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade 72
USB connection 91
USB port, position in the vehicle 321
Use, intended 8

V

Valet parking mode, see Parking service mode 112
Vanity mirror 319
Variable sport steering 249
Vehicle acknowledgement signals 113
Vehicle battery 407
Vehicle breakdown, see Help in case of a breakdown 412
Vehicle care 423
Vehicle configuration, resetting 78
Vehicle data and data protection 9
Vehicle equipment 7
Vehicle identification number 18
Vehicle key 93
Vehicle key, additional 97
Vehicle key, changing batteries 96
Vehicle key, integrated key 102
Vehicle key, loss 97
Vehicle key, malfunction 97
Vehicle paintwork, care 423
Vehicle, running in 336
Vehicle status 196
Vehicle wash 422
Ventilation 314
Ventilation, see Standing air conditioning 316
Vents, see Ventilation 314
Video recording, see BMW Drive Recorder 242
Video, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
VIN, see Vehicle identification number 18
Voice assistant, third-party providers 66
Voice control 63
Voice control, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 67
Voice control system 63
Voice input 63
Voice input, gesture control 69
Volume, gesture control 69

W

Wake word 63
Warning and indicator lamps 180
Warning lamp in exterior mirror, see Crossing traffic warning 301
Warning lamp in the exterior mirror, see Lane Change Warning 228
Warning messages, see Check Control 179
Warning of crossing traffic 301
Warnings, false 116
Warning triangle 412
Warranty 8
Washer fluid 401
Washing bay view, Surround View 294
Washing fluid, see Washer fluid 401
Wash, vehicle 422
Water, hybrid system 20
Water on streets 338
Water, see Condensation when vehicle is parked 339
Website, see Internet 6
Weights 429
Welcome Light Carpet, see Welcome light 201
Welcome lights 201
Welcome light when unlocking 94
Welcome screen, driver profiles 80
Wheelbase, vehicle 428
Wheel change 388
Wheel replacement 371
Wheels and tyres 368
Widgets, iDrive 56

Widgets, instrument cluster 173, 174
Width, vehicle 428
Wi-Fi connection 88
Wi-Fi connection, see WLAN connection 88
Wi-Fi hotspot 88
Window, defrosting 308, 313
Windscreen, defrosting 308, 313
Windscreen washing system, see Wiper system 161
Windscreen wipers, see Wiper system 161
Winter tyres 372
Winter tyres, tread 370
Wiper, fold-out position 164
Wipers, see Wiper system 161
Wiper system 161
Wiping fluid, see Washer fluid 401
Wireless charging dock for smartphones 322
Wireless charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging dock 322
WLAN connection 88
Wood parts, care 424
Wordmatch principle, see Input comparison 56
Working on, hybrid system 20
Wrong-way driving warning 238

X

xDrive 249
XTRABOOST, see Driving Experience Control 155

Y

Your own safety 8

01405A1EA53 en

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1EA53 - X/20